

Ayaro

(Acaranga Sutra)

ACHARYA TULSI

Ā Y Ā R O (Ā c ā r ā ṅ g a S ū t r a)

The First Aṅga Āgama (Canonical Text) of the Jainas
THE TEXT IN DEVANĀGARĪ AND ROMAN SCRIPTS
WITH ENGLISH TRANSLATION, ANNOTATIONS,
NOTES, GLOSSARY AND INDEX

Translated into English .

by

MUNI MAHENDRA KUMAR

. Published under the auspices of

**JAINA VISHVA BHARATI, LADNUN-341306, RAJASTHAN,
INDIA**



TODAY AND TOMORROW'S PRINTERS & PUBLISHERS
New Delhi

COPYRIGHTS © JAIN VISHVA BHARATI, LADNUN (RAJASTHAN), INDIA

First Published, 1981

Price : Rs. 150.00 US \$ 30.00

Printed at : GOYAL OFFSET
Sahazada Bagh, Delhi-110035

Published under the auspices of :
JAIN VISHVA BHARATI, LADNUN, RAJASTHAN, INDIA
by R.K. JAIN, TODAY & TOMORROW'S PRINTERS AND PUBLISHERS,
24-B/5, Desh Bandhu Gupta Road, Karol Bagh, N. Delhi-110005

Jain Canonical Text Series

Synod Chief :

ĀCĀRYA TULSĪ

Editor, Translator and Commentator :

YUVĀCĀRYA MAHĀPRAJÑA

Jain Canonical Text Series

C O N T E N T S

Preface i—vi

Introduction vii—xxiv

CHAPTER I. COMPREHENSION AND RENUNCIATION OF WEAPONS

Section I	1—15
Existence of Soul	3
Cause of Influx of <i>Karma</i> Particles	10
Stoppage of Influx	11
Consequences of Influx of <i>Karma</i> Particles	12
Fundamental Motives of Actions	12
Practice of Stoppage of <i>Karma</i>	14
 Section II	 16—27
Ignorance	16
Injury to Earth-beings	16
Earth-beings : Their Animation and Experience of Pain	21
Forswearing of Violence	26
 Section III	 28—40
Dedication to the Aim	28
Existence of the Beings of Water-body and Promise of Non-intimidation to them	30
Violence to Beings of Water-body	31
Water-beings : Their Animation and Experience of Pain	34
Forswearing of Violence	35
 Section IV	 41—49
Existence of the Beings of Fire-body	41
Violence to Beings of Fire-body	43

Fire-beings : Their Life and Experience of Pain	47
Forswearing of Violence	48
 Section V	 50—60
Definition of a Monk	50
A Hypocritical Ascetic	51
Violence to Beings of Vegetable-body	53
Vegetable-beings : Their Animation and Experience of Pain	56
Comparison of Plant Life with Human Life	58
Forswearing of Violence	59
 Section VI	 61—70
World of Recurrent Transmigration	61
Violence to Mobile Living Beings	64
Mobile Living Beings : Their Animation and Experience of Pain	67
Forswearing of Violence	69
 Section VII	 71—81
Equality of Beings with the Self	71
Violence to the Beings of Air-body	73
Air-beings : Their Animation and Experience of Pain	76
Forswearing of Violence	78
Admonition to Ascetics	79
Forswearing of Violence	81

CHAPTER II SUBJUGATION OF THE WORLD (OF PASSIONS)

Section I	85—93
Attachment	95
Wakefulness by Contemplation of Being Unprotected	87
 Section II	 95—101
Dispelling Ennui	94
The (True) Monk	96
Use of Violence	98
Forswearing of Violence	100
Unattachment	100

Section III	102—109
Equality	102
Acquisitiveness and its Evils	104
Section IV	110-116
Evils of Sensuality and Self-indulgent Persons	110
Section V	117—132
Non-attachment to Food	117
Non-attachment to Desire	122
Remedy of the Maladies	130
Section VI	133—345
Renunciation of Acquisitiveness	133
Conduct of the Unattached One	137
Behaviour of a Recluse	138
Liberation from Bondage	140
On Preaching Sermons	142

CHAPTER III. THE SHIFTING SANDS OF LIFE

Section I	149—155
The Torpid and the Wide-awake	149
Section II	156—165
Knowledge of the Supreme Reality	156
Manifold Desires of Man	163
Practice of Self-discipline	164
Section III	166—173
Spiritual World	166
Section IV	174—180
Riddance of <i>Kaṣāya</i>	174

CHAPTER IV. THE TRUTH

Section I	183—186
The True Doctrine : Non-violence	183
Section II	187—194
The Knowledge : Critique of the Doctrine of <i>Ahimsā</i>	187

Section III	195—200
Right Austerities	195
Forswearing of Passions	199
Section IV	201—207
Right Ascetic Discipline	201

CHAPTER V. THE ESSENCE IN THE WORLD

Section I	211—217
Lust	211
Section II	218—225
The Path of Vigilance	218
Acquisitiveness	223
Section III	226—236
Non-acquisitiveness and Detachment from Sensual Pleasures	226
Section IV	237—247
Practice of Asceticism in Solitariness by an Immature Ascetic	237
Manner of Moving (For an Ascetic)	240
Bondage and Riddance of <i>Karma</i> Particles	241
Practice of Celibacy	243
Section V	248-258
Preceptor	248
Faith	250
Unbiased Attitude	253
Non-violence	255
The Soul	257
Section VI	259—266
Guidance	259
The Practice of Truth	261
The Immaculate Soul—The Supreme Soul	263

CHAPTER VI. ADVANCED ASCETICISM (DHUTA)

Section I	269—279
Discourse on Knowledge	269

Dejection amongst <i>sādhakas</i> lacking in Spiritual Insight	270
Tormentation of Beings by other Beings	274
Observance of Non-violence in Medical Treatment	275
The <i>Dhuta</i> of the Abandonment of Relatives	277
Section II	280—288
The <i>Dhuta</i> of the Abandonment of <i>Karma</i>	280
Section III	289—297
The <i>Dhuta</i> of the Abandonment of Clothes	289
The <i>Dhuta</i> of Attenuation of the Body	292
The <i>Dhuta</i> of Self-discipline	942
The <i>Dhuta</i> of Humbleness	296
Section IV	298—303
The <i>Dhuta</i> of Abandonment of Conceit	298
Section V	304—310
The <i>Dhuta</i> of Forbearance	304
The <i>Dhuta</i> of Sermons	305
The <i>Dhuta</i> of Freedom from Passions	307

CHAPTER VIII. EMANCIPATION

Section I	313—323
Avoiding Heretics	313
Improper Conduct	315
<i>Viveka</i> (wisdom)	319
<i>Ahimsā</i>	322
Section II	324-329
Avoiding the Forbidden	324
Section III	
Initiation into Ascetic Life	330—335
Abandonment of Possessiveness by Ascetics	331
The Purpose of Monk's Nourishment	332
Forswearing the Use of Fire	334
Section IV	336—342
The Relinquishment of Clothes	336
Abandonment of Body	340

Section V	343—349
The Relinquishment of Clothes	343
Abandonment of Food by an Ailing Monk	346
Rules for Service	347
Section VI	350—358
Abandonment of Clothes	350
Contemplation of Solitariness	352
Eschewing Taste	353
Conscious Preparation for Death	355
Fast unto Death Called <i>Īṃgiṇi</i> (<i>Īṭvarika</i>)	356
Section VII	359—366
The Relinquishment of Clothes	359
Rules for Service	361
Fasting upto Death called <i>Prāyopagamana</i>	364
Section VIII	367—378
Fast unto Death	367
<i>Bhakta-pratyākhyāna</i>	369
<i>Īṃgiṇi Marāṇa</i>	373
<i>Prāyopagamana</i>	376

CHAPTER IX. THE EXCELLENCE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS

Section I	381—394
The Rambles of Bhagavān Mahāvīra	381
Section II	395—401
Bhagavān Mahāvīra's Seats and Retreats	395
Section III	402—408
Bhagavān Mahāvīra's Endurance of Hardships	402
Section IV	409—415
Abandonment of Medication by Bhagavān Mahāvīra	409
Dietary Routine	411
Word-index (Glossary)	417
Subject-index	430

PREFACE

The *Āyāro* (Skt. *ĀCĀRĀṄGA SŪTRA*) begins with the quest for the soul. Even as the starting point of the philosophy of Vedānta is the *Sūtra: athāto brahma-jijñāsā* "Now begins the quest for the Supreme Reality (*Brahmā*)"¹, the starting point of Jain Philosophy is *athāto ātma-jijñāsā* "Now begins the quest for the soul."

Meaning of Ācāra: That the soul exists, that it is eternal as well as ephemeral, that it itself is the doer of actions as well as the enjoyer of their fruits, that there is "bondage" and there are causes of it; that there is "liberation" and there are means to attain it — these are the basic principles on which rests the edifice of the Jain Ethics or *ācāra*. As the *Ācārāṅga* elucidates all these, it may be spoken of as a treatise on *ācāra* or spiritual conduct.

According to Jain philosophy, neither mere knowledge of philosophy nor mere practice of moral conduct can help one to attain liberation. It is the proper synthesis of both — knowledge and conduct — that leads to the final emancipation². It is, therefore, not possible to keep these two in watertight compartments. The present canonical text, however, mainly deals with the *ācāra*, and hence it may be spoken of as the "Book of *ācāra*".

The term *ācāra*, as it was used by Bhagavān Mahāvīra, does not connote mere moral conduct, but it was used in a wider sense. According to him, *ācāra* is of five kinds, viz., knowledge, faith, self-discipline, austerities and spiritual exertion. Thus it is clear that *ācāra* includes all the three — knowledge, faith as well as self-discipline (or spiritual conduct), which are the right means of achieving liberation.

1. *Brahma-Sūtra*, 1/1.

2. *Sūyagado*, 1/12/11: *Āhaṃsu vijjācaraṇaṃ pamokkho*.

As the *Ācārāṅga Sūtra* describes the means of achieving liberation, it has been called the essence of the entire Jain Instruction³.

Samatva which stands for the practice of both "Equanimity" and "Equality" forms the basis of the science of ethics prescribed by Bhagwān Mahāvīra. That is why, the *Ācārāṅga Sūtra* states that one who perceives "equality" in all living beings and observes "equanimity" in all sorts of various opposite situations created by gain and loss, pleasure and pain, living and dying, applause and condemnation, and honour and insult, would never indulge in any action which is against the ethical code: *sammatta-damśi na karei pāvāṇ*⁴.

Performance and Renunciation of Karma: The *karma-yoga* i. e., disciplined performance of action and the *karma-samnyāsa* i. e., renunciation of action have been the subject of debate for thousand of years in Indian systems of religion, all of which have enjoined the renunciation and performance of *karma* in a smaller or greater degree. When the *Bhagavad-Gītā*⁵ sings: "*na hi dehabhṛtā śakyam tyaktum karmāṇyaśeṣataḥ*", "No living organism bound in bodily existence can renounce karma completely", it strikes the right note. In light of the fact that the body and activity are inseparable, we can speak of the renunciation of *karma* only in a very limited sense. How then can renunciation be defined? Various criteria of renunciation have been laid down to answer this question. For instance, the *Āyāro* draws a line of demarcation between the spiritually disciplined and undisciplined actions, and defines renunciation as relinquishment of the latter⁶. And the *Gītā* explains renunciation in terms of giving up of attachment to actions and desire for their fruits.

3. *Ācārāṅga Nirvyukti*, verse 9: "*Ittha ya mokhovāo esa ya sūro pavayaṇassa*."

4. *Āyāro*, 3/28.

5. *Gītā*, 18/11.

6. *Āyāro*, 1/7

One may see verbal difference in the above definitions, but it would not be right to infer that they differ in meaning. For performance of actions infused with attachment and desire for the fruit amounts to spiritually indisciplined actions. Thus both the *Āyāro* and the *Gītā*⁷ extol the same ideal of renunciation. Yet it is strange that two different traditions have evolved from the philosophies of the two sacred texts. The tradition based on the *Gītā* lays emphasis on idea of performing actions, but does not seem to give weight to the idea of giving up attachment and desire for gaining fruits of actions. On the other hand, the tradition that emerged on the basis of the *Āyāro* seems to have given stress on mere renunciation of actions but failed to give proper weight to the idea of renunciation of attachment, aversion and desire. Thus both the traditions had originally accepted the same ideal, but in course of time they began to proceed in different directions, and the verbal differences made them appear different.

Bhagavān Mahāvīra, however, never insisted on the renunciation of all actions in the very first step of *Sādhana*. For the beginners he emphasised the need for purifying actions. The *Āyāracūlā*⁸ (i. e. the appendix to the *Āyāro*) explains Bhagavān Mahāvīra's position in the following words:-

7. *Gītā*, 18/9:

Kāryamityeva yatkarma, niyatām kriyatēṛjuna!
Saṅgaṁ tyaktvā phalaṁ caiva, sa tyāgaḥ sāttviko mataḥ.

8. *Āyāracūlā*, 15/72-76:

na sakkā na souṁ saddā, soyavisayamāgatā,
rāgadosā u je tattha, te bhikkhū parivajjāe.
no sakkā rūvamadatṭhum, cakkhuvisayamāgayam,
rāgadosā u je tattha, te bhikkhū parivajjāe.
no sakkā na gamdhamagghāum, nāsāvisayamāgayam,
rāgadosā u je tattha, te bhikkhū parivajjāe.
no sakkā na rasamanāsāum, jīhāvisayamāgayam,
rāgadosā u je tattha, te bhikkhū parivajjāe.
no sakkā na samvedeum, phāsavisayamāgayam,
rāgadosā u je tattha, te bhikkhū parivajjāe.

"It is impossible not to hear words within the reach of the sense of hearing, but it is possible not to be attached or averse to them. An ascetic should not, therefore, be a victim of attachment and aversion to the objects of the sense of hearing. Similarly, it is impossible not to smell, taste, see and touch objects within the reach of the sense-organs of smell, taste, sight and touch, but it is possible to give up attachment and aversion to them. The ascetic should not, therefore, become a victim of attachment and aversion.

Ascetic conduct (*ācāra*) consists in doing actions unmotivated by attachment and aversion. According to the *Ācārāṅga*,⁹ that man is deemed to be the possessor of right knowledge whose actions are not sullied with attachment or aversion. Bhagavān Mahāvīra has expounded several forms of such conduct. The foremost among them is *ahimsā* or non-violence. The first chapter of the *Ācārāṅga* deals with this theme at length. The ensuing chapters give directions in regard to the cultivation of feelings of non-violence, non-possessiveness, celibacy, non-attachment, truth, etc. This code of conduct may in fact be spoken of as the 'code of equanimity'.

Lord Mahāvīra was the propounder of the philosophy of equanimity. He showed how human life could be transformed in the light of this doctrine. He did not forcibly impose any discipline on his followers, but allowed them the freedom of choice. He said, "One who sees things needs no instruction."¹⁰ "One who has the right vision begins to see the world and himself in a different light." *"Aṇṇahā ṇaṃ pāsae pariharejjā"*.¹¹

9. *Āyāro*, 1/13 :

jassete logaṃsi kamma-samarāmbhā pariṇṇāyā
bhavaṃti se hu muṇī pariṇṇāyakamme.

10. *Āyāro*, 2/85 :

uddeso pāsagassa natthi.

11. *Āyāro*, 2/118.

It gives me very great pleasure to see this great code of conduct based on the philosophy of transforming life in the light of the concept of equanimity published on the eve of the Twentyfifth Centenary of Bhagavān Mahāvīra.

— Acharya Tulsi

INTRODUCTION

1. The first *Śrutaskandha* of the *Āyāro* represents an early phase of the ascetic ideology, and the language and metres of the work are directly derived from the Vedic idiom. The terminology used in the text is related to an earlier state of Nirgranthism and is at the same time the harbinger of its later development as a system of morality and religion with its own definite disciplinary code. The text opens with a passage which embodies the perennial concern of philosophers, doubts that embarrass their minds. The cosmic doubt of the Vedic seer — *kuta ājātā kuta iyaṃ viśṛṣṭiḥ* (from whence did it sprint forth, from whence did this creation emanate?) — finds its counterpart in the *Āyāro*'s query about the self — *ke ahaṃ āsī, ke vā cute peccā bhaviṣṣāmi*² (what was I, what shall I be in the next birth after departure from here?) — which is reminiscent of a heresy recorded in the *Majjhima Nikāya*³ — *ayaṃ nu kho satto kuto āgato, so kuhingāmi bhaviṣṣati* (whence from indeed this being come, where shall he go?). Mortification of the flesh for the regeneration of the spirit is the quintessence of the philosophy of the *Āyāro* which is replete with exhortations to the spiritual aspirant to subjugate the passions through infinite endurance of hardships and relinquishment of wordly interests. "Stoutly tolerating the (unpleasant) sound and touch and subduing the lust for life, the saint, true to his saintliness, mortifies his body born of past karma; he subsists on the stale and insipid (food), being courageous and equanimous; he is indeed the saint, who has crossed the flood and is rightly designated as one 'who has crossed', 'who is emancipated', 'who has withdrawn himself' — thus do I say"⁴. In fact, the biography of Mahāvira in the *Āyāro*, chapter IX, which undoubtedly is

¹ R̥gveda, X, 129. 6.

² I, 1, 1. 2.

³ I, p. 12 (NNMEdn).

⁴ *Āyāro*, I, 2. 6. 161-5:

the oldest and at the same time absolutely free from mythology, is an illustration of the extreme type of asceticism adumbrated in the text. We shall see in what follows the religio-moral spirit that characterized the age of Mahāvīra and has found vent through the pithy sayings and pregnant expressions which are so abundant in the work under review.

2. Now to come to the pithy sayings, they cover a large number of themes, namely, rejection of violence or non-violence, bondage and emancipation, fearlessness, friendship, attachment to life, *ātman* in its empirical and transcendental aspects, mysticism, renunciation, asceticism, clusters of essentially connected concepts, prophetic injunctions (*prajñāpandā*), and such other subjects which offer copious insight into the moral and spiritual background of Mahāvīra's teachings.

(i) *Non-violence*: The man of violence (*damda*) is indeed he who is unmindful and addicted to wordly pleasures⁵. Above, below, and in front, people indulge in violent activities against living beings individually and collectively in many ways; discerning this, a wise man neither himself inflicts violence on these bodies, nor induces others to do so, nor approves of their doing so⁶. The unwise are sleeping, the wise are awake; know that pain is the cause of evil in the world; knowing the welfare of the world, one should eschew weapons of violence⁷.

*sadde ya phāse ahiyāsamāna
nivvinda naṇḍiṇi iha jīviyassa
muṇi moṇaṇ samāḍāya, dhuṇe kamma-sarīragam
paṇḍam lūhaṇ sevanti vīrā samattadamsiṇo
esa oghaṇḍare muṇi, tiṇṇe mutte virāte, viyāhile tti bemi*

5. *ibid.*, I, 1.4.68-69:

*vīrehiṇ eyaṇ abhibbūya dūṭṭhaṇ, saṇjalehiṇ
sayā jalehiṇ sayā appamallehiṇ
je pamatte gūṇāṭṭhie, se hu damde pavuccati*

6. *ibid.*, I, 8, 1.17-18:

*uḍḍhaṇ ahaṇ tiriyaṇ disāsu, savvato savvāvaṇṭi
ca ṇaṇ paḍiyakkaṇ jīvehiṇ kamma-samāraṇbhe ṇaṇ
taṇ pariṇāya mehāvi ṇeva sayaṇ etehiṇ kāehiṇ daṇḍam samāraṇbhe-
jjā, ṇevaṇnehiṇ etehiṇ kāehiṇ daṇḍam samāraṇbhāvejjā,
ṇevaṇṇe etehiṇ kāehiṇ daṇḍam samāraṇbhante vi samaṇu jāṇejjā*

7. *ibid.*, I, 3.1.1-3:

*suttā anuṇṭi sa'ā, muṇiṇo sayā jāgaraṇṭi, loyaṇṇi jāpa ahiyāya
dukkhaṇ, samayaṇ loḡassa jāṇittā, ettha satthovarae*

(ii) *Bondage and Emancipation*: Bondage and emancipation are within yourself - *bandha-pamokkho tujjha ajjhatheva*⁸. Blinded and immersed in worldly pleasures, the fool with bondage unsevered and attachment not cut off, dwells in darkness, being ignorant, and is never able to get at the command⁹. Attached to things sensual, they bewail bitterly, and on account of desires, fail to get at emancipation¹⁰. Man! restrain thyself, and thus thou shalt be emancipated from suffering¹¹.

(iii) *Fearlessness*: The unmindful is beset with fear on all sides; for the mindful, there is no fear from any side¹².

(iv) *Friendship*: Man! thou art thy own friend, why wishest thou for a friend beyond thyself¹³.

(v) *Attachment to Life*: All beings are fond of life, they like pleasure, dislike pain, disfavour injury, wish for long life, long for survival; life is dear to all¹⁴.

(vi) *Ātman in its Empirical and Transcendental Aspects*
There are beings who are blind, sunk in darkness; they experience ups and downs, indulging in an activity (anew) for the first time, or repeating it many times¹⁵. Having con-

8. *ibid.* I, 5, 2, 36.

9. *ibid.* I, 4, 4, 45:
petthim palichinnehim, āyāsaoya-gaḍhie bāle
avvocchinnabandhāpe, aṇabhikkamṭasaṃjoe,
tamaṃsi avijāṇao āṇāe laṃbho gatti tti bemi

10. *ibid.* I, 6, 1, 7:
rūvehim sattā kaluṇaṃ thagaṃti,
niyāṇao te na labhaṃti mokkhaṃ

11. *ibid.* I, 3, 3, 64:
purisā! attānameva abhiṇigijjha, evaṃ dukkhā pamokkhasi

12. *ibid.* I, 3, 4, 75:
sāvato pamattassa bhayaṃ, sāvato appamattassa natthi bhayaṃ

13. *ibid.* I, 3, 3, 62:
purisā! tumameva tumaṃ mittam, kiṃ bahiyā mittamicchasi?

14. *ibid.* I, 2, 3, 63:
savve pāṇā piyāyā suhasāyā dukkhaṇaḍḍikūlā
appiyavahā piyajīviṇo jīviukāmā
savvesim jīviyaṃ piyaṃ

15. *ibid.* I, 6, 1, 9-10:
saṃti pāṇā aṇḍhā tamaṃsi viyāhiyā
tāmeva saṃti asāṃti atiacca uccāvayaphāse paḍisaṃvedeṃti

tained the stream, leaving the world, the great (soul) becomes free from karma and knows and perceives (the truth) and does not desire (anything), being introspective; having comprehended the coming and going, he crosses the path of birth and death, being established in perfection (viz. the state of emancipation)¹⁶. For the seer, there is no need of instruction¹⁷. Of one who is free from *karma* there exists no description. It is *karma* that gives rise to (the necessity of) imposition (of characteristics)¹⁸.

(vii) *Mysticism*: The wise is neither bound nor liberated¹⁹. The *ātman* is the knower, and the knower is the *ātman*: that by which one knows is the *atman*²⁰. The liberated state is not expressible through language; nor is it amenable to reasoning; intellect does not penetrate there; the passionless (*ātman*) is conversant with the nature of 'what is without support' (viz. emancipation); he is neither long nor small. neither feminine nor masculine nor otherwise (neuter) there is no analogy; it is formless existence; there is no condition of the unconditioned²¹.

(viii) *Renunciation*: Such person is rightly called 'houseless' who is straightforward, follows the right path, and

16. *ibid.*, I, 5. 6. 120-122:

viṇaettu soyam ṇikkhamma, esa maham akammā jāpati pāsati
paṇilehāe ṇāvakaṇkhati, iha āgatiṇ gatiṇ pariṇṇāya accē
jāi-maraṇassa vaṭṭamaggam vakkhāya-rae

17. *ibid.*, I, 2. 3. 73:

uddeso pāsagassa ṇatthi

18. *ibid.*, I, 3. 1. 18-19:

akammassa vavahāro na vijjai
kammupā uvāhi jāyai

19. *ibid.*, I, 2. 6. 182:

kusale puṇa ṇo baddhe, ṇo mukke

20. *ibid.*, I, 5. 5. 104:

je āyā se viṇṇāyā, je viṇṇāyā se āyā, jeṇa vijāpati se āyā

21. *ibid.*, I, 5. 6. 123-140:

savve sarā piyaṭṭapṇi
takkā jaiṭha ṇa vijjai
maṭṭi tattha ṇa gāhiyā
oe appatitṭhānassa kheyaṇṇe
se ṇa dihe, na hasse.....
ṇa itthi, ṇa purise, ṇa aṇṇahā.....
uvamā ṇa vijjae
arūvi sattā
apayassa payam ṇatthi

practises deceitlessness²². Emancipated indeed are those who are gone to the other shore; conquering greed through non-greed, he does not addict to pleasures that might offer themselves; being free from greed, he renounces the world; ceasing to act, he knows and perceives (the truth); he has no desires because of his insight; he is rightly called 'houseless'²³

(ix) *Asceticism*: The sixth chapter called *Dhuya-Ajjhayaṇa* contains material which is definitely the precursor of the *dhutaṅga* of early Buddhism. *Dhuta* stands for austerities which wash away the passions. The sage who is well versed in the *dhamma* and firm in the discipline of austerity (*vidhūtakappe*) is always the destroyer of the effects of karma; to a monk who has given up the garment, it does never occur; my clothes are torn, I shall beg for new ones... such unclothed monk, while thus exerting himself in the discipline, is often exposed to the (*harsh*) touch of grassblades, of cold, heat, gnats and mosquitoes; he endures such other various hardships, remaining unclothed in order to move light; he is well established in penance as propounded by the Exalted One; realising this in full and in all respects, he should rightly comprehend equanimity²⁴. Of the enlightened ones the arms are emaciated and flesh and blood are reduced to the utmost²⁵. "Look at (the state of)

22. *ibid.*, I, 1.3.35:

se jahā vi anagāre ujjukāde piyāgapadivaṇṇe amāyaṃ
kuvvaṃāṇe viyāhiṇe

23. *ibid.*, I, 2.2.35-39:

vimukkā hu te jaṇā je jaṇā pāragāmino, lobhamalobheṇa
dugamchamāṇe laddhe kāme nābhigāha. vīṇaṭṭu lobham
nikkhamma esa akamme jāṇati-pāsati padīlehaṇe ṇavakamkhati;
esa anagāretti pavuccati

24. *ibid.*, I, 6.3.59-65:

eyaṃ khu mupī āyāpaṃ sayā suakkhāyadhamme vidhūtakappe
ṇijhosaittā. je acele parivusie tassa paṃ bhikkhussa ṇo
evaṃ bhavati-parijunṇe me vattihe, vatthapaṃ jāissāmi.....
aduvā tattha parakkamaṃtaṃ bhujjo acelaṃ taṇa-phāsā
phusaṃti, siyaphāsā phusaṃti, teuphāsā phusaṃti, dāṇsa-masaga-
phāsā phusaṃti, egayare appayare virūvarūve phāse abhīyāseti
acele lāghavaṃ āgāmamaṇe. tave se abhisamaṇṇāgae bhavati.
jaheyaṃ bhagavatā paveditaṃ tameva abhisameccā savvato
savvattāse samattameva samabhiṇṇāyā

25. *ibid.*, I, 6.3.67:

āgayapaṇṇānāṇaṃ kiṇā bahā bhavaṃti,
payaṇe ya maṇsa-ṇe.

attachment; men are bound by fetters, sunk in spirit and overpowered by lust; be not, therefore, afraid of hardship. He who is perfectly and completely enlightened about the acts of violence and from whom even his robbers do not fear harm, is indeed one who has shaken off anger, pride, deceit and greed; he is indeed worthy being called 'the metamorphosed one' — thus I say. Such person, on account of his renunciation of the body, is considered as standing 'in the forefront of the battle'. He is indeed the sage who has reached the other side. Even on being killed, he stands still like a beam approached by death, courting death as the dissolution of the body - thus I say"²⁶. This discipline unto death finds its consummation in the eighth chapter called the *Vimoha-Ajjhayaṇa* (chapter on liberation).

(x) *The Clusters of Essentially Connected Concepts*: Our text contains clusters of words connoting similar concepts which throw a flood of light on the evolution of those concepts—the history of their origin and the later course of their development. Thus, for instance, the cluster—*āyāvādi*, *logāvādi*, *kammāvādi*, *kiriyaāvādi* (respectively, believers in soul, world, karma, action)²⁷ represents the early stage of the doctrine of soul and rebirth in Indian philosophy. Similarly, the bunch—*pāṇa* (breathing), *bhūta* (existing), *jīva* (living), *satta* (sentient-creature)²⁸ — indicates the divergent conceptions of the principle of soul in our ancient thought. On the other hand, the group—*gaṇṭha* (bondage), *moha* (delusion), *māra* (death), *niraya* (hell)²⁹—

26. *ibid*, I, 6. 5. 108-113:

tamhā saṃgaṇṭhī ti pāsaha, gaṇṭhehiṇ gaṇṭhiyā narā visappā
kānavappiya. tamhā lūhāḍo paṇivittasejja, jassime ārambhā
sāvato savvattāse supariṇṇāyā bhavaripi jessime lūsiṇo pa
parivittasampi, se vanti kohaṇ ca māṇaṇ ca māyaṇ ca lobhaṇ
ca esa tuṭṭe viyāhite tti bemi
kāyassa viovāe esa saṃgāmasāse viyāhite, se hu
pāraṃgame muṇi avi haṃmamāṇe phalaḡāvaṇaṭṭhi kālovaṇite
kaṃkhejja kālaṇ jāva saṇṭrabheu tti bemi.

27. *ibid*, I, 1. 1. 5:

se āyāvādi logāvādi kammāvādi kiriyaāvādi.

28. *ibid*, I, 4. 1. 1.

29. *ibid*, I, 1. 6. 134.

stands for the cause as well as the state of worldly life in the earlier phase of the ancient religions of our country. In I. 2. 4. 92, the terms *dukkha* (suffering) and *naraga-tirikkha* (hell-animal) are found added. The cluster—*ātavaṃ, nāṇavaṃ, veyavaṃ, dhammavaṃ, baṃbhavaṃ* (respectively, established in *ātman*, knowledge, *Vedas*, *dharma*, *Brahmana*)³⁰ refers to the state of interaction of the Brāhmaṇa and Śramaṇa cultures, which gave rise to an integrated Indian culture in later times. The highest achievements of the spiritual aspirant are grouped together in the bunch—*sāṃti* (peace), *virati* (abstinence), *wasama* (calmness), *ñivvāna* (liberation), *soyaviya* (purity), *ajjaviya* (uprightness), *maddaviya* (modesty), *lāghaviya* (lightness), *anāti-vattiya* (non-transgression)³¹. The cluster—*hiyaṃ* (good), *suhaṃ* (blissful), *khemam* (wholesome), *nissesaṃ* (complete), *aṇugāmiyaṃ* (favourable)³² represents the different aspects of the ancient concept of the highest good, the summum bonum of the spiritual disciplines. The firm conviction about a particular doctrine was expressed by any of these words—*ditthi* (view), *mutti* (faith, Cf. Pāli *adhimutti*), *purakkāra* (dominant idea), *saṇṇa* (notion), *nivesana* (persuasion)³³.

(xi) *Prophetic Injections (Paṇṇavaṇā)*: Our text contains a few excerpts which are given as universal injunctions of the Exalted Ones, past, present, and future. These passages are definitely of very great antiquity, if not the words of the Nāyaputta himself. One such excerpt is given at the very outset of Chapter IV, called *Sammatta-Ajjhayaṇa*. It runs as follows: Thus do I say—the *Arahantas* (the Revered Ones) and the *Bhagavaṃtas* (the Lords) of the past, present and future, all say thus, speak thus, enjoin thus (*evaṃ paṇṇavaṇte*), explain thus—all breathing, all existing, all living, all sentient creatures should not be killed, nor treated with violence, nor abused, nor tormented, nor driven away. This is the discipline which is pure, eternal, inalterable, and declared by the enlightened ones who have

30. *ibid.*, I, 3. 1. 4.

31. *ibid.*, I, 6. 5. 102.

32. *ibid.*, I, 8. 4. 61.

33. *ibid.*, I, 5. 4. 68.

comprehended (the nature of) the world³⁴. Non-violence is always the theme of these injunctions.

3. Our text provides a vivid picture of the ascetic life that dominated the society of the days of Mahāvīra and Buddha. Some of the expressions used in the text are, in fact, the prototypes of what we find enunciated in the systematic works of early Jainism and Buddhism. The moral and monastic discipline of the Jainas which was codified in later times are discernible here in a rudimentary form couched in expressions which are pregnant with principles that served as a bridge between the ascetic codes of the pre- and post-Mahāvīra periods. Even the five *Mahāvratas* (great vows) which have the universal sanction of all schools of Indian philosophers are here only in the process of evolution. There are also ideas and concepts that gave way to their nearby counterparts which gained currency in the changed set-up. We shall here study a number of such amorphous expressions to see how they contributed to the evolution of concepts which later on became static and solid in their connotation.

(i) *The Five Mahavratas (Great Vows)*: Of the five *mahāvratas* of later days, the first, viz. *ahiṃsā*, has found place in our text in numerous contexts, and is indeed the persistent theme dominating over all other principles that constituted the moral life of those times. All types of *hiṃsā* perpetrated on all kinds of beings, beginning from the one-sensed organisms up to the fully developed five-sensed beings, are condemned. The words *daṃḍa* (panel instrument) and *saṭṭha* (weapon of violence) are repeatedly used to denote violence. A person who is careless (*pamatte*) in his conduct and is engrossed in sensual pleasures (*guṇaṭṭhite*) is called *daṃḍa* (panel instrument)³⁵. All suffering is due

34. *ibid.* I, 4.1.1:

se bemi-je ya alyā je ya paḍuppanṇā je ya āgamaṣṣā
arahaṃtā bhagavaṃto te savve evamaikkhamti, evaṃ bhāsarati,
evaṃ paṇnavemti, evaṃ parūvemti-savve paṇṇā savve bhūṭā
savve jīvā savve sattā na haratavvā, na ajjāveyavyā, na
parighettavvā, na paritāveyavvā, na uddavcyavvā,
esa dhamme suddhe piye sāsae samicca loyaṃ kheyanneh -
im paveiiye.

35. *ibid.* I, 1.4.69:

je pamatte guṇaṭṭhie, se hu daṃḍe pavuccati.

to *himsā qua-ārambha* (violent action)³⁶. The word *sacca* (truth) which is the designation of the second *mahāvratā* is used with a special connotation in our text. *Sacca* stands for the word of the Enlightened One, that is, the discipline propounded by Him³⁷, and not simply 'desisting from falsehood'. The third traditional *mahāvratā*, viz. (desisting from) *adiṇṇādāna* (unauthorized appropriation) is mentioned immediately after (desisting from) *sattha* (weapon of violence)³⁸. This second position occupied by the traditionally third *mahāvratā* tallies with the Buddhist custom of placing it at the second place in the list of *śīlas*. As regards the traditional *mahāvratā* of *brahmacarya* (celibacy), our text usually mentions it as '*vasittā bāmbhacer-aṃsi*' (practising monkhood, literally 'living in chastity')³⁹. It is also used singly on one occasion⁴⁰. The use of the expression '*bāmbhavam*' as synonymous with '*dhammavam*', also points to a wider connotation of the word '*bāmbhacera*'⁴¹. The *mahāvratā* of *aparigraha* (non-possession of property) is stated through the phrase '*pariggahaṃ amama-yamaṇe*' (not attached to the possessions)⁴², which does not formulate the vow in the fashion of its traditional definition. The indefinite nature of this vow in the Buddhist tradition confirms the position of our text in the matter. This review of the state of *mahāvratas* in the first *Śrutas-kandha* of the *Āyāro* clearly demonstrates the uncrystallized forms of the great vows in those days. A passage of the *Āyāro* deserves our consideration in this connection. It mentions a discipline of three *jāmas*⁴³, which, if explained in the context of *sūtras* I. 8. 1. 3-5, might stand for

36. *ibid.* I, 3. 1. 13 & 4. 3. 29;

ārambhajam dukkhamiṇam ti naccā.

37. *ibid.* I, 5. 5. 95;

tameva saccam nīsamkam jam jipehim paveiyam.

38. *ibid.* I, 1. 3. 58 & I, 8. 1. 4.

aduvā adiṇṇādānam;

aduvā adiṇṇamāiyamti

39. *ibid.* I, 4. 4. 44; I, 6. 2. 30 & I, 6. 4. 78,

40. *ibid.* I, 5. 2. 35;

etesu ceva bāmbhaceram ti bemi

41. *ibid.* I, 3. 1. 4.

42. *ibid.* I, 2. 5. 88.

43. *ibid.* I, 8. 1. 15:

jāmā tippī udāhiyā

the great vows of *pāṇāvāyāo veramaṇaṃ* (desisting from killing), *adimṇādāṇāo veramaṇaṃ* (desisting from theft) and *musāvāyāo veramaṇaṃ* (desisting from false speech), the meaning of *musāvāya* being analogous to that given in the *Tattvārthabhāṣya*, VII. 9, which appears to be a faithful record of the original content of the vow. These *sūtras* run as follows:

(3) *ihamegesim āyāragoyare ṇo suṇisaṃte bhavati, te iha āraṃbhatṭhi aṇuvayamāṇā haṇamāṇā, ghāyamāṇā, haṇato jāvi samaṇujāṇamāṇā*; (4) *aduṇā adimṇamāi yaṃti*; (5) *aduṇā vāyāo viṇjaṃti, taṃ jahā -- atthi loe, natthi loe, dhuve loe, adhuve loe. . .* That is "(3) Some people are not well instructed as regards the subject of conduct; they are desirous of actions, repeat them in words, they kill (creatures), make others kill and approve of (such acts); (4) or, they take what has not been given to them; (5) or, they pronounce divergent opinions, viz., 'the world exists', 'the world does not exist', 'the world is eternal', 'the world is non-eternal', and so on." Here the content of the *sūtra* no. 5 may be interpreted as standing for *musāvāya* (false speech) of later times, and we have the *Tattvārthabhāṣya*, VII. 9, which explains the vow in a similar fashion, to endorse such interpretation. The traditional great vows as reflected in our text are thus the precursors of the classical codification of the subject in the other *Āgamas* and the treatises. The word '*vrata*' (vow) is also conspicuous by its absence in our text.

(ii) *The Mārga (path)*: The classical definition of the *moksa-mārga* (path of emancipation) is consisting in *samyag-darśana* (right view), *samyag-jñāna* (right knowledge) and *samyak-cāritra* (right conduct) is absent. A very simple, though immensely poignant, description of the path of emancipation has found vent in the statement: *se kiṭṭati tesim samutṭhitāṇaṃ nikkhattaṃ dāṇaṃ samāhitāṇaṃ paṇṇāṇamaṇṭṭāṇaṃ iha muttimaggam* (He, the Exalted One, here propounds the path of emancipation to those who are exerting their spiritual vigour, have given up weapons of violence, are practising meditation, and are full of penetrating wisdom)⁴⁴. The spiritual vigour, mentioned here, stands for

44. *ibid.* I, 6.1.3.

vīrya (energy) which is the *sine qua non* of all spiritual activity, rejection of violence is the epitome of the *śīlas*, and the elements of *samādhi* (meditation) and *prajñā* (penetrating wisdom) are clearly mentioned in the statement. *Śīla*, *samādhi* and *prajñā*, which are traditionally known as constituting the Buddhist path of emancipation, are thus succinct in the above description. As regards the *samyag-darśana* of Jainism, it is expressed by the term *damsaṇa* in the following passage: *se vaṁtā kohaṁ ca māṇaṁ ca māyaṁ ca lobhaṁ ca; etam pāssagassa damsanaṁ uwaratasatthassa paliyamtakarassa āyāṇaṁ sagaḍabbhi* (he conquers anger, pride, deceit, and greed; this is the view of the seer who desists from weapons of violence, has put an end to the sources (of *samsāra*), being the destroyer of his *karmas*)⁴⁵. In another passage⁴⁶ the items of *pejja* (lust), *dosa* (hatred), *moha* (delusion), *gabbha* (womb), *jamma* (birth), *māra* (death), *naraga* (hell), *tiriya* (animal) and *dukkha* (suffering) are to be conquered for attaining the right view. On yet another occasion⁴⁷ this *damsaṇa* (view) is identified with *ditṭhi* (view), *mutti* (faith), etc., which leaves no doubt that the concept is the forerunner of the *samyag-darśana* or *samyag-drṣṭi* in the system of Jaina ethics. As for the *samyag-jñāna*, the expression *paññā* (Skt. *Prajñāna*), mentioned above, is the prototype which is represented by the Pali word '*paññā*'. As regards *samyak-cāritra*, the statements—*ahege dhammamādāya āyānappabhiṁ supaṇ-ihie care apaliyamāṇe daḍhe savaṇaṁ gehiṇa pariṇāya* (having embraced the *dhamma* one should practise it from the very beginning with extreme precaution and firmness, not succumbing (to worldly things), fully abandoning all lust⁴⁸, *vaigutte ajjhappasamvude parivajjae sadā pāvaṇa* (being reserved in his speech and guarding his mind, he should always avoid sin)⁴⁹, and the like contain the rudiments of the system of moral conduct formulated later on. The concept of *mārga* (path) thus is represented in our text through a terminology which is most popular in character and far away from the later crystallization in the systematic treatises dealing with the topic.

45. *ibid.* I, 3. 4. 71-73.

46. *ibid.* I, 3. 4. 83.

47. *ibid.* I, 5. 4. 67-68.

48. *ibid.* I, 6. 2. 35-37.

49. *ibid.* I, 5. 4. 87.

(iii) *Āsava*: The expression *āsava* is used in the sense of hardship to be borne by an ascetic. "Even if the creatures injure the body, he should not move from the place; he should endure (with patience), being afflicted with different types of *āsava*s (hardships)"⁵⁰. This is also exactly the meaning of the Pali word '*āsava*' in the phrase- *adhiṇvāsanā pakātabbā āsavā* (the hardships which are to be got rid of through endurance)⁵¹. The word is used in this very sense in the phrase- *je āsavā te parissavā, je parissavā te āsavā* (what is hardship is privation, what is privation is hardship)⁵². The meaning of the word *parissavā* in this phrase is analogous to that of the Pali word *parissayā* which stands for the privation of hunger, heat, cold, insect-bites, and so on⁵³. This reminds us of the *parisahas* in the second chapter of the *Uttarajjhayaṇa*. The expression *āsava* gradually underwent a great semantic change in the ethical system of the Jains.

(iv) *Nivvāṇa*, *Parivivvāṇa*, *Pamokkha*: We have already given the synonyms of *ñivvāṇa* in 2 (X) which unequivocally indicate a state of spiritual peace and tranquillity and pliability of body and mind. The expression *ñivvuḍa* or *ñivvuta* which are past participles of *ñivvāṇa* stands for a person who desists from sinful activities and is free from all desires⁵⁴. The expression *parivivvāṇa* however is used to denote freedom from fear and suffering⁵⁵, the past participle '*parivivvuḍa*' standing for the state of being a source of fearlessness and freedom from attachment and animosity⁵⁶, the expression *pamokkha* refers to deliverance from suffering *dukkhā pamokkhasi*⁵⁷ or death (*marañā*

50. *ibid.* I, 8.8.10.

pāṇā dehaṃ vihiṃsaṃti, tñāṇā ṇa viubbhame āsavehiṃ vivittehiṃ tippamāṇehiyāse.

51. *Majjhima Nikāya*, I, p. 15. (NNM Edn.)

52. *Āyāro*, I, 4.2.12.

53. *Suttanipāṭa* (Sāriputtasutta)

54. *Āyāro*, I, 4.3.38 & I, 8.1.16.

je ñivvuḍa pāvehiṃ kammehiṃ, añidāṇa te viyahiṃ.

55. *ibid.* I, 1.6.121.

ñijjhāṭṭā paḍilehiṭṭā patteyaṃ parivivvāṇaṃ.

56. *ibid.* I, 6.5.107.

57. *ibid.* I, 3.1.9. & I, 3.3.64.

pamuccati)⁵⁸. *Nivvāṇa* and its equivalents thus primarily stand for emancipation from suffering, and not for any positive condition of unimpeded bliss as the later thinkers try to interpret them.

(v) *Samdhi*: The word appears as standing for the 'junction' of birth and death, and is perhaps the precursor of the concept of *pratisamdhi* (rebirth). The expression *rūva-samdhi* (material juncture, or the meeting point of matter and spirit) in the following passage clinches the issue: "Those who are not addicted to sinful activities might be liable to calamities, but the steadfast will bear them. As in the past so in the future, the body is (always) subject to change and destruction, unstable, transient, non-eternal, fattening and defattening, and of a changeable nature; receive this material juncture (*rūvasamdhi*). For him who looks at things rightly, is devoted to one purpose, is disentangled and detached, there is no passage (from birth to birth)"⁵⁹. One who has searched out the (proper) moment (*khaṇa*) of the body has identified the juncture (*samdhi*)⁶⁰. The phrases *macciehiṃ samdhiṃ* (juncture with the mortal ones)⁶¹, *logassa samdhiṃ* (juncture of the world)⁶², and *samdhi jhosito* (the juncture destroyed)⁶³ confirm our conjecture about the connotation of the expression '*samadhi*'. The expressions '*saṅga*' and '*saṃjoga*' are also used in similar sense. Thus we have '*āvaṭṭasoe saṅgamabhijāṇati* (he knows the connection in the current of the whirl)⁶⁴, '*ete soyā viyakkhātā jehiṃ saṅgaṃ ti pāsahā* (these have been declared to be the currents, look at the connection

58. *ibid.* I, 3. 1. 15 & 3. 2. 36

59. *ibid.* I, 5. 2. 28-30:

je asattā pāvehiṃ kammehiṃ, udāhu te āyapkā phusaṃti iti udāhu vīre
te phāse puṭṭho hiyāsae se puvvaṃ peyaṃ pacchā peyaṃ bheura-dhammaṃ,
viddhamasaṇa-dhammaṃ, adhuvaṃ, aṇṭiyaṃ, asāsayaṃ, cayāvacaiyaṃ,
vipariṇāma-dhammaṃ, pāsaha eyaṃ rūvaṃ,
samdhiṃ samuppehamāṇassa egāyataṇa-rayassa iha vippamukkassa, ṇatthi
magge virayassa tti bemi.

60. *ibid.* I, 5. 2. 20-21.

ayaṃ samdhiṃ ti adakkhu
je imassa viggahassa ayaṃ khaṇeti maṇṇesi.

61. *ibid.* I, 2. 5. 127.

62. *ibid.* I, 3. 3. 51

63. *ibid.* I, 5. 3. 41 & I, 5. 5. 98.

64. *ibid.* I, 3. 1. 6.

with them)⁶⁵. As for the use of *saṃjoga*, we find passage like '*esa vīre pasamsie acceti logasaṃjogaṃ, esa ṇḍe pavuccati*' (he is extolled as a hero, he transcends the connection with the world, he is called the leader (to the right path))⁶⁶. The most significant use of the word is found in the following excerpt which gives a total view of the spiritual path from beginning to end: *dukkham logassa jaṇittā, vaṃtū logassa saṃjogaṃ, jaṃti vīrā mahājāṇaṃ, pareṇa param jaṃti, ṇāvakaṃkhaṃti jīvitam*⁶⁷. That is, knowing the suffering of the world, rejecting the connection (*saṃjoga*) with the world, the heroes go on the great path, they rise higher and higher and do not hanker after life. Here the four factors viz. (1) suffering, (2) the cause of suffering (viz. *saṃjoga*), (3) the path, and (4) the release from hankering which is the cause of suffering are succinctly stated. In other words, we here find the rudiments of the four *ārya-satyas* (noble truths) of the Buddhists, viz. *dukkha* (suffering), *samudaya* (cause of suffering), *nirodha* (release from suffering) and *mārga* (the path leading to the release).

(vi) *Sarvajñatā* (Omniscience): There is no reference to the subject in our text. On only one occasion, however, it is said "one who knows the one knows all (*savvaṃ jāṇai*) and one who knows all knows the one; there is fear for the careless from all quarters, and there is no fear for the careful from any quarter; one who controls the one controls the many, and one who controls the many controls the one"⁶⁸. The context here is the subjugation of anger, pride, deceit and greed and the insight of the seer (*pāsagassa daṃsaṇaṃ*). It should therefore be plausible that the knowledge in question refers to the comprehension of the nature and subjugation

65. *ibid.* 1. 5.6.118.

66. *ibid.* 1. 2.6.168-170.

67. *ibid.* 1. 3.4. 77-78.

68. *ibid.* 1. 3.4.74-76.

je egaṃ jāṇai se savvaṃ jāṇai
je savvaṃ jāṇai se egaṃ jāṇai
savvato pamattassa bhayaṃ, savvato appamattassa ṇatthi bhayaṃ
je egaṃ ṇāme se bahuṃ ṇāme
je bahuṃ ṇāme se egaṃ ṇāme.

tion of any of these passions and the consequent conquest of the remaining ones. An insight into the nature of any one of these passions is followed by an insight into the nature of the rest, or conversely the insight into the nature of all these is virtually an insight into the nature of any of them. The concept of traditional omniscience cannot be read into the above statement by any stretch of imagination.

(vii) *Paṇṇāna* (Perception, Insight): This expression played a very important role in the Jaina as well as Buddhist soteriology, as also epistemology. The Buddhist Pali equivalent of this word is *paññā* (Skt. *prajñā*). The expression *paṇṇāna* has an epistemological sense in the compounds *soṭapaṇṇāna* (auditory perception), *cakkhupaṇṇāna* (ocular perception), *ghāṇapaṇṇāna* (olfactory perception), *rasapaṇṇāna* (gustatory perception), *phāsaṇṇāna* (tactile perception)⁶⁹. This is comparable to the *Abhidharma* conception of *prajñā*, which is common to all states of consciousness⁷⁰. The other use of the term *paṇṇāna* in Jainism is in the sense of spiritual insight. Thus the compound *savva-samaṇṇā-gatapaṇṇāna*⁷¹ means 'insight into the nature of all things'. Similarly, the phrase *mahāvīrehiṇ paṇṇānamantehiṇ paṇṇānamupalabbha*⁷², stands for 'having obtained insight from the great heroes who are possessed of the insight'. This meaning of *paṇṇāna* is in essential conformity with that of the expression *prajñā* in Buddhism, which is the consummation of the practice of *śīla* (right conduct) and *samādhi* (meditation). The expression *paṇṇāna* thus as used in our text is pregnant with the future role that it was destined to play in Indian thought, specially Buddhism.

(viii) *Jñāna* (Knowledge) and *Darśana* (Perception): The phrase *jānati pāsati*⁷³ is used to denote two separate aspects of knowledge, the verb '*jānati*' standing for knowing through various means, and *pāsati* for knowing directly through perception or intuition. Thus in the description *sejjaṃ puṇa jāṇejjā saha sammuiyāe paravāgaraneṇaṃ*

69. *Ibid.*, I. 2. 1. 4 & I. 2. 1. 25.

70. *Abhidharma-kośa-Bhāṣya*, II. 24.

71. *Avāṇa*, I. 1. 7. 174.

72. *Ibid.*, I. 6. 4. 76.

73. *Ibid.*, I. 2. 2. 37 & I. 5. 5. 120.

*aṇṇesiṃ vā aṇṭie soccā*⁷⁴, the act of knowing is stated to be done through consensus of opinion, or interpretation made by others, or hearing from others. The verb *pāsati*, on the other hand, in the phrase *pāsamāṇe rūvāim pāsati*⁷⁵ like *suṇeti* in *suṇamāṇe saddāṇi suṇeti*, denotes simply the act of seeing with eyes, exactly as *suṇeti* denotes simply the act of hearing with ears. The word *pāsati* is also used, as in the statement *aṇṭo aṇṭo putidehaṇṭarāṇi pāsati puḍho vi savamṭāṇi*⁷⁶ (in the interior of the body he perceives the foul interior humours and their several streams), figuratively to denote acuteness of intelligence. The derivative *pāsaga* in the usages- *uddeso pāsagassa natthi*⁷⁷, *etam pāsagassa daṃsaṇaṃ*⁷⁸, *kimatthi uvādhī pāsagassa*⁷⁹, is used to denote 'a person of deep insight'. Similarly the derivative *nāṇi* (from *jāṇati*) in *nissāraṇi pāsiya nāṇi*⁸⁰, stands for a 'wise person' (the expression *pāsiya* meaning 'having observed'). It is thus found that the verbs *jāṇati* and *pāsati* or their derivatives were used in various ways to denote the different aspect of the act of knowing or intuition - sometimes accentuating the distinction, and on other occasions obliterating it beyond recognition. In the phrase *nissāraṇi pāsiya nāṇi*, just quoted, the acts of *jñāna* and *darśana* are simultaneous, the latter being a part of the former. The distinction between the derivatives *pāsaga* and *nāṇi* is almost nil, as both imply the penetrating insight of the seer or the knower, irrespective of the linguistic aspects of the term. The sharp line of demarcation between *jñāna* and *darśana* drawn in traditional Jaina philosophy is absent in our text and the controversies that emerged among the stalwart supporters of the different theories on the relationship between the two concepts should have found an aetiological solution from the usages of the terms in our text.

(ix) *Dhyāna* (meditation): The biography of the Nāyaputta in the ninth chapter is an illustration of the role that was

74. *ibid.* I. 1.1.3. & 1. 5.6. 114.

75. *ibid.* I. 1.5.94.

76. *ibid.* I. 2.5.130.

77. *ibid.* I. 2.3.73.

78. *ibid.* I. 3.4.72.

79. *ibid.* I. 3.4.87.

80. *ibid.* I. 3.2.45.

assigned to *jhāṇa* (Skt. *dhyāna*) in the life of an ascetic. His austerities flowed from his *jhāṇa*. He mediated day and night, self-restrained, mindful and concentrated (*rāṇḍi-vampi jhāyamāṇe appamutte samāhite jhāti*)⁸¹. He meditated internally fixing his eyes on the horizontal plane of the length of a man (*adu porisiṃ tiriyabhittiṃ cakkhumā-sajja aṇṭaso jhāti*)⁸². "That great hero, free from all distractions (*akukkue*) and seated (in a suitable posture) meditated—looking above, below and in front in concentration, without guile (*apaḍiṇṇe*). Free from passions (*akāsāyī*), devoid of greed (*vigatagehī*), and not attached to sounds and colours, he meditated."⁸³ The conditions of meditation, as succinctly given here, are comparable to those given in early Buddhist scripture. Although it is not possible to have a full picture of the course of meditation followed by the Nayaputta, the strands that we are able to gather from stray references make it appear plausible that it was not essentially different from the one practised and preached by Gautama Buddha. There is passage in our text which gives a somewhat vivid idea of what a meditator should do for gaining an insight into the nature of things. "With his (mental) eye wide open, and with a penetrating insight into (the nature of) the world (*logavipassī*) he knows the lower part, the upper part, as well as the horizontal region, with infatuated creatures circling round. He knows the juncture of the world. The hero who unfetters the fettered ones deserves praise. As is the interior (world of passions) so is the exterior (world circling round), and as is the exterior, so is the interior. In the interior of the body he perceives the foul interior humours and their several streams. The wise man, observing this and intelligently understanding the same, should not eat (his saliva). He should not throw himself flat on those things."⁸⁴ This is, obviously a prac-

81. *ibid.* I. 9.2.4.

82. *ibid.* I. 9.1.5.

83. *ibid.* I. 9.4. 14-15:

avi jhāti se mahāvīre, āsaṇṭatthe akukkue jhāṇaṃ uddhamāhe
tīriyaṃ ca, pehamāṇe samāhīmapaḍiṇṇe, akasā vigayagehī saddarūve-
su amucchie jhāti.

84. *ibid.* I. 2.5. 125-133.

āyatacakkhū loga-vipassī logassa aho bhāgaṃ jāṇai, uddhaṃ bhāgaṃ
jāṇai, tīriyaṃ bhāgaṃ jāṇai; gaḍhie aṇupariyaṭṭamāṇe
saṃdhiṃ vidittā iha macciehiṃ

tice which is the precursor of the *kāyānupassanā satipaṭṭhāna* (mindfulness concerning inspection of the interior of the body). An important aspect of this meditation is represented by the gerunds *pehāe* (having looked at)⁸⁵ and *sapehāe* (having comprehended)⁸⁶, which indicate the necessity of right cognitive attitude towards the world. This brief account of meditation, read with the eighth chapter called *Vimoha-Ajjhayaṇa* which prescribes immobility of the body at the highest stage, gives an idea of the earliest form of meditation prevalent in the early periods of Nirgranthism and Buddhism.

4. The above account of the contents of the earliest book of the *Ardhamāgadhi* scripture of the Jainas is given, as far as possible, on the basis of the text itself, as edited by Muni Shri Nathmalji, without any reference to the exegetical literature. This study may be considered supplementary to what has been done by the learned editor who has brought to bear his vast knowledge in disentangling many a problem that exercised the ingenuity of great scholars of the eminence of Jacobi and Schubring. The present edition with notes which are so penetrating is a valuable contribution to the field of Jainological studies. The editor has the blessings, and inspiration of the great saint and reformer Āchārya Śrī Tulsī who has been indefatigably working for the spiritual, moral and cultural regeneration of the nation for more than three decades. The translator Muni Shri Mahendra Kumārji, B.Sc., has also done his job excellently, and we hope he would continue to do such work in the future with unabated zeal.

Nathmal Tatia

30 June 1981

Jain Vishva Bharati, Landnun (Rajasthan).

esa vīre paṣaṇsīe, je baddhe paḍimōyae
jahā aṇto tahā bāhiṇ, jahā bāhiṇ tahā aṇto, aṇto aṇto dehaṇṭarāṇi
pāsati puḍhovi saṇṇṭāim, paṇḍie paḍilehāe
se maṇṇaṇ paṇṇāya, mā ya hu lālaṇ paccāsī, mā tesu tiricchamappā-
ṇamāvātae.

85. *ibid.* I. 2.5. 138.

86. *ibid.* I. 4.3.32.

CHAPTER I

COMPREHENSION AND
RENUNCIATION OF WEAPONS

पढमं अज्झयणं
सत्थ परिण्णा

PADHAMAM AJJHAYANAM

SATTHA-PARINNA

SECTION I

पढमो उद्देशो

Paḍhamo Uddeso

अप्पणो अत्थित्त-पदं

- १ सुयं मे आउसं ! तेणं भगवया एवमक्खायं—इहमेगेसि नो सण्णा
भवइ, तं जहा—
पुरत्थिमाओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
दाहिणाओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
पच्चत्थिमाओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
उत्तराओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
उड्ढाओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
अहे वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
अण्णयरीओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
अणुदिसाओ वा आगओ अहमंसि ।

Appaṇo atthittā-badam

1. Suyam me āusam! teṇam bhagavayā evamakkhāyam -
ihamegesim no saṇṇā bhavai, tam jahā —
Puratthimāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
Dāhiṇāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
Paccatthimāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
Uttarāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
Uddhāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
Ahe vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
Aṇṇayārīo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
Anudisāo vā āgao ahamamsi.

Existence of Soul

1. O Long-lived (disciple)! I have heard Bhagavān Mahāvīra speaking thus:

In this world there are many who do not have intuitive knowledge (*saññā*) (pertaining to their previous life) such as —

"Have I migrated (to this world) from the eastern direction,

or from the southern direction,

or from the western direction,

or from the northern direction,

or from the direction above,

or from the direction below,

or from any other direction,

or from any intermediate direction."

२. एवमेगेसि णो णातं भवति—

अत्थि मे आया ओववाइए,

णत्थि मे आया ओववाइए,

के अहं आसी ?

के वा इओ चुओ इह पेच्चा भविस्सामि ?

2. Evamegesim̐ ṇo ṇātaṁ bhavati —

Atthi me āyā ovavāie,

Natthi me āyā ovavāie,

Ke ahaṁ āsī ?

Ke vā iō cuo iha peccā bhavissāmi.

2. Similarly many (people) do not know —

"Does my soul go on reincarnating,

or does not my soul go on reincarnating?

Who was I (in my previous birth) or after departure from here what shall I become in my next birth?"

ANNOTATIONS 1, 2: We observe that certain phenomena, which we call the phenomena of consciousness, are fundamentally different from the non-conscious or material phenomena. Hence the existence of consciousness (or more precisely, the conscient reality) has been accepted by almost all schools of philosophy, ancient as well as modern.

As the phenomena manifesting consciousness are directly perceptible, there is no question of denying the existence of conscient reality. All the controversy that prevails in the world of philosophy regarding the conscient reality is about its eternity or ultimate independence.

Thus, there are two schools of thought: One which accepts the eternal and ultimately independent existence of the conscient reality or psychical reality or soul, and the other which denies it. The former is called "spiritualism", and the latter "non-spiritualism" or "materialism".

The non-spiritualists accept the existence of conscient reality (soul) but repudiate its transmigration — its past and future existence (i. e. previous birth and rebirth). Hence, they do not give importance to the question of the direct perception of soul or phenomena of transmigration. But for the spiritualists, the question is of the utmost importance.

However, all are not able to cognize soul or its transmigration directly. The following four questions constitute the enigma of the Spiritual Universe:

Where from have I transmigrated?
Where to shall I transmigrate?
Who was I (in my previous birth), or
After departure from here what shall I become in my next birth?

३. सेज्जं पुण जाणेज्जा—

सहसम्मुइयाए,
परवागरणेणं,
अण्णेसि वा अंतिए सोच्चा, तं जहा—
पुरत्थिमाओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
दक्खिणाओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
पच्चत्थिमाओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
उत्तराओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
उड्ढाओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
अहे वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
अण्णयरीओ वा दिसाओ आगओ अहमंसि,
अणुदिसाओ वा आगओ अहमंसि ।

3. **Sejjaṃ puna jāṇejjā —**
Sahasammuiyāe,
Paravāgaraṇaṇaṃ
 Aṇṇesiṃ vā aṇṇie soccā, taṃ jahā —
 Puratthimāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
 Dakkhiṇāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
 Paccatthimāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
 Uttarāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
 Uḍḍhāo vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
 Ahe vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
 Aṇṇayaṇi vā disāo āgao ahamamsi,
 Aṇḍisāo vā āgao ahamamsi.
3. (i) By recollecting himself the (details of) his previous birth (or births) or
- (ii) Through exposition by one who commands direct knowledge (*para*)¹ or
- (iii) By hearing from someone (who has gained his knowledge from one who commands direct knowledge), some (people) acquire knowledge such as —
- "I have migrated (to this world) from the eastern direction,
 or from the southern direction,
 or from the western direction,
 or from the northern direction,
 or from the direction above,
 or from the direction below,
 or from any other direction,
 or from any intermediate direction.

ANNOTATION 3: The soul, being devoid of all material qualities viz. colour, odour, taste and touch, is not perceptible to any of the sense-organs or any other physical instrument of knowledge. Such entities which are beyond our sensory perception can be known either through one's own extra-sensory knowledge or through the revelation made by a person possessing transcendental knowledge.

¹ *Para* denotes here any of those persons who have Extra-sensory or Transcendental Knowledge.

Now, if a *sādhaka* (an aspirant exerting himself in asceticism for achieving self-realization) does not possess the extra-sensory power of perception, there are chances that due to lack of direct knowledge of soul or its transmigration, he may lose his faith in *sādhanā* (the path prescribed for self-realization). In such cases, it is necessary to assist him to remain steadfast by making him directly perceive some transcendental phenomenon.

Bhagavan Mahāvīra, it seems, had the technique of helping his disciples remember their past life (or lives). Thus enlightened with the knowledge of eternal existence of soul, the aspirants would exert themselves with unflinching faith and fresh enthusiasm in *sādhanā*.

This is well illustrated by the episode of Meghakumāra, the son of king Śrenika of Magadha. Meghakumāra was initiated by Bhagavān Mahāvīra. On the very first night of his ascetic life, Meghakumāra, disheartened by inconveniences in lodging thought of returning home. On the next morning, he approached the Lord.

The Bhagavān said — Meghakumāra! You are perturbed because you had a disturbed night due to inconveniences, and now you are thinking of going back. Is it not so?

Meghakumāra — Yes, Lord. It is true.

Lord — Meghakumāra! In your previous life you were an elephant named Meruprabha living in a jungle. Once the jungle caught fire and the wild animals residing in it gathered in an arid zone outside it. The whole area got packed with all sorts of creatures. There was not an inch of space left. At that time you were also standing there. You had an itching sensation and you lifted your foot to scratch your body. Perchance, a hare happened to settle under the lifted foot. After scratching, when you wanted to lower your foot, you saw the hare sitting there. Out of compassion for the hare, you did not lower your foot, but kept it raised for two and a half days, after which the conflagration subsided. The creatures started returning to their own places and the hare too. Seeing the hare left the place, you tried to lower your foot. But it had become stiff and you fell with a bang.

Meghakumāra! You forbore such a great hardship in

your birth as an elephant, while now you are a human being and an ascetic too. Only a little discomfort has perturbed you. Is it worthy of you? Then you kept your foot hanging in the air out of compassion for one small hare and would now like to go back to worldly life where every step of yours would result in injury to countless beings?

On hearing this from the Lord, Meghakumāra got lost in contemplation and introspection which brought back the memory of his previous life. This incident reinforced his faith and strengthened his unattachment. Tears rolled out of his eyes out of sheer ecstasy. He no more thought of his perturbation and resolved to follow the *sādhana* steadfastly. He bowed to the Lord and said — "Lord! I dedicate my whole body except the eyes to the services of the ascetic order. May the order utilise my humble services."

This is how Mahavira used to enlighten the *sādhakas*. In order to develop the memory of previous birth, a *sādhaka* would sit in meditation and concentrate his mind on any of the questions such as:

- a. From which direction have I migrated to this birth?
Whether from the east direction or the west direction?
Whether from the north direction or the south direction?
Whether from the direction above or below?
- b. Who am I?
- c. Who was I in the previous birth?
- d. What shall I become in the next birth?

The ethical code prescribed by Bhagavān Mahāvira mainly consists in the practice of non-violence (*ahimsa*). Its philosophical base is the existence of soul. Unless a *sādhaka* is enlightened with the unobscured knowledge of soul, he cannot have unflinching faith in the ethical code of non-violence. That is why the author of the scripture establishes the existence of soul in the very beginning of the present text.

૪. એવમેર્ગેસિ જં જાતં મવદ્—અતિ મે આયા ઓવવાદ્ । જો
હમાઓ દિસાઝો અણુદિસાઝો વા અણુસંચરદ્, સઘ્વાઓ દિસાઝો
સઘ્વાઓ અણુદિસાઝો જો આગઝો અણુસંચરદ્ સોહં ।

4. Evamegesirh jam̐ nātam̐ bhavai — atthi me āyā ovavāie.
Jo imāo disāo anudisāo vā anusaṁcarai, savvāo disāo
savvāo anudisāo jo āgao anusaṁcarai soham̐.

4. Similarly some (people) come to know —

"My soul goes on reincarnating.

"That which transmigrates from these directions and intermediate directions, and which has migrated (to this life) from these directions or intermediate directions is none other than 'I' (my soul)."

ANNOTATION 4: 'Who am I?' (*koham̐*) and 'I am He' (*soham̐*)—these are two very important expressions in the discussion of the philosophy of Soul. The former manifests the inquisitiveness about the nature of one's own self, and the latter signifies direct recognition of the Self (I).

When the *Ācārya* (teacher) was inquired of by his disciple as to what was the token of recognition of the soul, the *Ācārya* replied, "I am He." The expression 'I am He' is thus a means of arriving at the right knowledge known as 'pratyabhijñā' in logic, which means a logical conclusion based on the recognition of the object of the past experience with that of the present one. 'Ego', which experiences itself as the 'doer', through the assertions such as 'I do', 'I did', 'I shall do', is to be identified with the Soul (the conscient reality) and not with the body (the physical reality).

It may be mentioned that *Soham̐* (I am 'He') is also a chant in the Yoga system. There it signifies identification of soul with the Supreme Reality.

५. से जायावाई, लोयावाई, कम्मावाई, किरियावाई ।

5. Se āyāvāī, logāvāī, kammāvāī, kiriyāvāī.

5. Only he (who comprehends the doctrine of transmigration) is a believer in the doctrines of

Ātmavāda — doctrine of objective reality of soul,

Lokavāda — doctrine of real existence of the world,

Karmavāda — doctrine of reaping the fruits of one's actions, and

Kriyāvāda -- doctrine that actions are the cause of bondage of soul.

ANNOTATION 5: The principle of non-violence is based mainly on the above four doctrines.

Soul by itself is imperceptible to any of the sense-organs. It is perceived only through the medium of body.

The world is also an ultimate reality just as the soul is.

The whole system of material body is governed by *karma*. The system of *karma*, in its turn, is governed by *kriyā* — actions. The fundamental cause of diversities and changes in the world is action. So long as there are vibrations, disturbances and various sorts of emotions in the soul, it continues to be bound by the atoms of the *kar-mas*, which results in its continuous transmigration in different species. Transmigration or reincarnation clearly signifies the existence of soul. The cause of rebirth is the bondage of *karma*, and the cause of bondage is action. All this takes place 'in the world' itself. There exists in the world an infinite number of souls and material substances.

Cultivating discipline in our behaviour towards other souls and material substances is the fundamental basis of non-violence.

आत्सव-पदं

६. अकरिस्सं चहं, कारवेसुं चहं, करओ यावि समणुण्णे भविस्सामि ।

Āssava padam

6. Akarissam caham, kāravesum caham, karao yāvi samaṇuṇṇe bhaviṣṣāmi.

Cause of Influx of Karma Particles

6. I had acted, I had caused others to act, (and I had approved of others' indulgence in actions.)
(I act, I cause others to act, and I approve of others' actions.)
(I shall act, I shall cause others to act,) and I shall approve of others' actions.

संवर-पदं

७. एयावन्ति सव्वावन्ति लोगंसि कम्म-समारंभा परिजाणियव्वा भवन्ति ।

Samvara-padam

7. Eyāvaṃti savvāvaṃti logaṃsi kamma-samāraṃbhā parijāṇiyavvā bhavaṃti.

Stoppage of Influx

7. One should first comprehend that all such actions¹ taking place in the world² are the 'cause of the influx of *karma* particles and then should forswear them.

आस्सव-परिणाम-पदं

८. अपरिणाय-कम्मे खलु अयं पुरिसे,
जो इमाओ दिसाओ वा अणुदिसाओ वा अणुसंचरइ,
सव्वाओ दिसाओ सव्वाओ अणुदिसाओ सहेति,
अणेरूवाओ जोणीओ संघेइ,
विरूवरूवे फासे य पडिसंवेदेइ ।

Āssava-pariṇāma-padam

8. Apariṇṇāya — kamme khalu ayaṃ purise,
Jo imāo disāo vā aṇudisāo vā aṇusaṃcarai,
Savvāo disāo savvāo aṇudisāo saheti,
Aṇegarūvāo joṇīo saṃdhei,
Virūvarūve phāse ya paḍisaṃvedei.

1. *Kamma-samāraṃbha* —

The term *kamma* (Skt. *Karman*), which has several meanings is used here in the sense of action (i. e. *kiriya*) causing influx of *karma* particles. Whole phrase, then, would mean 'indulging in activities of mind, speech and body'.

2. In this context *loka* means the world of non-ascetic actions.

Consequences of Influx of Karma Particles

8. Only a person who does not comprehend and forswear actions undergoes transmigration in various directions and intermediate directions. Loaded with the lot of accumulated *karma* particles, he wanders in all directions and intermediate directions, keeps on binding his soul to various genera and experiences (there) various sorts of feelings.

ANNOTATIONS 6, 8: These aphorisms furnish in short the essence of Bhagavān Mahāvīra's ideology which may be summarised as follows:

Indulging in actions and abstaining from them are respectively the causes of transmigration and its cessation. The succeeding Ācāryas have expressed this view in the following verse:

*Āśrvo bandhahetuḥ syāt,
Saṁvaro mokṣakāraṇam.
Itīyamañhatī drṣṭi-
Ranyadasyāḥ prapañchanam..*

(Indulging in actions is the cause of the influx of *Karma* particles and hence the cause of bondage, while forswearing them is the cause of salvation. This is the essence of Bhagavān Mahāvīra's philosophy; everything else is merely elaboration).

कर्म-सोय-पदं

१. तत्थ खलु भगवया परिण्णा पवेइया ।

Kamma-soya-padam

9. Tattha khalu bhagavayā pariṇṇā paveiyā.

Fundamental Motives of Actions.

9. In the context of *Karma-samārambha*, Bhagavān Mahāvīra has taught discernment (i. e. first comprehension and then forswearing).

१०. इमस्स चेव जीवियस्स,
परिवंदण-माणण-पूयणाए,
जाई-मरण-मोयणाए,
दुक्खपडिघायहेउं ।

10. Imassa ceva jīviyaṣṣa,
Parivaṇḍaṇa - māṇaṇa - pūyaṇāe,
Jāī - maraṇa - moyapāe,
Dukkhaṇaḍḍighāyaheum̃.

10. (These are the four ultimate motives of activities in life:)

For the sake of survival,
for the sake of honour and reverence,
for the sake of birth, death and liberation,
for the sake of prevention of miseries,
(one indulges in actions.)

ANNOTATION 10: (i) Man consumes various drugs and medicines for survival. Believing that 'life sustains life', he kills and exploits other lives in order to sustain his.

(ii) In order to earn admiration, fame and name, he indulges in such competitive activities as wrestling, acquatics, mountaineering, etc.

(iii) In order to earn reverence, he acquires wealth, power, etc.

(iv) In order to gain honour, he indulges in such activities as war.

(v) *Birth*: Desire to beget children and worries about his next birth make men indulge in various kinds of activities.

(vi) *Death*: Such activities as avenging death, making offerings to departed souls are indulged in, in connection with 'death'.

(vii) *Liberation*: Motivated by liberation he carries out such activities as worship, etc.

(viii) *Prevention of Miseries*: For ameliorating agonies and curing diseases, he requires drugs and medicines, production of which involves violence to birds, animals etc.

संदर-साहना-पदं

११. एयावन्ति सव्वावन्ति लोगंसि कम्म-समारम्भा परिजाणियव्वा भवन्ति ।

Samivara-sāhaṇā-padam

11. Eyāvaṁti savvāvaṁti, logaṁsi kamma-samāraṁbhā pari jāṇiyavvā bhavaṁti.

11. One should first comprehend that all such actions taking place in the world are the cause of the influx of *karma* particles and then should forswear them.

१२. जस्सेते लोगंसि कम्म-समारम्भा परिणया भवन्ति, से हु मुणी परिणाय-कम्मे ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

12. Jassete logaṁsi kamma-samāraṁbhā pariṇāyā bhavaṁti, se hu muṇi pariṇāya-kamme.

— Tti bemi

12. Only he, who discerns (i. e. comprehends and forswears) all such actions, which are the cause of the influx of *karma* particles, is a true ascetic (*muṇi*), (for a true ascetic is he), who has discerningly forsworn actions.

— Thus I say.

ANNOTATION 12: In this aphorism, the *muṇi* is defined to be a person, who has forsworn all sorts of actions. This is comparable with *Bhagavad Gītā*'s (4/19) definition of a *pañḍita* (i. e. sage):

*"Yasya sarve-samāraṁbhāḥ,
Kāma-saṁkalpa-varjitāḥ
Jñānāgni-dagdha-karmāṇaḥ,
Tamāhuḥ paṇḍitaṁ budhāḥ.*

(He, whose actions have been dissociated from attachment and desires, and have been consumed by the fire of knowledge is called *paṇḍita* by the wise).

The *Bhagavad Gītā* (17-2, 3) also elucidates the terms *karmayoga* (actions controlled by spiritual discipline) and *karma-saṁnyāsa* (renunciation of actions).

The *karmayoga* enjoins one to persevering in actions, without having desire to get their rewards, abandoning the egotistic instinct, and dedicating their merits to God.

The *karma-saṁnyāsa*, however, has been interpreted diversely by different scholars, thus—

- (a) Abstinence from the actions which are accompanied with rewards.
- (b) Renouncing the desire for reward of one's actions.
- (c) Total abstinence from all sorts of actions (for every action is vicious).

Bhagavān Mahāvīra, however, harmonised *karma-saṁnyāsa* with *karmayoga*. His technique of achieving self-realization mainly consisted in *saṁvara* — the stoppage of the influx of *karma* particles through total abstinence from all actions. But this is not feasible in the very beginning. Therefore, it is advisable to refine the actions first through *nirjarā* (by employing oneself in right actions) and then to stop them. Total cessation of actions is achieved only on the verge of the final liberation.

The discernment of the indulgence in actions taught in the aphorism 7-12, thus includes both the *karmayoga* and the *karma-saṁnyāsa* — refinement of actions followed by their cessation.

SECTION II

बीओ उद्देशो

Bīo Uddeso

अज्ઞાણ-પદં

૧૩. અદટે લોએ પરિજુણે, દુસ્સંબોહે અવિજાણાં ।

Anñāṇa-padam

13. Atte loye parijunne, dussam̐bohe avijāṇae.

Ignorance

13. One (who) is afflicted (with lust) is bereft (of knowledge and perception). (Truth) always baffles him, (consequently) he remains benighted.

૧૪. અસ્મિં લોએ પવ્વહિં ।

14. Assim̐ loye pavvahie.

14. In this world, he (the benighted one, and hence, the ignorant one) feels distress.

પુઢવિકાહ્યાહિંસા-પદં

૧૫. તત્થ તત્થ પુઢો પાસ, આતુરા પરિતાવેંતિ ।

Pudhavihāhiṁsā-padam

15. Tattha tattha pudho pāsa, āturā paritāveṁti.

Injury to Earth Beings

15. See! almost everywhere the passionate men are tormenting (beings of earth-body).

ANNOTATION 15: Sex, luxury, anger, fear, pleasure, etc. are the various kinds of passions. While he seeks objects to satiate his passion (of sex, of pleasure etc.), a passionate man causes violence. Passion is the cause of mental perturbation. A perturbed man falls an easy prey to desire and indulges in violence.

१६. संति पाणा पुढोसिया ।

16. Saṁti pāṇā puḍhosiyā.

16. (Each of the) beings of earth-body) has its own body to inhabit.

ANNOTATION 16: Gautama, the chief disciple of Bhagavān Mahāvīra asked — Bhagavān! whether one, two, three, four or five beings of earth-body collectively build one body, absorb nutrients for sustenance, assimilate those nutrients and then through the assimilation build the body?

Bhagavān—No, they do not do so. Each of the beings of earth-body builds a different (individual) body. It also takes and assimilates its food (nutrients) individually.

१७. लज्जमाणा पुढो पास ।

17. Lajjamāṇā puḍho pāsa.

17. See: Every (ascetic who has ceased from causing violence¹ to these beings) leads a life of self-discipline.

१८. अणगारा मोत्ति एगे पवयमाणा ।

18. Aṇagārā motti ege pavayamāṇā.

18. (And discern from them) those pseudo-monks, who, despite professing, "we are mendicants", (act like

1. By violence (*hiṁsā*) is meant all actions of injuring, hurting, causing harm, killing, etc.

householders i. e. cause violence to the beings of earth-body).

१९. जमिणं विरुवरूवेहि सत्थेहि पुढवि-कम्म-समारम्भेणं पुढविसत्थं
समारम्भमाणे अण्णे वणेगरूवे पाणे विहिससि ।

19. Jaminam virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ puḍhavi-kamma-samārambheṇam puḍhavi-sattham samārambhemaṇe aṇṇe vaṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsai.

19. He (pseudo-monk), employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in actions involving earth, (thereby) causing violence to the beings of earth-body. (He causes violence not only to the beings of earth-body, but also) causes violence to different kinds of other beings.

ANNOTATION 19: In this world there are many kinds of beings and many substances. One man's food is another man's poison. A substance which is harmful to a particular kind of beings is termed as weapon for that kind. The term weapon is a general one which includes physical implements as well as processes which when operated upon beings would cause violence to them. The implements or the process may be homologous i. e. composed of the same material as body of the victims or heterologous, i. e. composed of material which is different from the body of the victims or combination of both. Besides physical weapons described here, there is the unrestrained impulse for violence which in itself is a psychic weapon. It should be noted that the psychic weapon is in itself the cause of prāṇātipāta (sin of violence) irrespective of the operation or non-operation of the physical weapons.

The following nine kinds of weapons are enumerated in the *Niryukti* (the earliest commentary) on the *Āyāro*:

- i. Implements such as plough, pick-axe etc. used for ploughing, digging, etc.;
- ii. Horns of deer;
- iii. Wood;
- iv. Fire;
- v. Excretions;
- vi. Homologous weapons, e. g. two different incompatible types of soil, when mixed, kill the earth-being;

- vii. Heterologous weapons, e.g. water, fire;
- viii. Combination of 6 and 7 above, e.g. water mixed with soil;
- ix. Psychic weapon, i.e. unrestrained impulse for violence.

२०. तत्थ खलु भगवया परिण्णा पवेइया ।

20. Tattha khalu bhagavayā pariṇṇā paveiyā.

20. (Hence) Bhagavān Mahāvīra has taught discernment (i.e. comprehension and forswearing) with respect to this issue.

२१. इमस्स चेव जीवियस्स,
परिवंदण-माणण-पूयणाए,
जाई-मरण-मोयणाए,
दुक्खपडिघायहेउं ।

21. Imassa ceva jīviyassa,
Parivaṇḍana - māṇaṇa - pūyaṇāe,
Jāī - maraṇa - moyāṇāe,
Dukkhapadighāyaheum.

- 21. 1. For the sake of survival,
- 2. for the sake of praise, honour, reverence,
- 3. for the sake of birth, death, liberation,
- 4. for the sake of prevention of miseries, ~

२२. से सयमेव पुढवि-सत्थं समारंभइ, अण्णेहि वा पुढवि-सत्थं
समारंभावेइ, अण्णे वा पुढवि-सत्थं समारंभते समणुज्जाणइ ।

22. Se sayameva puḍhavi-sattham samāraṁbbhai, aṇṇehim
vā puḍhavi - sattham samāraṁbbhāvei, aṇṇe vā puḍhavi-
sattham samāraṁbbhamīte samaṇujāṇai.

22. Some monk either indulges himself in action causing violence to the beings of earth-body through various kinds of weapons, makes others to cause violence to the beings of earth-body or approves of others causing violence to the beings of earth-body.

२३. तं से अहियाए, तं से अबोहीए ।

23. Tam̐ se ahiyāe, tam̐ se abohīe.

23. Such an act of violence proves baneful for him. Such an act of violence deprives him of enlightenment.

२४. से तं संबुज्झमाणे, आयाणीयं समुट्ठाए ।

24. Se tam̐ sam̐bujjhamāṇe, āyāṇīyaṁ samuṭṭhāe.

24. He (true ascetic), comprehending it (i. e. consequences of act of violence) becomes vigilant over the practice of self-discipline.

२५. सोच्चा खलु भगवओ अणगाराणं वा अंतिए इहमेगेसिं णातं
भवति—एस खलु गंथे,
एस खलु मोहे,
एस खलु मारे,
एस खलु णराए ।

25. Soccā khalu bhagavao aṇagārāṇaṁ vā aṁtie
ihamegesim̐ ṇātaṁ bhavati –
Esa khalu gaṁthe,
Esa khalu mohe,
Esa khalu māre,
Esa khalu ṇarae.

25. Hearing from Bhagavān Mahāvīra himself or from the monks, one comes to know: —

It (i. e. causing violence to the beings of earth-body), in fact, is the knot of bondage,
it, in fact, is the delusion,
it, in fact, is the death,
it, in fact, is the hell.

२६. इच्चत्थं गड्हिए लोए ।

26. Iccatthaṁ gadhie loe.

26. (Nevertheless) man impelled by the aforesaid motives becomes engrossed in (the acts of inflicting injury to the beings of earth-body).

२७. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहिं सत्थेहिं पुढवि-कम्म-समारम्भेणं पुढवि-सत्थं
समारम्भमाणे अण्णे वणेगरूवे पाणे विहिंसइ ।

27. Jamipam virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ puḍhavi - kamma - samārambhemaṇaṃ puḍhavi - satthaṃ samārambhemaṇe aṇṇe vaṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsai.

27. He, employing various kinds of weapons indulges in actions involving earth, (thereby) causing violence to the beings of earth-body. He causes violence not only to the beings of earth-body, but, also causes violence to the different kinds of other beings.

पुढविकाइयाणं जीवत्त-वेदणाबोध-पदं

२८. से बेमि—अप्पेगे अंधमग्गं, अप्पेगे अंधमच्छे ।

Puḍhavikāiṃyaṇaṃ jīvatta-vedanābodha-padaṃ

28. Se bemi—appege aṇḍhamabbhe, appege aṇḍhamacche.
Earth-Beings, their Animation and Experience of Pain.

28. I say—

(Just as consciousness of a man born without any sense-organs (i.e. one who is blind, deaf, dumb, crippled, etc. from birth) is not manifest, the consciousness of the beings of earth-body is also not manifest.) (Nevertheless) such a man (the one born organless) (experiences pain) when struck or cut with a weapon, (and so also do the beings of earth-body).

२९. अप्पेगे पायमग्गं, अप्पेगे पायमच्छे,
अप्पेगे गुप्फमग्गं, अप्पेगे गुप्फमच्छे,
अप्पेगे जंघमग्गं, अप्पेगे जंघमच्छे,
अप्पेगे जाणुमग्गं, अप्पेगे जाणुमच्छे,

अप्पेगे ऊरुमब्भे, अप्पेगे ऊरुमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे कडिमब्भे, अप्पेगे कडिमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे णाभिमब्भे, अप्पेगे णाभिमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे उयरमब्भे, अप्पेगे उयरमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे पासमब्भे, अप्पेगे पासमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे पिट्टमब्भे, अप्पेगे पिट्टमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे उरमब्भे, अप्पेगे उरमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे हिययमब्भे, अप्पेगे हिययमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे थणमब्भे, अप्पेगे थणमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे खंधमब्भे, अप्पेगे खंधमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे बाहुमब्भे, अप्पेगे बाहुमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे हत्थमब्भे, अप्पेगे हत्थमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे अंगुलिमब्भे, अप्पेगे अंगुलिमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे णहमब्भे, अप्पेगे णहमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे गीवमब्भे, अप्पेगे गीवमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे हणुयमब्भे, अप्पेगे हणुयमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे होट्टमब्भे, अप्पेगे होट्टमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे दंतमब्भे, अप्पेगे दंतमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे जिब्भमब्भे, अप्पेगे जिब्भमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे तालुमब्भे, अप्पेगे तालुमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे गलमब्भे, अप्पेगे गलमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे गंडमब्भे, अप्पेगे गंडमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे कण्णमब्भे, अप्पेगे कण्णमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे णासमब्भे, अप्पेगे णासमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे अच्छिमब्भे, अप्पेगे अच्छिमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे भमुहमब्भे, अप्पेगे भमुहमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे णिडालमब्भे, अप्पेगे णिडालमच्छे,
 अप्पेगे सीसमब्भे, अप्पेगे सीसमच्छे ।

29. Appege pāyamabbhe, appege pāyamacche,
 Appege gupphamabbhe, appege gupphamacche,
 Appege jaṃghamabbhe, appege jaṃghamacche,
 Appege jāṇumabbhe, appege jāṇumacche,
 Appege ūrumabbhe, appege ūrumacche,

Appege kaḍimabbhe, appege kaḍimacche,
 Appege ṇābhimabbhe, appege ṇābhimacche,
 Appege uyaramabbhe, appege uyaramacche,
 Appege pāsamabbhe, appege pāsamacche,
 Appege piṭṭhamabbhe, appege piṭṭhamacche,
 Appege uramabbhe, appege uramacche,
 Appege hiyayamabbhe, appege hiyayamacche,
 Appege thaṇamabbhe, appege thaṇamacche,
 Appege khaṇḍhamabbhe, appege khaṇḍhamacche,
 Appege bāhumabbhe, appege bāhumacche,
 Appege hatthamabbhe, appege hatthamacche,
 Appege aṇḍulimabbhe, appege aṇḍulimacche,
 Appege ṇaḥamabbhe, appege ṇaḥamacche,
 Appege gīvamabbhe, appege gīvamacche,
 Appege haṇuyamabbhe, appege haṇuyamacche,
 Appege hoṭṭhamabbhe, appege hoṭṭhamacche,
 Appege daṇṭamabbhe, appege daṇṭamacche,
 Appege jibbhamabbhe, appege jibbhamacche,
 Appege tālumabbhe, appege tālumacche,
 Appege galamabbhe, appege galamacche,
 Appege gaṇḍamabbhe, appege gaṇḍamacche,
 Appege kaṇṇamabbhe, appege kaṇṇamacche,
 Appege ṇāsamabbhe, appege ṇāsamacche,
 Appege acchimabbhe, appege acchamacche,
 Appege bhamuhamabbhe, appege bhamuhamacche,
 Appege ṇiḍālamabbhe, appege ṇiḍālamacche,
 Appege sīsamabbhe, appege sīsamacche.

29. (On simultaneously) cutting and severing with weapons, (all the following 32 anatomical features of a man, he suffers excruciating pain, though he would not be able to express it):

Foot, ankle, leg, knee, thigh, waist, belly, stomach,
 flank, back, bosom, heart, breast, shoulder, arm,
 hand, finger, nail, neck, chin, lip, tooth, tongue,
 palate, throat, temple, ear, nose, eye, brow, fore-
 head, and head.

(So is the case with the beings of earth-body).

३०. अप्पेगे संपमारए, अप्पेगे उद्दवए ।

30. Appege sampamārae, appege uddavae.

30. Man (experiences pain) when forced into unconsciousness or when deprived of life. (So do the beings of earth-body).

ANNOTATIONS 28-30: Once a disciple asked Bhagavān Mahāvīra—O Venerable One! the beings of earth-body can neither see, nor speak, nor hear, nor move about. Then, how can one ascertain that it has life and it experiences pain on being struck or cut with some weapon?

Bhagavān Mahāvīra replied — O disciple! suppose that there is a man, who is blind, deaf, dumb, and crippled since his birth. Moreover, he is completely limbless—just a ball of flesh like the son of queen Mrgā(vide, the Vipāka Sūtra). Now, suppose that someone strikes or cuts him with weapon. The poor fellow, being blind etc. can neither see, nor hear, nor speak, nor move about. In the absence of vision, audition, speech, and locomotion, will it be right to say that the fellow is devoid of life and that he does not experience any pain on being struck or cut?

Bhagavān Mahāvīra further said—And again suppose that there is a man with normal physique. Some other men equipped with various sorts of weapons attack him cutting and severing simultaneously all the thirty two anatomical features of his body (enumerated in the 29th aphorism). Now, the man becomes blind, deaf, dumb and crippled. He can no more see, hear, speak or move about. Would it mean that he has no life? Would he not feel severe but inexpressible pain?

The disciple replied — Yes, Bhagavān! it is true that the man would feel the pain. But, my doubt is yet not resolved. For, there is a world of difference in the wounded man and beings of earth-body. Despite his inability to express his pain, the respiratory movements in the man are clearly visible, whereas they are absent in the said earth-lives.

Bhagavān Mahāvīra said—It is not so, my disciple. The process of respiration is present in the beings of earth-body too, but it is not perceptible. Like a man in a swoon, the beings of earth-body do not manifest consciousness.

This is due to the 'constant coma produced by the "deep slumber producing" *Karma*, known as "*Styānārdhi*".

Further elucidating the point, Bhagavān Mahāvīra continued—A man in swoon may be unconscious either externally or internally. In the latter case, the inner consciousness is also benumbed, so that nothing is felt or experienced. But in the case of external swoon, only the external consciousness is lost. The inner consciousness, being active, experiences pain. A similar state prevails in the beings of earth-body. They experience pain through inner consciousness on being struck or cut.

Gautama, the chief disciple of Bhagavān Mahāvīra, asked—On being attacked, what sort of pain does a being of earth-body experience?

Bhagavān Mahāvīra — Gautama, suppose a young and strong man hits an old feeble man on head with both his hands. What sort of pain does the old man feel on being hit on the head by both the hands of the young man?

Gautama — Bhagavan! The old man experiences excruciating pain.

Bhagavān Mahāvīra — Gautama! On being attacked, the being of earth-body experiences much more pain than that experienced by the old man¹.

Thus, in the three illustrations, Bhagavān Mahāvīra has compared the state of consciousness and capacity to experience pain of the beings of earth-body with those of the persons, who are insensible since birth, rendered insensible with weapons, and in the state of swoon respectively.

हिंसाविवेग-पदं

३१. एत्थ सत्थं समारम्भमाणस्स इच्चेते आरम्भा अपरिण्णाता भवन्ति ।

Himsāvivega-padam

31. Ettha sattham samārambhamāṇassa icchete ārambhā aparipṇātā bhavaṃti.

1. *Bhagavatī Sutra*, 19-35.

Forswearing of Violence

31. He who uses a weapon on the beings of earth-body has neither comprehended nor forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of earth-body and other beings residing in the earth.).

३२. एत्थ सत्थं असमारंभमाणस्स इच्छेते आरंभा परिण्णाता भवन्ति ।

32. Ettha sattham̐ asamārambhamāṇassa iccḥete ārambhā parinṇātā bhavaṃti.

32. (On the contrary) he who does not use any weapon on the beings of earth-body, has comprehended and forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of earth-body and other beings residing in it.).

३३. तं परिण्णाय मेहावी नेव सयं पुढवि-सत्थं समारंभेज्जा, नेवण्णेहि पुढवि-सत्थं समारंभावेज्जा, नेवण्णे पुढवि-सत्थं समारंभंते समणुज्जाणेज्जा ।

33. Tam̐ parinṇāya mehāvī neva sayam̐ pudhavi - sattham̐ samārambhējḡ, nevaṇṇehim̐ pudhavi - sattham̐ samārambhāvejḡ, nevaṇṇe pudhavi - sattham̐ samārambham̐te samaṇujāṇējḡ.

33. Having discerned this, a sage should neither use any weapon causing violence to the beings of earth-body, nor cause others to use it, nor approve of others using it.

३४. जस्सेतं पुढवि-कम्म-समारंभा परिण्णाता भवन्ति, से हु मुणी परिण्णात-कम्मे ।

—त्ति वेमि ।

34. Jassete pudhavi-kamma-samarambha parinnata bhavaṃti, se hu muni parinnata-kamme.

— Tti bemi

34. He, who discerns (i. e. comprehends and forswears) the actions that cause violence to the beings of earth-body can be regarded as a (true) ascetic (for a true ascetic is he) who has discerningly forsworn actions.

— I say so .

SECTION III

तइओ उद्देसो

Taio Uddeso

समप्पण-पदं

३५. से बेमि—से जहावि अणगारे उज्जुकडे, णियागपडिवण्णे अमायं
कुव्वमाणे वियाहिए ।

Samappaṇa -padaṁ

35. Se bemi—se jahāvi aṇagāre ujjukaḍe,
niyāgapadivaṇṇe amāyaṁ kuvvamāṇe viyāhie.

Dedication of the Aim

35. I say—

Which is the conduct that distinguishes a monk from a non-monk.

A monk is he, whose conduct is ingenuous, who has devoted himself to the path of achieving salvation, and who never indulges in hypocrisy (i. e. laxity of efforts inspite of good ability to follow the path of *Sādhana*) ; (one who deviates from this conduct is a non-monk).

ANNOTATION 35: The following are the three maxims for achieving the Goal:

- (i) Guilelessness in conduct,
- (ii) Devotedness to the Goal,
- (iii) Sincerity of efforts.

According to the author of the scripture, above three are the criteria of a monk. Straightforwardness is the fun-

damental tenet of religion. A crooked man cannot be religious. Religion abides only in a pure soul and only he who is straightforward is pure.

Crookedness is practised by him who wants to twist the truth. On the contrary, one who wants to present the truth without distortion is straightforward in all his activities of body, mind and speech. He would be practising what he preaches. In accordance with this, Bhagavān Mahavīra has recommended the following four ways of practising truth:

- (a) Guilelessness in bodily expression,
- (b) Straightforwardness of thoughts,
- (c) Ingenuousness of speech,
- (d) Harmony of speech and action.¹

३६. जाए सद्धाए णिक्खंतो, तमेव अनुपालिया । विजहितु विसोत्तियं ।

36. *Jāye saddhāe ṇikkhamto, tameva anupāliyā.
Vijahittu visottiyam.*

36. One should preserve, without the slightest diminution, the faith which one had at the time of renunciation. One should not be swept away by the eddies of mercurial mind.

ANNOTATION 36: When a *sādhaka* — an aspirant of the *Mokṣa* — is initiated into the path of *sādhana*, his zest is certainly like the crescent moon. Even the slightest diminution of it is not desirable. Yet, during the prolonged course of *sādhana*, it is not improbable that the *sādhaka*'s faith may remit slightly. Here, therefore, the teacher admonishes the novice to ever invigorate his faith continuously in the path. In case he is not able to make any progress, he is expected at least to persevere in his *sādhana* with the initial intensity.

The eddies, the mental fluctuations, or the doubts, are the dangerous pitfalls for the *sādhaka*.

३७. पणया वीरा महावीहि ।

37. *Paṇayā vīrā mahāvīhiṃ.*

1. (*Sthānāṅga Sutra*, 4/102).

37. The valiant Sādhakas have dedicated themselves to the Great Path.

ANNOTATION 37: Non-violence is the path to liberation. It is everywhere, eternal and for everyone. That is why it is a Great Path. All those who have been dedicated to it or will be dedicated to it will attain liberation.

The Great Path also means *Kuṇḍalinī* (vitality). An enterprising ascetic, for his sublimation, dedicates himself to this stream of vitality and makes it flow towards his brain through his spinal chord. Consequently his instinct of violence disappears. That conduct which is circumscribed by space and time is a smaller path. Equanimity is not so circumscribed. It can be practised in all space and time. That is why equanimity also is a Great Path.

Equanimity is not a creed. It is Religion in itself. All those who have attained peace have treaded, are treading and will tread this Great Path. And yet it remains as capacious as ever.

आउकाइयाणं अत्थित्त-अभयदाण-पदं

३८. लोगं च आणाए अभिसमेच्चा अकुतोभयं ।

Aukāiyāṇaṃ atthitta-abhayadāṇa-padaṃ

38. Logaṃ ca āṇāe abhisameccā akutobhayaṃ.

Existence of the Beings of Water-body and Promise of Non-intimidation to them

38. Comprehending the (living) world of the beings of water-body through the teachings of the Omniscient, a *Sādhaka* should make it free from all sorts of intimidation on his part.

३९. से बेमि -- जे सयं लोगं अब्भाइक्खेज्जा, जेन अत्ताणं
अब्भाइक्खेज्जा ।

जे लोयं अब्भाइक्खइ, से अत्ताणं अब्भाइक्खइ ।

जे अत्ताणं अब्भाइक्खइ, से लोयं अब्भाइक्खइ ।

39. Se bemi — *neva sayam logam abbhāikkhejjā, neva attanam abbhāikkhejjā.*

Je loyam abbhāikkhai, se attānam abbhāikkhai.
Je attānam abbhāikkhai, se loyam abbhāikkhai.

39. I say —

One should neither deny (the existence of the living) world (of the beings of water-body) nor should he deny (existence of) one's own soul. He who denies (existence of the living) world of the beings of water-body) denies the existence of his own soul.

ANNOTATION 39: A disciple asked his teacher, "Venerable One! No one denies one's own existence. Is it not then strange to ask one not to question one's own existence?"

The teacher replied, "If anyone denies the existence of life in the beings of water-body, it amounts to denying one's own existence, for consciousness in the water beings of water body is identical with his own consciousness."

The term *abbhāikkhejjā* (Skt. *abhyākhyāyet*) means to malign, asperse, slander or accept falsehood as truth.

आउकाइयहिंसा-पदं

४०. लज्जमाणा पुढो पास ।

Aukaiyahimsa-padam.

40. *Lajjamāṇā puḍho pāsa.*

40. See! every (ascetic who has ceased from causing violence to these beings) leads a life of self-discipline

४१. अणगारा मोत्ति एगे पवयमाणा ।

41. *Aṇagārā motti ege pavayamāṇā.*

41. (And discern from them) those pseudo-monks who, despite professing, "We are mendicants" (act like householders, i.e. cause violence to the beings of water-body).

४२. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहिं सत्थेहिं उदय-कम्म-समारंभेणं उदय-सत्थं
समारंभमाणे अण्णे वणेगरूवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

42. Jamiṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ udaya - kamma -
saṃāraṃbheṇaṃ udaya - satthaṃ saṃāraṃbhamāṇe
aṇṇe vaṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsati.

42. He (pseudo-monk), employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in actions involving water, (thereby causing violence to the beings of water-body). (He causes violence not only to the beings of water-body, but also) causes violence to different kinds of other beings.

४३. तत्थ खलु भगवया परिण्णा पवेदिता ।

43. Tattha khalu bhagavayā pariṇṇā paveditā.

43. (Hence) Bhagavān Mahāvīra has taught discernment (i. e. comprehension and forswearing) with respect to this issue.

४४. इमस्स चेव जीवियस्स,
परिवंदण-माणण-पूयणाए,
जाई-मरण-मोयणाए,
दुक्खपडिचायहेउं ।

44. Imassa ceva jīviyassa,
Parivaṃdaṇa - māṇaṇa - pūyaṇāe,
Jāī - maraṇa - moyāṇāe,
Dukkhapadighāyaheum.

44. (1) For the sake of survival,
(2) for the sake of praise, honour, reverence,
(3) for the sake of birth, death, liberation,
(4) for the sake of prevention of miseries, —

४५. से सयमेव उदय-सत्थं समारंभति, अण्णेहिं वा उदय-सत्थं
समारंभावेति, अण्णे वा उदय-सत्थं समारंभते समणुजाजति ।

45. Se sayameva udaya-satthaṃ saṃāraṃbhati,
annehiṃ vā udaya-satthaṃ saṃāraṃbhāveti,
aṇṇe vā udaya-satthaṃ saṃāraṃbhamāṇte samaṇujāṇati.

45. Some monk either indulges himself in actions causing violence to the beings of water-body through various kinds of weapons, makes others to cause violence to the beings of water-body or approves of other causing violence to the beings of water-body.

४६. तं से अहियाए, तं से अबोहीए ।

46. Tam se ahiyāe, tam se abohīe.

46. Such an act of violence proves baneful for him.
Such an act of violence deprives him of enlightenment.

४७. से तं संबुज्झमाणे, आयाणीयं समुट्ठाए ।

47. Se tam sambujjhamāṇe, āyāṇīyaṁ samuṭṭhāe.

47. He (true ascetic), comprehending it (i. e. consequence of act of violence), becomes vigilant over the practice of self-discipline.

४८. सोच्चा खलु भगवओ अणगाराणं वा अंतिए इहमेगेसि णायं
भवति—

एस खलु गंथे,

एस खलु मोहे,

एस खलु मारे,

एस खलु णारए ।

48. Soccā khalu bhagavao aṇagārāṇaṁ vā antīe ihamege-
sim ṇāyaṁ bhavati —
Esa khalu gaṇṭhe,
Esa khalu mohe,
Esa khalu māre,
Esa khalu narae.

48. Hearing from Bhagavān Mahāvīra himself or from the monks, one comes to know, —
It (i. e. causing violence to the beings of water-body), in fact, is the knot of bondage,
it. in fact. is the delusion.

it, in fact, is the death,
it, in fact, is the hell.

४६. इच्चत्थं गदिए लोए ।

49. *Iccattham gadhie loye.*

49. (Nevertheless) man impelled by the aforesaid motives becomes engrossed in (the acts of inflicting injury to the beings of water-body).

५०. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहि सत्थेहि उदय-कम्म-समारंभेण उदय-सत्थं
समारंभमाणे अण्णे वणेरूवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

50. *Jamiṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ udaya - kamma - samāraṃbheṇaṃ udaya - satthaṃ samāraṃbhamāṇe aṇṇe vaṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsati.*

50. He, employing various kinds of weapons indulges in actions involving water, (thereby) causing violence (not only) to the beings of water-body, (but also) to different kinds of other beings.

आउकाइयाणं जीवत्त-वेदणाबोध-पदं

५१. से बेमि—अप्पेगे अंधमब्भे, अप्पेगे अंधमच्छे ।

Āukāiyāṇaṃ jīvatta-vedaṇābodha-padaṃ

51. *Se bemi—appege aṃdhamabbhe,appege aṃdhamacche.*

Water beings — their Animation and Experience of Pain

51. I say—

(Just as consciousness of a man born without any sense-organs (i. e. one who is blind, deaf, dumb, crippled etc. from birth) is not manifest, the consciousness of the beings of water-body is also not manifest). (Nevertheless) such a man (the one born organless) (experiences pain) when struck or cut with a weapon, (and so do the beings of water-body).

५२. अप्पेगे पायमब्भे, अप्पेगे पायमच्छे ।¹

52. Appege pāyamabbhe, appege pāyamacche¹.

52. (On simultaneously) cutting and severing with weapons, (all the following thirty-two anatomical features of a man, he suffers excruciating pains, though he would not be able to express it):

Foot, ankle, leg, knee, thigh, waist, belly, stomach, flank, back, bosom, heart, breast, shoulder, arm, hand, finger, nail, neck, chin, lip, tooth, tongue, palate, throat, temple, ear, nose, eye, brow, forehead, and head.

(So is the case with the beings of water-body).

५३. अप्पेगे संपमारे, अप्पेगे उद्वए ।

53. Appege saṃpamārae, appege uddavae.

53. Man (experiences pain) when forced into unconsciousness or when deprived of life, (so do the beings of water-body).

हिंसाविवेग-पदं

५४. से बेमि—संति पाणा उदय-निस्सिया जीवा अणेगा ।

Himsāvivega-padam

54. Se bemi —saṃti pāṇa udaya-nissiyā jīvā aṇegā.

Forswearing of Violence

54. I say—

That there are innumerable beings living in water.
(This fact is universally accepted).

५५. इहं च खलु भो ! अणगाराणं उदय-जीवा वियाहिया ।

55. Ihaṃ ca khalu bho ! aṇagārāṇaṃ udaya-jīvā viyāhiyā.

1. For the complete text, see, 1/29.

55. (But) O man! in this ascetic philosophy (i.e. the philosophy of the Arhats), it has been propounded that water itself is living.

ANNOTATIONS 54-55: Here a fundamental distinction is drawn between the two kinds of beings existing in water:

- (1) Beings which make water their habitat,
- (2) Beings which are embodied in water, i.e. water molecules themselves become the physical bodies. They are termed as beings of water-body.

The worms or micro-organisms which live in water have been accepted as life in water by all schools of thought. But the assertion that water molecules themselves become the bodies of living organisms viz. beings of water-body is to be found only in the philosophy of Bhagavān Mahāvīra.

It is quite clear from the above that beings of water-body cannot be separated from water unless they are killed by a weapon, e.g. boiling. It follows, therefore, that the purest water, i.e. water from which beings of the first kind are completely removed, is still animate (*sachitta*) water.

Inanimate (*achitta*) water is that in which beings of water-body have been killed. Water may thus be classified into four types:

- (a) Animate water containing beings of kind (1)
- (b) Animate water devoid of kind (1).
- (c) Inanimate water containing beings of kind (1)
- (d) Inanimate water devoid of beings of kind (1).

Water may also be classified as follows:

- (a) Animate,
- (b) Inanimate,
- (c) Mixed.

When a weapon is operated upon animate water, it either becomes inanimate or mixed, according to whether the weapon used is powerful enough or not.

५६. सत्यं चेत्य णुवीइ पासा ।

56. Sattham cettha aṇuvī pāsā.

56. O man! contemplate and visualise weapons which are capable of killing these (beings of water-body).

५७. पुढो सत्यं पवेइयं ।

57. Puḍho sattham paveiyam.

57. Thus propounded Bhāgavān (Mahāvīra) — "There are numerous weapons (which can kill) the beings of water-body."

ANNOTATIONS 56-57: The *Niryukti* enumerates seven kinds of weapons which kill beings of water body as follows:

- (1) Drawing water from well, etc.
- (2) Straining.
- (3) Washing clothes, etc.
- (4) Homologous weapons, i.e. water from different sources, e.g. lake-water and river-water act as weapons for each other.
- (5) Heterologous weapons, e.g. soil, oil, alkali, fire, etc.
- (6) Combination of 4 and 5, e.g. water mixed with soil.
- (7) Pyschic weapon, i.e. un-restrained impulse for violence.

५८. अदुवा अदिण्णादानं ।

58. Aduvā adiṇṇādāṇam.

58. Or it amounts to *adattāddāna* (i.e., appropriating that which is not given).

ANNOTATION 58: The *Parivrājakas* (ascetics belonging to the heretical sects) used to beg animate water with due permission of the owner. Still they were accused by the Jains of indulging in stealing. Their argument was based on the fact that the beings of water-body never consented to anyone depriving them of their lives. Hence, if anyone used or accepted water even after duly taking the permission of the

owner of the lake, etc., he still indulged in stealing, for he deprived the beings of water-body of their life without their consent.

५९. कप्पइ ने, कप्पइ ने पाउं, अदुवा विभूसाए ।

59. Kappai ñe, kappai ñe pāum, aduvā vibhūsāe.

59. (The Ājīvikas and the Śaivas assert:) "We are allowed by our commandments to consume (raw) water for drinking purposes; quite deliberately we are allowed."

(The Buddhists contend:) "We are allowed to consume water both for drinking as well as for self-adornment purposes (such as bathing)."

ANNOTATION 59: There was a world of difference amongst the various schools of the *Śramaṇas* regarding the usage of water by monks. The Jain ascetics asserted that usage of animate (or raw) water for any purpose was not free from the sins of violence as well as stealing.

On the other hand, the Ājīvikas (i.e. a school of the *śramaṇa* ascetics led by Makkhali Gosālaka), the Buddhists and some other ascetics contended that water was an inanimate matter and hence its use was free from the sins of violence as well as stealing. Thus some used water for drinking only, whereas others used it for bathing too.¹

६०. पुढो सत्थेहिं विउट्ठंति ।

60. Puḍho satthehiṃ viutṭamti.

60. (Thus, quoting their own authority) they cause violence (to the beings of water-body) through various kinds of weapons.

ANNOTATION 60: The monks such as Parivṛājakas, etc. used to do violence to a certain extent to the beings of water-body for limited purposes such as bathing, drinking, etc. But causing violence to beings was not totally taboo for them.

1. Cf. *Ovāṇiya Sutta*, *Sūtras*, 111-113, 137-138.

६१. एत्थवि तेसि णो णिकरणाए ।

61. Etthavi tesim̐ ño ñikaraṇāe.

61. (Those monks who quoting their commandments cause violence to the beings of water-body) do not completely abstain themselves from committing violence (i. e. their vow of not causing violence is not fulfilled).

हिंसाविवेग-पदं

६२. एत्थ सत्थं समारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा अपरिण्णया भवन्ति ।

Himsāvivēga-padam

62. Ettha sattham̐ samāraṁbhamāṇassa iccete āraṁbhā aparipṇāyā bhavaṁti.

Forswearing of Violence

62. He, who uses a weapon, on the beings of water-body, has neither comprehended nor forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of water-body and other beings residing in water).

६३. एत्थ सत्थं असमारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा परिण्णया भवन्ति ।

63. Ettha sattham̐ asamāraṁbhamāṇassa iccete āraṁbhā paripṇāyā bhavaṁti.

63. (On the contrary) he who does not use any weapon on the beings of water-body, has comprehended and forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of water-body and other beings residing in it).

६४. तं परिण्णाय मेहावी नेव सयं उदय-सत्थं समारंभेज्जा, णेदण्णेहि
उदय-सत्थं समारंभावेज्जा, उदय-सत्थं समारंभतेवि अण्णे ण
समणुज्जाणेज्जा ।

64. Tam̐ paripṇāya mehāvi neva sayam̐ udaya-sattham̐ samāraṁbhējṇā, ñevannehim̐ udaya-sattham̐ samāraṁbhāvejṇā, udaya-sattham̐ samāraṁbham̐tevi aṇṇe ṇa samanujāṇējṇā.

64. Having discerned this, a sage should neither use any weapon causing violence to the beings of water-body,

nor cause others to use it, nor approve of others using it.

६५. जस्सेते उदय-सत्थ-समारंभा परिण्णाया भवन्ति, से हु मुणी
परिण्णात-कम्मे ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

65. Jassete udaya-sattha-samāraṁbhā pariṇṇāyā bha-
vaṁti, se hu muṇī pariṇṇāta - kamme.

— Tti bemi.

65. He, who discerns (i. e. comprehends and forswears)
the actions that cause violence to the beings of water-
body can be regarded as a (true) ascetic (for a true
ascetic is he) who has discerningly forsworn actions.

— I say so.

SECTION IV

चउत्थो उद्देसो

Cauttho Uddeso

तेउकाइयाणं अत्थित्त-पदं

६६. 'से बेमि' — नेव सयं लोगं अब्भाइक्खेज्जा, नेव अत्ताणं
 अब्भाइक्खेज्जा ।
 जे लोगं अब्भाइक्खइ, से अत्ताणं अब्भाइक्खइ,
 जे अत्ताणं अब्भाइक्खइ, से लोगं अब्भाइक्खइ ।

Teukāiyāṇaṃ atthitta -padaṃ

66. Se bemi — neva sayam logam abbhāikkhejjā, neva
 attāṇaṃ abbhāikkhejjā.
 Je logam abbhāikkhai, se attāṇaṃ abbhāikkhai,
 Je attāṇaṃ abbhāikkhai, se logam abbhāikkhai.

Existence of the Beings of Fire -Body

66. I say —
 One should neither deny (the existence of living) would
 (of the beings of fire-body), nor should he deny the
 existence of one's own soul. He, who denies (the exis-
 tence of the living) world (of the beings of fire-body),
 denies the existence of his own soul.

६७. जे दीहलोग-सत्थस्स खेयण्णे, से असत्थस्स खेयण्णे ।
 जे असत्थस्स खेयण्णे, से दीहलोग-सत्थस्स खेयण्णे ।

67. Je dīhaloga-satthassa kheyāṇṇe, se asatthassa
 kheyāṇṇe,
 Je asatthassa kheyāṇṇe, se dīhaloga-satthassa
 kheyāṇṇe.

67. One who is conversant with the nature of weapon (causing violence) to the beings of fire-body is, (in fact), conversant with the non-weapon (i.e. self-restraint); (similarly) one, who is conversant with self-restraint, is also conversant with the nature of weapon (causing violence) to the beings of fire-body.

६८. वीरेहि एयं अभिभूय दिट्ठं, संजतेहि सया जतेहि सया अप्पमत्तेहि ।

68. *Vīrehiṃ eyaṃ abhibhūya dīṭṭhaṃ*, saṃjatehiṃ sayā jatehiṃ sayā appamattehiṃ.
68. This (i.e. the existence of beings of fire-body) has been perceived directly by those (ascetics) who have removed (the veils of the *Karmas* obscuring knowledge and intuition). Such ascetics are —
 bold (for they have gallantly overcome the hardships met with in the path of *sādhana*),
 self-disciplined (for they have controlled their mind and senses),
 self-composed (for they have toned down their passions), and
 ever vigilant (for they are always on guard against stupefying activities).

ANNOTATION 68: Our knowledge of a substance may be either direct or indirect. Knowledge obtained through study, thinking, simple meditation etc. is indirect. Such a knowledge reveals only a few aspects of a substance, and they too may not be distinct, whereas knowledge obtained by higher meditation or on removing the veil of *Karma* particles obscuring knowledge, is direct. It is crystal clear and reveals at once all the aspects of the substances.

In ancient times, the ascetics through various techniques of meditation, used to gain direct perception of objects. The mechanical devices (like microscope etc.) are not the only things through which we can study or analyse a thing. Higher form of meditation and unveiled consciousness can also lead to direct perception of a thing. There are four stages for gaining direct knowledge:

- (1) Fortitude: facing hardships with brave and unwavering efforts.

- (2) Self-discipline: control of mind and senses,
- (3) Self-composure: pacification of anger, conceit, deceit, and greed.
- (4) Vigilance: constant heedfulness.

तेउकाइयाहिंसा-पदं

६६. जे पमत्ते गुणदिठए, से हु वंछे पवुच्चति ।

Teukāiyahimsa -padam

69. *Je pamatte guṇatṭhie, se hu daṁḍe pavuccati.*

Violence to Beings of Fire-Body

69. One who is stupefied and desirous of (kindling fire for taking advantage of) its properties (such as light, heat, etc., for preparing food etc.) is called (i. e. is equivalent to) a scourge (i. e. a killer of the beings of fire-body).

७०. तं परिणाय मेहावी इयाणि णो जमहं पुव्वमकासी पमाएणं ।

70. *Taṁ parinnāya mehāvi iyāṇiṃ ṇo jamaham puvvama-kāsī pamāeṇaṃ.*

70. Comprehending this, a sage (should resolve): "Henceforth I will not indulge in any actions which I used to indulge in due to my stupefaction."

७१. लज्जमाणा पुढो पासं ।

71. *Lajjamāṇa puḍho pāsa.*

71. See! Every (ascetic who has ceased from causing violence to these beings) leads a life of self-discipline.

७२. अणगारा मोत्ति एगे पवयमाणा ।

72. *Aṇagārā motti ege pavayamāṇā.*

72. (And discern from them) those pseudo-monks who, despite professing, "We are mendicants," (act like

householders i. e. cause violence to the beings of fire-body).

७३. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहिं सत्थेहिं अग्णि-कम्म-समारंभेणं अग्णि-सत्थं
समारंभमाणे, अण्णे वण्णेरूवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

73. Jamiṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ aṇaṇi - kamma-samāraṃbhaṇaṃ aṇaṇi-satthaṃ samāraṃbhamaṇe, aṇṇe vaṇṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsati.

73. He (pseudo-monk), employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in actions involving fire, (thereby) causing violence to the beings of fire-body. (He causes violence not only to the beings of fire-body, but also) causes violence to different kinds of other beings.

ANNOTATION 73: The *Niryukti* enumerates the following eight kinds of weapons which when operated on the beings of fire-body cause violence to them:

- (1) Soil or sand
- (2) Water
- (3) Moist vegetation
- (4) Mobile beings
- (5) Homologous weapons (i. e. made up of the same body); fire from different sources such as grass and leaves act as weapons on each other.
- (6) Heterologous weapons; water, etc.
- (7) Combination of 5 and 6
- (8) Psychic weapon: unrestrained impulse for violence.

७४. तत्थ खलु भगवया परिण्णा पवेइया ।

74. Tattha khalu bhagavayā pariṇṇa paveiyā.

74. (Hence) Bhagavān Mahāvira has taught discernment (i. e. comprehension and forswearing) with respect to this issue.

७५. इमस्स चेव जीवियस्स,
परिवंदण-माणण-पूयणाए,
जाई-मरण-मोयणाए,
दुक्खपडिघायहेउं ।

75. Imassa ceva jīviyassa,
Parivaṇḍana-māṇaṇa-pūyaṇāe,
Jāī-maraṇa-moyaṇāe,
Dukkhapadighāyaheum.

75. (1) For the sake of survival,
(2) for the sake of praise, honour, reverence.
(3) for the sake of birth, death, liberation,
(4) for the sake of prevention of miseries.

७६. से सयमेव अगणि-सत्थं समारंभइ, अण्णेहि वा अगणि-सत्थं
समारंभावेइ, अण्णे वा अगणि-सत्थं समारंभमाणे समणुजाणइ ।

76. Se sayameva agaṇi-sattham samāraṁbhai, aṇṇehim
vā agaṇi-sattham samāraṁbhāvei, aṇṇe vā agaṇi-
sattham samāraṁbhamāṇe samaṇujāṇai.

76. Some monk either indulges himself in action causing violence to the beings of fire-body through various kinds of weapons, makes others to cause violence to the beings of fire-body or approves of others causing violence to the beings of fire-body.

७७. तं से अहियाए, तं से अबोहीए ।

77. Tam se ahiyāe, tam se abohīe.

77. Such an act of violence proves baneful for him; such an act of violence deprives him of enlightenment.

७८. से तं संबुज्झमाणे, आयाणीयं समुट्ठाए ।

78. Se tam sambujjhamāṇe, āyāṇīyaṁ samuṭṭhāe.

78. He (true ascetic), comprehending it (i. e. consequence of acts of violence), becomes vigilant over the practice of self-discipline.

७९. सोच्चा खलु भगवओ अणगाराणं वा अंतिए इहमेगेसि जायं

भवति—

एस खलु गंथे,

एस खलु मोहे,

एस खलु मारे,

एस खलु णरणे ।

79. Soccā khalu bhagavao anagārāṇaṃ vā aṇṭie iname-
gesim̐ nāyaṃ bhavati —
Esa khalu gaṇthe,
Esa khalu mohe,
Esa khalu māre,
Esa khalu ṇarae.

79. Hearing from Bhagavān Mahāvīra Himself or from
the mendicants, one comes to know—

It (i. e. causing violence to the beings of fire-body),
in fact, is the knot of bondage,
it, in fact, is the delusion,
it, in fact, is the death,
it, in fact, is the hell.

८०. इच्छत्थं गद्धिए लोए ।

80. *Iccattham̐ gadhie loye.*

80. (Nevertheless) man, impelled by the aforesaid mo-
tives, becomes engrossed in (the acts of inflicting
injury to the beings of fire-body).

८१. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहिं सत्थेहिं अगणि-कम्म-समारंभेणं अगणि-सत्थं
समारंभमाणे अण्णे वण्णेरूवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

81. Jamiṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ agani-kamma-
samāraṃbheṇaṃ agani-satthaṃ samāraṃbhamāṇe
aṇṇe vaṇṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsati.

81. He, employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in
actions involving fire, (thereby) causing violence to the
beings of fire-body, (He causes violence not only to

the beings of fire-body, but also) causes violence to different kinds of other beings.

तेउकाइयाणं जीवत्त-वेदणाबोध-पदं

८२. से बेमि—अप्पेगे अंधमब्भे, अप्पेगे अंधमच्चे ।

Teukāiyāṇaṃ jīvatta-vedanābodha-padam

82. Se bemi—appege aṇdhamabbhe, appege aṇdhamacche.

Fire-beings : Their Life and Experience of Pain

82. I say—

(Just as consciousness of a man born without any sense organs (i.e. one who is blind, deaf, dumb, crippled etc. from birth) is not manifest, the consciousness of the beings of fire-body is also not manifest.) (Nevertheless) such a man (the one born organless) (experiences pain) when struck or cut with a weapon (and so also do the beings of fire-body).

८३. अप्पेगे पायमब्भे, अप्पेगे पायमच्चे ।¹

83. Appege pāyamabbhe, appege pāyamacche.¹

83. (On simultaneously) cutting and severing with weapons, (all the following thirty-two anatomical features of a man, he suffers excruciating pain though he would not be able to express it):

Foot, ankle, leg, knee, thigh, waist, belly, stomach, flank, back, bosom, heart, breast, shoulder, arm, hand, finger, nail, neck, chin, lip, tooth, tongue, palate, throat, temple, ear, nose, eye, brow, forehead, and head.

(So is the case with the beings of fire-body).

८४. अप्पेगे संपमारए, अप्पेगे उद्दवए ।

84. Appege saṃpamārae, appege uddavae.

84. Man (experiences pain) when forced into unconscious-

1. For complete text, see, 1/29.

ness or when he is deprived of life. (So do the beings of fire-body).

हिंसाविवेग-पदं

८५. से बेमि—संति पाणा पुढवि-णिसिया, तण-णिसिया, पत्त-
णिसिया, कट्ठ-णिसिया, गोमय-णिसिया, कयवर-णिसिया :
संति संपातिमा पाणा, आहुण्ण संपयंति य ।
अग्गणि च खलु पुट्ठा, एगे संघायमावज्जंति ॥
जे तत्थ संघायमावज्जंति, ते तत्थ परियावज्जंति ।
जे तत्थ परियावज्जंति, ते तत्थ उद्दायंति ॥

Himsāvivēga-padam

85. Se bemi—saṃti pāṇā puḍhavi-ṇissiyā, taṇa-ṇissiyā,
patta-ṇissiyā, kaṭṭha-ṇissiyā, gomaya-ṇissiyā,
kayavara-ṇissiyā:
Saṃti saṃpātimā pāṇā, āhacca saṃpayam̐ti ya.
Aggaṇiṃ ca khalu puṭṭhā, ege saṃghāyamāvajjam̐ti..
Je tattha saṃghāyamāvajjam̐ti, te tattha pariyāvajjam̐ti,
Je tattha pariyāvajjam̐ti, te tattha uddāyam̐ti..

Forswearing of Violence

85. I say —
"There are beings residing in earth (soil), grass, leaves, wood, cowdung and garbage; there are also beings (insects) which fly in the air and drop down from there. All these beings shrivel up on coming in contact with fire.
"Those beings which shrivel up (on coming in contact with fire), faint (by its heat), and those which faint (by its heat) die there (and then)."

८६. एत्थ सत्थं समारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा अपरिण्णया भवति ।

86. Ettha sattham samārambhamāṇassa iccete ārambhā aparipñāyā bhavam̐ti.

86. He who uses a weapon on the beings of fire-body has neither comprehended nor forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of fire-body and other beings residing in the fire.)

८७. एत्थ सत्थं असमारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा परिण्णाय भवन्ति ।

87. Ettha sattham asamārambhamāṇassa iccete ārambhā pariṇṇāyā bhavanti.

87. (On the contrary) he who does not use any weapon on the beings of fire-body has comprehended and forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of fire-body and other beings residing in it).

८८. तं परिण्णाय मेहावी नेव सयं अगणि-सत्थं समारंभेज्जा, नेवण्णेहि
अगणि-सत्थं समारंभावेज्जा, अगणि-सत्थं समारंभमाणे अण्णे
न समणुजाणेज्जा ।

88. *Taṃ pariṇṇāya mehāvī* neva sayam agaṇi-sattham samārambhejjā, nevaṇṇehim agaṇi-sattham samārambhāvejjā, agaṇi-sattham samārambhamāṇe aṇṇe na samanujāṇejjā.

88. Having discerned this, a sage should neither use any weapon causing violence to the beings of fire-body, nor cause others to use it, nor approve of others using it.

८९. जस्सेते अगणि-कम्म-समारंभा परिण्णाय भवन्ति, से हु मुणी
परिण्णाय-कम्मे ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

89. Jassete agaṇi-kamma-samārambhā pariṇṇāyā bhavanti, se hu muṇi pariṇṇāya-kamme.

— Tti bemi

89. He who discerns (i. e. comprehends and forswears) the actions that cause violence to the beings of fire-body, can be regarded as a (true) ascetic (for a true ascetic is he) who has discerningly forsworn actions.

— I say so.

SECTION V

पंचमो उद्देशो

Pañcamo Uddeso

अणगार-पदं

६०. तं नो करिस्सामि समुत्थाए ।

*Anagāra-padam*90. *Taṃ no karissāmi samutthāe.**Definition of a Monk*

90. (One pledged to non-violence should resolve:) "Having been ordained (to practise non-violence), I shall not indulge in it (violence)."

६१. मंता महमं अभयं विदिता ।

91. *Mantā maimaṃ abhayaṃ vidittā.*

91. Having reflected upon (the existence of living beings) and having comprehended non-intimidation (i. e. the fact that every living being desires to be free from intimidation as I do), a man of acumen (does not cause violence to any being).

ANNOTATION 91: Both comprehension and renunciation are essential elements in the path of *sādhana*. Renunciation presupposes comprehension and comprehension is necessarily followed by renunciation. One without the other is futile. That is why the teachers have advised disciples to acquire knowledge first and then to put into practice the principle of non-violence.

In the present aphorism, acquirement of knowledge is suggested through two steps:

- (1) Reflection
- (2) Feeling of self-equivalence with all beings.

Here, the first step furnishes one with the enlightenment revealing the truth, and the second enables him to establish unity with all beings. Then follows the practice of non-violence in life.

९२. तं जे णो करए एसोवरए, एत्थोवरए एस अणगारेत्ति पवुक्कइ ।

92. Tam je ño karae esovarae, etthovarae esa *añagāretti pavuccai*.

92. He who does not commit violence is one who has ceased from (sinful) actions: it is he who has ceased from (sinful) actions (according to the code of conduct of the *Arhats*) that deserves to be called a monk.

गिहचाइणो वि गिहवास-पदं

९३. जे गुणे से आवट्टे, जे आवट्टे से गुणे ।

Gihacāiṇo vi gihavāsa-padam

93. Je guṇe se āvatṭe, je āvatṭe se guṇe.

A Hypocritical Ascetic

93. Carnality is the whirlpool;
the whirlpool is nothing else but carnality.

९४. उड्ढं अहं तिरियं पाईणं पासमाणे रुवाइं पासति, सुणमाणे सदाइं सुणेति ।

94. Uddham ahaṃ tiriyaṃ pāiṇaṃ pāsamaṇe rūvāiṃ pāsati, sunamane saddāiṃ suṇeti.

94. One who looks upwards, downwards, sideways or in front, sees (various sorts of) forms (i. e. colours); and a listener hears (various sorts of) sounds (coming from various directions).

९५. उद्धं अहं तिरियं पाईणं मुच्छमाणे रूवेसु मुच्छति, सद्देसु आवि ।

95. Uḍḍham ahaṁ tiriyaṁ pāiṇaṁ mucchamaṇe rūvesu mucchati, saddesu āvi.

95. One who feels attachments (for the objects present) upwards, downwards, sideways or in front becomes attached to the (various sorts of) forms (while seeing) and also to (various sorts of) sounds (while listening).

९६. एस लोए वियाहिए ।

96. Esa loe viyāhie.

96. This is known as the world (of attachments).

९७. एत्थ अगुत्ते अणाणाए ।

97. Ettha agutte aṇāṇāe.

97. One who does not control (his mind and senses) in this (world of attachments) does not comply with my Instruction.

९८. पुणो-पुणो गुणासाए, वंक्कसमायारे, पमत्ते गारमावसे ।

98. Puṇo-puṇo guṇāsāe, vaṅkasaṁāyāre, paṁmatte gāra-māvase.

98. One who repeatedly reveals in sensual pleasures, who is a hypocrite and who is lax (in self-discipline), (though professing to be a monk,) is, in fact, a householder.

ANNOTATIONS 93-98: The word 'guṇa' signifies here the five types of sensual qualities viz., colour, sound, odour, taste and touch. These are existent in all directions — east, west, south and north; up, down and sideways. Perception of these qualities through the sense-organs and feelings of attachment to them are two distinct phenomena. The *Sādhaka* is warned here to be on his guard against the latter. For, one who gets lost in the world of attachments becomes a slave of his desires which, subsequently, degenerates him into a wanton or a licentious person. Consequently he would not be able to follow the path of asceticism and hence leaving it, would become again a householder.

In case he does not become a householder, he would still act like one, even though remaining in the garbs of a monk.

Here, therefore, the evangelist has compared the sensual qualities with a whirlpool. Just as a person caught in a whirlpool finds it difficult to extricate himself out of it, so also a *sādhaka* caught in sensual pleasures cannot easily free himself from them.

वणस्सइकाइयहिंसा-पदं

६६. लज्जमाणा पुढो पास ।

Vaṇassaikāiyahimsā-padam

99. *Lajjamāṇā puḍho pāsa.*

Violence to Beings of Vegetable-body

99. See! every (ascetic who has ceased from causing violence to these beings) leads a life of self-discipline.

१००. अणगारा मोत्ति एगे पवयमाणा ।

100. *Aṇagārā motti ege pavayamāṇā.*

100. (And discern from them) those pseudo-monks who, despite professing, "We are mendicants," (act like householders i.e. cause violence to the beings of vegetable-body).

१०१. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहिं सत्थेहिं वणस्सइ-कम्म-समारंभेणं वणस्सइ-सत्थं समारंभमाणे अण्णे वणेगएवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

101. *Jamiṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ vaṇassai-kamma-samārambheṇaṃ vaṇassaisattham samārambhamāṇe aṇṇe vaṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsati.*

101. He (pseudo-monk), employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in actions involving vegetable, (thereby) causing violence to the beings of vegetable-body, (He causes violence not only to the beings of vegetable-body, but also) causes violence to different kinds of other beings.

ANNOTATION 101: The *Niryukti* enumerates the following kinds of weapons which, when operated on beings of vegetable-body, cause violence to them:

- (1) The human limbs and mouth.
- (2) Homologous weapons: wooden implements like a stick, etc.
- (3) Heterologous weapons: stone, fire, etc.
- (4) Combination of 2 and 3: weapons like axe, chisel etc.
- (5) Psychic weapon: unrestrained impulses for causing violence.

१०२. तत्थ खलु भगवया परिण्णा पवेदिता ।

102. Tattha khalu bhagavaya parinnā paveditā.

102. (Hence) Bhagavān Mahāvīra has taught discernment (i. e. comprehension and forswearing) with respect to this issue.

१०३. इमस्स चेव जीवियस्स,
परिवंदण-माणण-पूयणाए,
जाती-मरण-मोयणाए,
दुक्खपडिघायहेउं ।

103. Imassa ceva jīviyassa,
Parivaṁḍaṇa-māṇaṇa-pūyaṇae,
Jāti-marṇa-moyaṇāe,
Dukkhaṇaḍḍhayaheum.

103. (1) For the sake of survival,
- (2) for the sake of praise, honour, reverence,
- (3) for the sake of birth, death, liberation,
- (4) for the sake of prevention of miseries. —

१०४. से सयमेव वणस्सइ-सत्थं समारंभइ, अण्णेहिं वा वणस्सइ-सत्थं
समारंभावेइ, अण्णे वा वणस्सइ-सत्थं समारंभमाणे
समणुजाणइ ।

104. Se sayameva vaṇassai-sattham samāraṁbhai, aṇṇe-
hiṁ vā vaṇassai-sattham samāraṁbhāvei, aṇṇe vā
vaṇassai-sattham samāraṁbhamāṇe samaṇujāṇai.

104. Some monk either indulges himself in action causing violence to the beings of vegetable-body through various kinds of weapons, makes others to cause violence to the beings of vegetable-body or approves of others causing violence to the beings of vegetable-body.

१०५. तं से अहियाए, तं से अबोहीए ।

105. Taṁ se ahiyāe, taṁ se abohīe.

105. Such an act of violence proves baneful for him, such an act of violence deprives him of enlightenment.

१०६ से तं संबुज्झमाणे, आयाणीयं समुट्ठाए ।

106. Se taṁ sambujjhamāṇe, āyāṇīyaṁ samuttḥāe.

106. He (true ascetic), comprehending it (i. e. consequences of acts of violence) becomes vigilant over the practice of self-discipline.

१०७. सोच्चा भगवओ, अणगाराणं वा अंतिए इहमेगेसिं णायं भवति—

एस खलु गंधे,

एस खलु मोहे,

एस खलु मारे,

एस खलु णिरए ।

107. Soccā bhagavao, aṇagārāṇaṁ vā aṁtie ihamegesim̐ ṇāyaṁ bhavati —
Esa khalu gaṁthe,
Esa khalu mohe,
Esa khalu māre,
Esa khalu ṇiray

107. Hearing from Bhagavān Mahāvīra Himself or from the monks, one comes to know —
It (i. e. causing violence to the beings of vegetable-body), in fact, is the knot of bondage,
it, in fact, is the delusion,

it, in fact, is the death,
it, in fact, is the hell.

१०८. इच्छत्थं गदिए लोए ।

108. *Iccattham gadhie loe.*

108. (Nevertheless) man, impelled by the aforesaid motives becomes engrossed in (the acts of inflicting injury to the beings of vegetable-body).

१०९. जमिणं विरुवरुवेहिं सत्थेहिं वणस्सइ-कम्म-समारंभेणं वणस्सइ-
सत्थं समारंभेमाणे अण्णे वणेगरुवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

109. *Jamiṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ vaṇassai-kamma-samāraṇbheṇaṃ vaṇassaisattham samāraṇbhemāṇe aṇṇe vaṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsati.*

109. He, employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in actions involving vegetable, (thereby) causing violence to the beings of vegetable-body. (He causes violence not only to the beings of vegetable-body, but also) causes violence to different kinds of other beings.

वणस्सइकाइयाणं जीवत्त-वेदणाबोध-पदं

११०. से बेमि—अप्पेगे अंधमब्भे, अप्पेगे अंधमच्छे ।

Vaṇassaikāiyāṇaṃ jīvatta-vedañābodha-padam

110. Se bemi—appege aṇdhamabbhe, appege aṇdhamacche.

Vegetable Beings : Their Animation and Experience of Pain

110. I say—

(Just as consciousness of a man born without any sense-organs (i. e. one who is blind, deaf, dumb, crippled etc. from birth) is not manifest, the consciousness of the beings of vegetable-body is also not manifest). (Nevertheless) such a man (the one born organless), (experiences pain) when struck or cut with a weapon (and so do the beings of vegetable-body).

१११. अप्पेगे पायमब्भे, अप्पेगे पायमच्छे । *

111. Appege payamabbhe, appege pāyamacche*.

111. (On simultaneously) cutting and severing with weapons (all the following thirty-two anatomical features of a man, he suffers excruciating pain though he would not be able to express it):

Foot, ankle, leg, knee, thigh, waist, belly, stomach, flank, back, bosom, heart, breast, shoulder, arm, hand, finger, nail, neck, chin, lip, tooth, tongue, palate, throat, temple, nose, ear, eye, brow, forehead and head.

(So is the case with the beings of vegetable-body).

११२. अप्पेगे संपमारए, अप्पेगे उड्ढए ।

112. Appege saṃpamārae, appege uddavae.

112. Man (experiences pain) when forced into unconsciousness or when he is deprived of life. (So do the beings of vegetable-body).

वणस्सइजीवाणं माणुस्सेण तुलणा-पदं

११३. से बेमि—इमं पि जाइधम्मयं, एयं पि जाइधम्मयं ।

इमं पि बुद्धिधम्मयं, एयं पि बुद्धिधम्मयं ।

इमं पि चित्तमंतयं, एयं पि चित्तमंतयं ।

इमं पि छिन्नं मिलाति, एयं पि छिन्नं मिलाति ।

इमं पि आहारगं, एयं पि आहारगं ।

इमं पि अणिच्चयं, एयं पि अणिच्चयं ।

इमं पि असासयं, एयं पि असासयं ।

इमं पि जयावच्चइयं, एयं पि जयावच्चइयं ।

इमं पि विपरिणामधम्मयं, एयं पि विपरिणामधम्मयं ।

Vaṇassaṭṭhijīvāṇaṃ māṇussaṇa tulaṇā-padaṃ

113. Se bemi—Imaṃ pi jāidhammayāṃ, eyaṃ pi jāidhammayāṃ.

Imaṃ pi buddhidhammayāṃ, eyaṃ pi buddhidhammayāṃ.

Imaṃ pi cittaṃmāntayaṃ, eyaṃ pi cittaṃmāntayaṃ.

Imaṃ pi chinnaṃ milāti, eyaṃ pi chinnaṃ milāti.

* For the complete text, see. 1/29.

Imaṃpi āhāragam, eyaṃpi āhāragam.
 Imaṃpi apiccayam, eyaṃpi apiccayam.
 Imaṃpi asāsayaṃ, eyaṃpi asāsayaṃ.
 Imaṃpi cayāvacaiaṃ, eyaṃpi cayāvacaiaṃ.
 Imaṃpi vipariṇāmadhammayam, eyaṃpi vipariṇā-
 madhammayam.

Comparison of Plant Life with Human Life

113. I say —

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) This (i. e. human beings) is born; | This (i. e. plant) too is born. |
| (b) This grows; | This too grows. |
| (c) This possesses consciousness; | This too possesses consciousness. |
| (d) On being cut this becomes sad; | This too becomes sad (i. e. withers) on being cut. |
| (e) This takes nourishment; | This too takes nourishment. |
| (f) This is mortal; | This too is mortal. |
| (g) This is not eternal; | This too is not eternal. |
| (h) There is metabolism (anabolism and ketabolism) in this (i.e. building up of new cells and decaying of old cells); | There is metabolism in this too. |
| (i) This undergoes various transformations (such as aging etc.); | This too undergoes various transformations (such as aging etc.). |

ANNOTATION 113: Besides the points of similarity enumerated in this aphorism, there are some more phenomena, according to the commentary, common to both human beings and plants, e.g. sleep, longings during pregnancy, disease, etc.

हिंसाविरोध-पदं

११४. एतत् सत्यं समारंभमाणस्स इच्छते आरंभा अपरिणता भवति ।

Himsā-vivega-padam

114. Ettha sattham samārambhamāṇassa iccete ārambhā aparipñātā bhavaṃti.

Forswearing of Violence

114. He who uses a weapon on the beings of vegetable-body, has neither comprehended nor forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of vegetable-body and other beings residing in the vegetable.)

११५. एत्थ सत्थं असमारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा परिणाय भवन्ति ।

115. Ettha sattham asamārambhamāṇassa iccete ārambhā pariññāyā bhavaṃti.

115. (On the contrary) he who does not use any weapon on the beings of vegetable-body, has comprehended and forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of vegetable-body, and other beings residing in it.)

११६. तं परिणाय मेहावी णेव सयं वणस्सइ-सत्थं समारंभेज्जा,
णेवण्णेहि वणस्सइ-सत्थं समारंभावेज्जा, णेवण्णे वणस्सइ-सत्थं
समारंभते समणुज्जाणेज्जा ।

116. Tam pariññāya mehāvī neva sayam vaṇassai-sattham samārambhējā, nevaṇṇehim vaṇassai-sattham samārambhāvejā, nevaṇṇe vaṇassai-sattham samārambhamte samaṇujānejā.

116. Having discerned this, a sage should neither use any weapon causing violence to the beings of vegetable-body, nor cause others to use it, nor approve of others using it.

११७. जस्सेते वणस्सइ-सत्थ-समारंभा परिणाय भवन्ति, ते हु मुणी
परिणाय-कम्मे ।

—सि बेयि ।

117. Jassete vaṇassai-sattha-samārambhā parinṇāyā bhavaṃti, se hu muṇi parinṇāya-kamme.

— Tti bemi.

117. He, who discerns (i.e. comprehends and forswears) the actions that cause violence to the beings of vegetable-body, can be regarded as a (true) ascetic (for a true ascetic is he) who has discerningly forsworn actions.

—I say so.

SECTION VI

छट्ठो उद्देशो

Chattho Uddeso

संसार-पदं

११८. से बेमि—संतिमे तसा पाणा, तं जहा—अंडया पोयया जराडया
रसया संसेयया समुच्छिमा उन्भिया ओववाइया ।

Samsāra -padaṃ

118. Se bemi—saṃtime tasā pāṇā, taṃ jahā — aṇḍayā po-
yayā jarāuyā rasayā saṃseyayā saṃmucchimā ub-
bhiyā ovavāiyā.

World of Recurrent Transmigration

118. I say —

These are mobile beings such as those born

- (1) out of eggs,
- (2) out of foetus (born complete)
- (3) out of foetus with the amnion (or the chorion, an enveloping membrane),
- (4) out of fluids,
- (5) out of sweat
- (6) by coagulation,
- (7) by sprouting from the earth),
- (8) spontaneously (i. e. not as a result of union of sperms and ova).

ANNOTATION 118: Some examples of these genera are respectively as follows:

- (1) Birds, etc.
- (2) Elephants, bats, etc. (*Pota* means a young one; *po-taja*, therefore, means a being which is born as a young one (i. e. without an enveloping membrane).

- (3) Human beings, and quadrupeds such as cows and buffaloes etc. (*Jarāyu* means the membrane which envelopes the young one at the time of birth).
- (4) Worms, etc. (generated in fluids like curd, butter-milk etc.)
- (5) Bugs, lice, etc.
- (6) Two-sensed, three-sensed, and four-sensed beings, (whose birth depends upon external conditions).
- (7) Butter-flies, wagtails, etc.
- (8) Hell-beings and celestial beings. These are born spontaneously and come to manhood within a *muhūrta* (i. e. 48 minutes). It may be mentioned that No. (vi) includes (iv), (v) & (vii) also.

११९. एस संसारेति पवुच्चति ।

119. *Esa saṁsāretti pavuccati.*

119. This (category of mobile-beings) is called *saṁsara* (i. e. world of recurrently transmigrating beings).

ANNOTATION 119. The world of mobile-beings is called here *saṁsara* perhaps for two reasons:

- (1) Souls go on transmigrating from one genus to another one, passing through the cycles of birth and death.
- (2) Only the beings belonging to this category are capable of locomotion.

१२०. मंदस्स अवियाणओ ।

120. *Māṁdassa aviyaṇao.*

120. The slow-witted and the benighted ones (go on transmigrating in this world).

ANNOTATION 120: In this aphorism two causes of the incessant transmigration of souls are pointed out:

- (1) Lack of wisdom or discretion.
- (2) Ignorance.

One who has acquired the Right Knowledge and who is possessed of discretionary powers can liberate himself from the world-cycle.

१२१. णिज्झाइत्ता पडिलेहिता पत्तेयं परिणिव्वानं ।

121. *Ñijjhāittā padilehittā patteyaṃ parinivvānaṃ.*

121. Through observation and scrutiny find out for yourself that peace is dear to every living being.

१२२. सव्वेसि पाणाणं, सव्वेसि भूयाणं, सव्वेसि जीवाणं, सव्वेसि
सत्ताणं अस्सायं अपरिणिव्वानं सहभयं दुक्खं ति बेमि ।

122. *Savvesiṃ pāṇāṇaṃ, savvesiṃ bhūyāṇaṃ, savvesiṃ jīvāṇaṃ, savvesiṃ sattāṇaṃ assāyaṃ aparinivvānaṃ mahabbhayaṃ dukkhaṃ ti bemi.*

122. Through observation and scrutiny find out for yourself that inquietude is distasteful to, highly terrifying and painful for all animals, all beings, all those throbbing with life and all souls. So do I say.

ANNOTATIONS 121-122: The words *assāyaṃ*, *aparinivvānaṃ*, *mahabbhayaṃ*, and *dukkhaṃ* are all more or less synonymous with suffering or pain. On the contrary, *sāyaṃ*, *parinivvānaṃ*, *abhayaṃ* and *sukhaṃ* signify the feeling of happiness.

The purport of the author here is to point out the fact that only he who knows and realises the Eternal Truth that every living being is keen to have peace and pleasure, and has a strong antipathy to inquietude and suffering is competent to practise abstinence from violence.

तसकाइयहिंसापदं

१२३. तसंति पाणा पडिसोदिसासु य ।

Tasakāiyahiṃsā-padaṃ

123. *Tasaṃti pāṇā padisodisāsu ya.*

Violence to Mobile Living Beings

123. (Being overwhelmed by grief), the creatures are scared from (all) directions and intermediate directions.

ANNOTATION 123. All beings live under constant strain due to fear from all sides—all directions. There is, in fact, no direction in which they can live free from terror. (It is probably for this reason that a silk-worm forms a cocoon around itself). Thus, beings in all directions and intermediate directions are intimidated on account of various sorts of mental and physical sufferings.

१२४. तत्थ-तत्थ पुढो पास, आउरा परितवेन्ति ।

124. *Tattha-tattha puḍho pāsa, āurā paritāveṃti.*

124. See! Almost everywhere the passionate man are tormenting (mobile-beings).

१२५. संति पाणा पुढो सिया ।

125. *Sam̐ti pāṇā puḍho siyā.*

125. (Each of the) mobile-beings has its own body to inhabit.

१२६. लज्जमाणा पुढो पास ।

126. *Lajjamāṇā puḍho pāsa.*

126. See! Every (ascetic who has ceased from causing violence to these beings), leads a life of self-discipline.

१२७. अणगारा मोत्ति एगे पवयमाणा ।

127. *Aṇagārā motti ege pavayamāṇā.*

127. (And discern from them) those pseudo-monks who, despite professing, "We are mendicants," (act like

householders i.e. cause violence to the mobile-beings).

१२८. जमिणं विरुवरूवेहिं सत्थेहिं तसकाय-समारंभेणं तसकाय-सत्थं
समारंभमाणे अण्णे वण्णेरूवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

128. Jamiṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ tasakāya - samā-
raṃbheṇaṃ tasakāya-satthaṃ samāraṃbhamāṇe
aṇṇe vaṇṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsati.

128. He (pseudo-monk), employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in actions involving mobile-beings, (thereby) causing violence to the mobile-beings, (he causes violence not only to the mobile-beings, but also) causes violence to different kinds of other beings.

१२९. तत्थ खलु भगवया परिण्णा पवेइया ।

129. Tattha khalu bhagavayā pariṇṇā paveiya.

129. (Hence) Bhagavān Mahāvīra has taught discernment (i.e. comprehension and forswearing) with respect to this issue.

१३०. इमस्स चेव जीवियस्स,
परिवंदण-माणण-पूयणाए,
जाई-मरण-मोयणाए,
दुक्खपडिधायहेउं ।

130. Imassa ceva jīviyassa,
Parivaṃdaṇa-māṇaṇa-pūyaṇāe,
Jāi-maraṇa-moyaṇāe,
Dukkhaṇaḍḍhāyaheum.

130. (1) for the sake of survival,
(2) for the sake of praise, honour, reverence,
(3) for the sake of birth, death, liberation,
(4) for the sake of prevention of miseries.

१३१. से सयमेव तसकाय-सत्थं समारंभति, अण्णेहिं वा तसकाय-सत्थं
समारंभावेइ, अण्णे वा तसकाय-सत्थं समारंभमाणे समणुजाणइ ।

131. Se sayameva tasakāya-sattham samārambhati, annehim vā tasakāya-sattham samārambhāvei, anṇe vā tasakāya-sattham samārambhamāṇe samanujāṇai.
131. Some monk either indulges himself in action causing violence to the mobile-beings through various kinds of weapons, makes others to cause violence to the mobile-beings, or approves of others causing violence to the mobile-beings.
१३२. तं से अहियाए, तं से अबोहीए ।
132. Tam se ahiyāe, tam se abohīe.
132. Such an act of violence proves baneful for him, such an act of violence deprives him of enlightenment.
१३३. से तं संबुज्जमाणे, आयाणीयं समुट्ठाए ।
133. Se tam sambujjhamāṇe, ayāṇīyaṁ samutthāe.
133. He (true ascetic), comprehending it (i.e. consequences of act of violence), becomes vigilant over the practice of self-discipline.
१३४. सोच्चा भगवओ, अणगाराणं वा अंतिए इहमेगेसि णायं भवइ—
 एस खलु गंथे,
 एस खलु मोहे,
 एस खलु मारे,
 एस खलु णराए ।
134. Soccā bhagavao, aṇagārāṇaṁ vā antie ihamegesim ṇāyaṁ bhavai —
 Esa khalu gamthe,
 Esa khalu mohe,
 Esa khalu māre,
 Esa khalu ṇarae.
134. Hearing from the Bhagavān Mahāvīra Himself or from the monks, one comes to know:—
 It (i.e. causing violence to the mobile-beings), in fact, is the knot of bondage,

it, in fact, is the delusion,
it, in fact, is the death,
it, in fact, is the hell.

१३५. इच्छत्यं गदिए लोए ।

135. *Iccatham gadhie loe.*

135. (Nevertheless) man, impelled by the aforesaid motives, becomes engrossed in (the acts of inflicting injury to the mobile-beings).

१३६. जमिणं विरुवरुवेहि सत्येहि तसकाय-समारंभेणं तसकाय-सत्यं
समारंभमाणे अण्णे वणेगरुवे पाणे विहिसति ।

136. *Jamiṇaṁ virūvarūvehiṁ satthehiṁ. tasakāya-samārambheṇaṁ tasakāya-satthaṁ samārambhamāṇe aṇṇe vaṇegarūve pāṇe vihim sati.*

136. He, employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in actions involving mobile-beings, (thereby) causing violence to the mobile-beings. (He causes violence not only to the mobile beings but also) to different kinds of other beings.

तसकाइयाणं जीवस-वेदणाबोध-पदं

१३७. से बेमि—अप्पेगे अंधमब्भे, अप्पेगे अंधमच्छे ।

Tasakāiṇāṇaṁ jīvatta - vedanābodha-padam

137. Se bemi—appege amḍhamabbhe, appege amḍhamacche.

Mobile Living Beings : Their Animation and Experience of Pain

137. I say —

(Just as consciousness of a man born without any sense-organs (i. e. one who is blind, deaf, dumb, crippled etc. from birth) is not manifest, the consciousness of the mobile-beings is also not manifest.) (Nevertheless) such a man (the one born organless) (experiences pain) when struck or cut with a weapon, (so also do the mobile-being).

१३८. अप्पेगे पायमब्भे, अप्पेगे पायमच्छे ।¹

138. Appege pāyamabbhe, appege pāyamacche¹.

138. (On simultaneously) cutting and severing with weapons, (all the following thirty-two anatomical features of a man, he suffers excruciating pain though he would not be able to express it):

Foot, ankle, leg, knee, thigh, waist, belly, stomach, flank, back, bosom, heart, breast, shoulder, arm, hand, finger, nail, neck, chin, lip, tooth, tongue, palate, throat, temple, ear, nose, eye, brow, forehead and head.

(So is the case with the mobile-being).

१३९. अप्पेगे संपमारए, अप्पेगे उद्दवए ।

139. Appege sampamārae, appege uddavae.

139. Man (experiences pain) when forced into unconsciousness or when he is deprived of life. (So do the mobile-being).

हिंसाविबेग-पदं

१४०. से बेमि—अप्पेगे अच्चाए वहंति, अप्पेगे अजिणाए वहंति,
अप्पेगे मंसाए वहंति, अप्पेगे सोणियाए वहंति,
अप्पेगे हिययाए वहंति, अप्पेगे पित्ताए वहंति,
अप्पेगे वसाए वहंति, अप्पेगे पिच्छाए वहंति,
अप्पेगे पुच्छाए वहंति, अप्पेगे बालाए वहंति,
अप्पेगे सिगाए वहंति, अप्पेगे विसाणाए वहंति,
अप्पेगे दंताए वहंति, अप्पेगे दाढाए वहंति,
अप्पेगे नहाए वहंति, अप्पेगे ण्हारुणीए वहंति,
अप्पेगे अट्ठीए वहंति, अप्पेगे अट्ठिमिजाए वहंति,
अप्पेगे अट्ठाए वहंति, अप्पेगे अणट्ठाए वहंति,
अप्पेगे हिंसिसु मेत्ति वा वहंति,
अप्पेगे हिंसंति मेत्ति वा वहंति,
अप्पेगे हिंसिस्संति मेत्ति वा वहंति ।

Himsāvivēga-padam

140. Se bemi — appege accāe vahaṃti, appege ajināe vahaṃti,

1. For the complete text, see, 1/29.

Appege mamsāe vahaṃti, appege soṇiyāe vahaṃti,
 Appege hiyayāe vahaṃti, appege pittāe vahaṃti,
 Appege vasāe vahaṃti, appege picchāe vahaṃti,
 Appege pucchāe vahaṃti, appege bālāe vahaṃti,
 Appege siṃgāe vahaṃti, appege visāṇāe vahaṃti,
 Appege daṃtāe vahaṃti, appege dāḍhāe vahaṃti,
 Appege nahāe vahaṃti, appege ṇhārunīe vahaṃti,
 Appege aṭṭhīe vahaṃti, appege aṭṭhimimjāe vahaṃti,
 Appege aṭṭhāe vahaṃti, appege anatṭhāe vahaṃti,
 Appege himsimsu metti vā vahaṃti, appege him-
 samti metti vā vahaṃti, appege himsissamti metti
 vā vahaṃti.

Forswearing of Violence

140. I say —

Some people kill (beings) for the sake of obtaining their body, while some others do so for the sake of obtaining their skin, flesh, blood, heart, bile, fat, feathers, tail, hair, horns, tusks, teeth, jaws, nails, sinews, bones and marrow.

Some people kill (beings) with a purpose and some do so without one.

Some people kill (beings) for vendetta, reflecting that the latter had injured or killed (their kith and kin).

Some people kill (beings with the consideration that) they are injuring or killing (their kith and kin) while some others do so (with the apprehension that) they will injure (or kill) (their kith and kin).

१४१. एत्थ सत्थं समारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा अपरिण्णाया भवन्ति ।

141. Ettha sattham samāraṃbhamāṇassa iccete āraṃbhā aparinṇāyā bhavaṃti.

141. He who uses a weapon on the mobile-beings, has neither comprehended nor forsworn actions (causing violence to the mobile-beings and other beings residing in them).

१४२. एत्थ सत्थं असमारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा परिण्णाया भवन्ति ।

142. Ettha sattham̐ asamārambhamāṇassa iccete ārambhā pariṇṇāyā bhavaṃti.

142. (On the contrary), he who does not use any weapon on the mobile-beings, has comprehended and forsworn actions (causing violence to the mobile-beings and other beings residing in them).

१४३. तं परिण्णाय मेहावी णेव सयं तसकाय-सत्थं समारंभेज्जा,
णेवण्णेहिं तसकाय-सत्थं समारंभावेज्जा, णेवण्णे तसकाय-सत्थं
समारंभंते समणुजानेज्जा ।

143. *Taṃ pariṇṇāya mehāvī* ṇeva sayam tasakāya-sattham̐ samārambhejjā, ṇevannehim tasakāya-sattham̐ samārambhāvejjā, ṇevanne tasakāya-sattham̐ samārambhaṃte samanujāṇejjā.

143. Having discerned this, a sage should neither use any weapon causing violence to the mobile-being, nor cause others to use it nor approve of others using it.

१४४. जस्सेते तसकाय-सत्थ-समारंभा परिण्णाय भवति, से हु मुणी
परिण्णाय-कम्मे । —त्ति बेमि ।

144. Jassete tasakāya-sattha-samārambhā pariṇṇāyā bhavaṃti, se hu munī pariṇṇāya-kamme.

— Tti bemi.

144. He who discerns (i. e. comprehends and forswears) the actions that cause violence to the mobile-beings, can be regarded as a (true) ascetic (for a true ascetic is he) who has discerningly forsworn actions.

— I say so

SECTION VII

सत्तमो उद्देशो

Sattamo Uddeso

अत्ततुला-पदं

१४५. पहू एजस्स दुगंछणाए ।

*Attatulā-padam*145. *Pahū ejassa dugam'chanāe.**Equality of Beings with the Self*

145. (One who practises non-violence) becomes competent to practise abstinence from causing violence to the beings of air-body.

१४६. आयंकदंसी अहियं ति नच्च ।

146. *Āyaṃkadam'sī ahiyaṃ ti naccā.*

146. It is he who perceives (that violence causes) terror (and that it would be to) his own detriment (becomes competent to practise non-violence).

१४७. जे अज्झत्थं जाणइ, से बहिया जाणइ । जे बहिया जाणइ, से अज्झत्थं जाणइ ।

147. Je ajjhattham jāṇai, se bahiyā jāṇai. Je bahiyā jāṇai, se ajjhattham jāṇai.

147. One who knows the inner-self knows the external (world) as well;
One who knows the external (world) knows the inner-self as well.

ANNOTATION 147: This aphorism can be interpreted in three different ways:

1) The intrinsic aspect of a substance is subtle, while the external one is gross. It is easy to comprehend the latter, but difficult to comprehend the former. One who can comprehend the former can distinctly comprehend the latter also. One who has comprehended the latter is able to know the former only through the medium of the gross. The soul is an inner-reality. Its conscious form cannot be distinctly comprehended. But its functions, manifested through the body, are gross and external. It follows from this that a body, devoid of consciousness cannot perform functions of consciousness. The functions of consciousness are the functions performed by the conscient reality (soul).

2) A person directly experiences pain and pleasure and as such they are immediate and self-perceptible. On the basis of the self-experience we can understand the pains and pleasures of others. Therefore, the feeling of pains and pleasures of others is an indirect one. The way in which we are affected by any external cause is the same in which others are affected and the way in which the others are affected by external causes is the same as the way in which we ourselves are affected.

3) Knowledge like the sun is self-luminary. Just as the sun is self-luminary and illuminates other objects, knowledge is self-luminary and enlightens other substances. The function of knowledge is to know the knowable. Knowledge is self-luminary and therefore reveals the spiritual substance—it reveals the self. It enlightens others and therefore it reveals the external world i. e. it reveals the whole gamut of knowable objects, distinct from the Self. But the knowledge that reveals the external world and internal world is one and the same. That is why, the author has laid down —

One who knows the inner-self knows the external (world) as well;

One who knows the external (world) knows the inner-self as well.

१४८. एयं तुलमण्णसि ।

148. *Eyaṃ tula maṇṇesiṃ.*

148. Try to realise the significance of this 'equality'.

ANNOTATIONS 146-148: Three pre-requisites of the practice of non-violence are as follows:

- (1) Perception of terror caused by violence.
- (2) Realisation of detrimental consequences of violence.
- (3) Equality of all other beings with the Self — that is to say that just as we like pleasure and dislike pain, so do other beings and the *vice versa*.

१४९. इह संतिगया दविया, नावकंखंति वीजिउं ।

149. *Iha saṃtigayā daviyā, nāvakaṃkhamti vījītuṃ.*

149. The *sādhakas* initiated in this (*Nirgrantha* order i. e. the Order of Unfettered ones or the Jaina Order) are serene and free from bodily attachments. That is why they never want to fan¹ themselves.

वाउकाइयाहिंसा-पदं

१५०. लज्जमाणा पुढो पास ।

Vāukāiyahiṃsā-padam

150. *Lajjamāṇā puḍho pāsa.*

Violence to the Beings of Air-body

150. See ! Every (ascetic who has ceased from causing violence to these beings) leads a life of self-discipline.

१५१. अणगारा मोत्ति एगे पवयमाणा ।

151. *Anagārā motti ege pavayamāṇā.*

151. (And discern from them) those pseudo-monks who, despite professing, "We are mendicants," (act like

1. Cf. *Dasaveyāliyaṃ*, 6/37

householders i. e. cause violence to the beings of air-body).

१५२. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहि सत्थेहि वाउकम्म-समारंभेणं वाउ-सत्थं
समारंभमाणे अण्णे वणेगरूवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

152. Jamiṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ vāukamma-samārambheṇaṃ vāu-sattham samārambhamāṇe aṇṇe vaṇe-garūve paṇe vihiṃsati.

152. He (pseudo-monk), employing various kinds of weapons, indulges in actions involving air, (thereby) causing violence to the beings of air-body. (He causes violence not only to the beings of air-body, but also) causes violence to different kinds of other beings.

१५३. तत्थ खलु भगवया परिण्णा पवेइया ।

153. Tattha khalu bhagavayā pariṇṇa paveiyā.

153. (Hence) Bhagavān Mahāvīra has taught discernment (i. e. comprehension and forswearing) with respect to this issue.

१५४. इमस्स चेव जीवियस्स,
परिवंदण-माणण-पूयणाए,
जाई-मरण-मोयणाए,
दुक्खपडिघायहेउं ।

154. Imassa ceva jīviyassa,
Parivaṇḍaṇa-māṇaṇa-pūyaṇāe,
Jāī-marapa-moyaṇāe,
Dukkhaṇaḍḍighāyaheum.

154. (1) For the sake of survival,
(2) for the sake of praise, honour, reverence,
(3) for the sake of birth, death, liberation,
(4) for the sake of prevention of miseries.

१५५. से सयमेव वाउ-सत्थं समारंभति, अण्णेहि वा वाउ-सत्थं
समारंभावेति. अण्णे वा वाउ-सत्थं समारंभते समणजाण्ड ।

155. Se sayameva vāu-sattham samārambhati, aṇṇehim vā vāu-sāttham samārambhāveti, aṇṇe vā vāu-sattham samārambhamte samapujāpai.

155. Some monk either indulges himself in action causing violence to the beings of air-body through various kinds of weapons, makes others to cause violence to the beings of air-body or approves of others causing violence to the beings of air-body.

१५६. तं से अहियाए, तं से अबोहीए ।

156. Taṁ se ahiyāe, taṁ se abohīe.

156. Such an act of violence proves baneful for him, such an act of violence deprives him of enlightenment.

१५७. से तं संबुज्झमाणे, आयाणीयं समुट्ठाए ।

157. Se taṁ sambujjhamāṇe, āyāṇīyaṁ samutṭhāe.

157. He (true ascetic), comprehending it (i.e. consequence of acts of violence), becomes vigilant over the practice of self-discipline.

१५८. सोच्चा भगवओ, अणयाराणं वा अंतिए इहमेगेसि णायं भवइ—

एस खलु गंथे,

एस खलु मोहे,

एस खलु मारे,

एस खलु गिरए ।

158. Soccā bhagavao, anagārāṇaṁ vā aṁtie ihamegesim nāyaṁ bhavai —

Esa khalu gaṁthe,

Esa khalu mohe,

Esa khalu māre,

Esa khalu gīrae.

158. Hearing from Bhagavān Mahāvīra Himself or from the monks, one comes to know —

It (i. e. causing violence to the beings of air-body),
 in fact, is the knot of bondage,
 it, in fact, is the delusion,
 it, in fact, is the death,
 it, in fact, is the hell.

१५९. इच्छत्थं गच्छि लोए ।

159. *Iccattham gacchie loe.*

159. (Nevertheless) man, impelled by the aforesaid motives, becomes engrossed in (the acts of inflicting injury to the beings of air-body).

१६०. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहिं सत्थेहिं वाउकम्म-समारंभेणं वाउ-सत्थं
 समारंभमाणे अण्णे वणेगरूवे पाणे विहिंसति ।

160. *Jamiṇaṁ virūvarūvehiṁ satthehiṁ vāukamma-samārambheṇaṁ vāu - sattham samārambhamāṇe aṇṇe vaṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṁsati.*

160. He, employing various kinds of weapons indulges in actions involving air, (thereby) causing violence to the beings of air-body, (He causes violence not only to the beings of air-body, but also) to different kinds of other beings.

वाउकाइयाणं जीवत्त-वेदणाबोध-पदं

१६१. से बेमि—अप्पेगे अंधमग्गे, अप्पेगे अंधमच्छे ।

Vāukāiyāṇaṁ jīvatta -vedaṇābodha -padaṁ

161. *Se bemi—appege aṁdhamabbhe, appege aṁdhamacche.*

Air Beings : Their Animation and Experience of Pain

161. I say —

(Just as consciousness of a man born without any sense-organs (i. e. one who is blind, deaf, dumb, crippled etc. from birth) is not manifest, the consciousness of the beings of air-body is also not manifest). (Never-

theless) such a man (the one born organless) (experiences pain) when struck or cut with a weapon, (so do the beings of air-body).

१६२. अप्पेगे पायमब्बे, अप्पेगे पायमच्छे ।¹

162. Appege pāyamabbhe, appege pāyamacche¹.

162. (On simultaneously) cutting and severing with weapons, (all the following thirty-two anatomical features of a man, he suffers excruciating pain though he would not be able to express it):

Foot, ankle, leg, knee, thigh, waist, belly, stomach, flank, back, bosom, heart, breast, shoulder, arm, hand, finger, nail, neck, chin, lip, tooth, tongue, parietate, throat, temple, ear, nose, eye, brow, forehead, and head.

(So is the case with the beings of air-body).

१६३. अप्पेगे संपमारए, अप्पेगे उद्दवए ।

163. Appege saṃpamārae, appege uddavae.

163. Man (experiences pain) when forced into unconsciousness or when he is deprived of life. (so do the beings of air-body).

हिंसाविवेग-पदं

१६४. से बेमि—संति संपाइमा पाणा, आहञ्च संपयंति य ।

करिं स च खलु पुट्ठा, एगे संधायमावज्जंति ॥

जे तत्थं संधायमावज्जंति, ते तत्थ परियावज्जंति,

जे तत्थ परियावज्जंति, ते तत्थ उद्दायंति ॥

Himsāvivēga-padam

164. *Se bemi—Saṃti saṃpāimā pānā, āhacca saṃpay-*
aṃti ya.

Pharisaṃ ca khalu puṭṭhā, ege saṃghayaṃāvajjānti

Je tatthaṃ saṃghāyaṃāvajjānti, te tattha pariyā-

vajjānti.

1. For the complete text, see, 1/29.

Je tattna pariyāvajjamti, te tattha uddāyamti.

Forswearing of Violence

164. I say —

There are also beings (insects) which fly in the air and drop down from there. All these beings shrivel up on coming in contact with (the current of) the air. Those beings which shrivel up on coming in contact with the (current of air), faint by this (contact), and those which faint (thus) die there and then.

१६५. एत्थ सत्थं समारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा अपरिण्णाय भवति ।

165. Ettha sattham samārambhamāṇassa iccete ārambhā aparinnāyā bhavaṃti.

165. He who uses a weapon on the beings of air-body has neither comprehended nor forsworn actions (causing violence to the beings of air-body and other beings residing in the air.).

१६६. एत्थ सत्थं असमारंभमाणस्स इच्चेते आरंभा परिण्णाय भवति ।

166. Ettha sattham asamārambhamāṇassa iccete ārambhā parinnāyā bhavaṃti.

166. (On the contrary) he who does not use any weapon on the beings of air-body, has comprehended and forsworn action (causing violence to the beings of air-body and other beings residing in it.)

१६७. सं परिण्णाय मेहावी नेव सयं वाउ-सत्थं समारंभेज्जा, नेवण्णेहि वाउ-सत्थं समारंभावेज्जा, नेवण्णे वाउ-सत्थं समारंभते समणुज्जाणेज्जा ।

167. *Tam parinnayā mehāvī* neva sayam vāusattham samārambhejjā, nevaṇṇehim vāu-sattham samārambhāvejjā, nevaṇṇe vāu-sattham samārambhamte samaṇujāṇejjā.

167. Having discerned this, a sage should neither use any weapon causing violence to the beings of air-body, nor

cause others to use it, nor approve of others using it.

१६८. जस्सेते वाङ्ग-सत्यं-समारंभा परिण्णाय भवन्ति, से ढु मुणी
परिण्णाय-कम्मे ति बेमि ।

168. Jassete vāu-sattham-samārambhā pariṇṇāyā bhav-
aṃti, se hu muṇi pariṇṇāya-kamme ti bemi.

168. He who discerns (i.e. comprehends and forswears)
the actions that cause violence to the beings of air-
body can be regarded as a (true) ascetic, (for a true
ascetic is he) who has discerningly forsworn actions.

मुनि-संबोध-पदं

१६९. एत्थं पि जाणे उवादीयमाणा ।

Muṇi-sambodha-padam

169. *Ettham pi jāṇe uvādiyamāṇā.*

Admonition to Ascetics

169. In this context you should know: (There are some as-
cetics) who are fettered (by craving for ease and
comfort).

१७०. जे आयारे न रमन्ति ।

170. *Je āyāre na ramaṃti.*

170. Only those (aspirants) who do not rejoice in the prac-
tice of the ethical code (get fettered by craving for
ease and comfort).

१७१. आरंभमाणा विणयं वयन्ति ।

171. *Ārambhamāṇā viṇayaṃ vayaṃti.*

171. Those (who do not rejoice in the practice of the ethi-
cal code), while indulging in violence, preach (to
others) the ethical code.

१७२. छंदोवणीया अशोबकणा ।

172. *Chāmdovaṇīyā ajjhovavaṇṇā.*

172. Such (ascetics) are self-indulgent and licentious.

१७३. आरंभसत्ता पकरेति संगं ।

173. *Ārambhasattā pakareṇti saṅgam.*

173. Those (who are self-indulgent and licentious), having been attached to violence, engender fresh attachments, (and subsequently new bondages).

ANNOTATION 173: There are *Sādhakas* who do not stick to the prescribed code of conduct and are also full of lust, but they advise others to observe the code of conduct.

१७४. से वसुमं सव्व-समन्तागय-पण्णाणेणं अप्पाणेणं अकरणिज्जं
पावं कम्मं ।

174. *Se vasumam savva-samannāgaya-pañṇāṇeṇaṃ appāṇeṇaṃ akaraṇijjaṃ pāvaṃ kammaṃ.*

174. One who is rich in the enlightenment (i. e. one who practices non-violence) should not indulge in any sinful action (i. e. causing violence and self-indulgence) through his conscience, (guided) by the intellect, fully illumined with Truth.

ANNOTATION 174: All actions flow from man's conscience which is controlled by his intellect. The intellect, in its turn is triggered off by delusion or non-delusion, which respectively makes it untruthful or truthful—vicious or righteous. One whose intellect is illumined by Truth is straightforward in action, speech and thought, and acts with consistency. Only a conscience guided by the intellect fully illumined with Truth can abstain from violence and sensuality. Any *sādhaka* cannot refrain from violence and sensuality only by external conduct. Only through conscience, guided by the intellect, fully illumined with Truth can one do so.

१७५. तं णो अण्णेसि ।

175. *Taṃ ño aṇṇesiṃ.*

175. (Since the sinful actions are worthy to be shunned, one who observes non-violence) should not seek them.

हिंसाविवेग-पदं

१७६. तं परिणाय मेहावी णेव सयं छज्जीव-णिकाय-सत्थं समारंभेज्जा,
णेवण्णेहिं छज्जीव-णिकाय-सत्थं समारंभावेज्जा, णेवण्णे
छज्जीव-णिकाय-सत्थं समारंभंते समणुजाणेज्जा ।

Himsāvivēga -padaṃ

176. Tam pariṇāya mehāvi ṇeva sayam chajjīva-ṇikāya-sattham samāraṃbhejjā, ṇevanṇehim chajjīva-ṇikāya-sattham samāraṃbhāvejjā, ṇevanṇe chajjīva-ṇikāya-sattham samāraṃbhaṃte samaṇujāṇejjā.

Forswearing of Violence

176. Having discerned this, a sage should neither indulge himself in the use of weapons causing violence to the six systems of living beings, nor cause others to do so, nor approve of others doing so.

१७७. जस्सेते छज्जीव-णिकाय-सत्थ-समारंभा परिणाय भवति, से हु
मुणी परिणाय-कम्मे ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

177. Jassete chajjīva-ṇikāya-sattha-samāraṃbhā pariṇāya bhavaṃti, se hu muṇi pariṇāya-kamme.

— Tti bemi.

177. Only he who discerns (comprehends and forswears) indulging in actions causing violence to the six systems of living beings can be regarded as an ascetic (in the true sense of the word, for an ascetic is he) who has discerningly forsworn actions.

— I say so.

CHAPTER II

SUBJUGATION OF THE WORLD (OF PASSIONS)

बीअं अज्झयणं
लोगविजओ

BĪAṂ AJJHAYAṆAṂ

LOGAVIJAO

SECTION I

पढमो उद्देशो

Paḍhamo Uddeso

आसत्ति-पदं

१. जे गुणें से मूलद्वारेणें, जे मूलद्वारेणें से गुणें ।

Āsatti-padam

1. Je guṇe se mūlaṭṭhāṇe, je mūlaṭṭhāṇe se guṇe.

Attachment

1. Carnality¹ is (nothing but) mundane existence²;
(and) mundane existence is (nothing but) carnality.

ANNOTATION 1: Sensual qualities may be either pleasing or displeasing. By having attachment to the former and aversion to the latter, passions are intensified, which in their turn extend the cycle of transmigration. Thus the root cause of mundane existence is sensual qualities. Hence, the author identifies carnality with the cycles of birth and death.

1. The word *guṇa* literally means quality. Here the qualities indicated are the five sense-data viz. sound, colour, taste, smell and tangibility. Ultimately, therefore, *guṇa* denotes carnal pleasures.

2. The term *mūlaṭṭhāṇa* stands for *saṃsāra* i. e. the cycles of birth and death; in other words, the mundane existence of the soul.

२. इति से गुणट्ठी महता परियावेणं वसे पमत्ते—माया मे, पिया मे, भाया मे, भइणी मे, भज्जा मे, पुत्ता मे, धूया मे, सुण्हा मे, सहिसयण-सगंथ-संथुया मे, विवित्तोवगरण-परियट्ठण-भोयण-अच्छायणं मे, इच्छत्थं गद्धि ए लोए—वसे पमत्ते ।

2. Iti se guṇaṭṭhī mahatā pariyāvenam vase pamatte —māyā me, piyā me, bhāyā me, bhaini me, bhajja me, puttā me, dhūyā me, suṇhā me, sahi-sayana-saṅamtha-samthuyā me, vivittovagarana-pariyaṭṭaṇa-bhoyaṇa-acchāyaṇam me, iccattham gaḍhie loe—vase pamatte.

2. Hence, stupefied by the acute torments (caused by tempting passions,) a sensual person dwells (in mundane existence, uttering) 'my mother', 'my father', 'my brother', 'my sister', 'my wife', 'my son', 'my daughter', 'my daughter-in-law', 'my friend', 'my kith and kin', 'vast number of my utensils and means of transactions, food, and clothes'. Infatuated by deep attachments to these, he dwells with them.

ANNOTATION 2: Two things get the upper hand in a self-indulgent man: attachment and infatuation. Overwhelmed by these, he becomes money-minded.

३. अहो य राओ य परितप्पमाणे, कालाकालसमुट्ठाई,
संजोगट्ठी अट्ठालोभी, आलुं पे सहसक्कारे,
विणिविट्ठचित्ते एत्थ सत्थे पुणो-पुणो ।

3. Aho ya rāo ya paritappamāṇe, kālākālasamutṭhāi, saṁjogaṭṭhī aṭṭhālobhī, āluṁpe sahasakkāre, viṇivittḥacitte ettha satthe puṇo-puṇo.

3. He lives constantly tormented by avidity; he endeavours (to amass wealth) in season and out of season; being desirous of sensual pleasures, he is avid for money, (so much so that) he becomes out and out a rogue committing theft or robbery. His mind is always engrossed in (amassing wealth). (Such) a man re-

peatedly becomes a killer (lit. weapon) of living-beings).

असरणाणुपेहापुव्वं अप्पमाद-पदं

४. अप्पं च खलु आउं इहमेगेसि माणवाणं, तं जहा—

सोय-परिण्णानेहि परिहायमाणेहि,

चक्खु-परिण्णानेहि परिहायमाणेहि,

घाण-परिण्णानेहि परिहायमाणेहि,

रस-परिण्णानेहि परिहायमाणेहि,

फास-परिण्णानेहि परिहायमाणेहि ।

Asaraṇāṇupehāpuvvaṃ appamāda-padam

4. Appaṃ ca khalu āuṃ ihamegesim māṇavāṇaṃ,
taṃ jaha —

soya-pariṇṇāṇehim parihāyamāṇehim,

cakkhu-pariṇṇāṇehim parihāyamāṇehim,

ghāṇa-pariṇṇāṇehim parihāyamāṇehim,

rasa-pariṇṇāṇehim parihāyamāṇehim,

phāsa-pariṇṇāṇehim parihāyamāṇehim.

Wakefulness by Contemplation of Being Unprotected

4. In this (world), some people have a short life-span. Premature degeneration of the auditory faculty, premature degeneration of the optical faculty, premature degeneration of the olfactory faculty, premature degeneration of the palatal faculty, premature degeneration of the tactual faculty, (causes them to die young).

५. अभिक्कंतं च खलु वयं संपेहाए ।

5. Abhikkantaṃ ca khalu vayaṃ sampehāe.

5. Noticing that life is creeping (towards old age), (one gets worried).

ANNOTATION 5: The normal span of human life is about a hundred years. It can be divided into ten stages, each lasting for ten years. Till the end of the fourth stage (i. e. age of 40), his vigour and luster continue to increase, and are in full bloom. After that, deterioration sets in.

At fifty, the signs of decrepitude begin to appear. The eyesight begins to be affected. The power of the other sense-organs also begins to degenerate.

Senility then sets in, and vigour and lusture are replaced by infirmities. The vital organs then become progressively incapable of carrying out their functions; replacement of worn tissues is entirely stopped, and in the end, Death takes him away.

६. तबो से एगया मूढभाव जणयति ।

6. Tao se egaya mūḍhabhāvaṁ janayaṁti.

6. Then some day (towards the fag-end of life),(his sense-organs) are overwhelmed by senility (i. e. the faculties of audition, vision, etc. cease to function).

ANNOTATION 6: The word '*mūḍha-bhāvaṁ*' (lit. senility) has two meanings:

- (1) Deterioration of the sense-organs e.g. incapacity to hear or to get hard of hearing.
- (2) Infatuation—As the sense-organs deteriorate, sensuality increases.

Thus, an old man becomes senile as well as more lustful than before.

७. जेहि वा सदि संवसति ते वा णं एगया णियणा तं पुब्बं
परिवयति, सो वा ते णियणे पच्छा परिवएज्जा ।

7. *Jehim vā saddhim saṁvasati te vā naṁ egayā ṇiyagā taṁ puṁvīm parivayaṁti, so vā te ṇiyage pacchā parivaejjā.*
7. Some day (on the attainment of old age), he begins to be reprimanded by the members of his own family; and later on he also starts reprimanding them.
८. नालं ते तव ताणाए वा, सरणाए वा ।
तुमं पि तेसिं नालं ताणाए वा, सरणाए वा ।
8. *Nālaṁ te tava tāṇāe vā, saraṇāe vā.*
Tumaṁ pi tesim nālaṁ tāṇāe vā, saraṇāe vā.
8. (O old man!) They (the members of your family) are not capable to protect you or to give refuge to you; nor are you in a position to protect them or give them refuge.
९. से ण हस्साए, ण किड्ढाए, ण रतीए, ण विभूसाए ।
9. *Se ṇa hassāe, ṇa kiddāe, ṇa ratīe, ṇa vibhūsāe.*
9. He (an old man) is not fit enough for either light-hearted raillery, or frolick, or sexual intercourse, or adornment of himself.
१०. इच्चेवं समुट्ठिए अहोविहाराए ।
10. *Icevaṁ samutṭhiē aho vihārāe.*
10. Hence, (apprehending the repercussions flowing from old age,) one should rise to exert oneself in the practice of self-discipline (or asceticism).

ANNOTATION 10: Generally people lead their life by indulging in violence and amassing wealth. They have a strong conviction that worldly life is not possible without doing so. Such conviction is responsible for leading a life lacking in self-discipline.

Against such a conviction, the spiritualist ideology puts before men the ideals of non-violence and non-acquisitiveness, and establishes that life is possible even without perpetrating violence and acquiring wealth. Self-discipline in the form of ascetic life is the outcome of this doctrine. Asceticism (i. e. leading a life of self-discipline) is a subject of great surprise for those who lead a life lacking in self-discipline. Hence in the term of spiritualist ideology, "ahovihāra" is used for "asceticism".

૧૧. અંતરં ચ કલુ ઇમં સંપેહાણ—ધીરે મુહુત્તમવિ નો પમાયણ ।

11. *Am̐taraṃ ca khalu imaṃ saṃpehāṇ—dhīre muhutta-*
mavi ṇo pamāyae.

11. Having deliberated over the opportunity (in hand), the wise should not relax (in the practice of ascetisim) even for a while.

૧૨. વયો અચ્છેદ જોવ્વણં વ ।

12. *Vayo accei jovvaṇaṃ va.*

12. Years are passing by,
and youth is fading away.

૧૩. જીવિણ્ણ ઇહ જે પમત્તા ।

13. *Jīvie iha je pamattā.*

13. But, one who is not alive to the mission of life (cannot realize this).

૧૪. સે હંતા છેત્તા મેત્તા લુંપિત્તા વિલુંપિત્તા ઉદ્ધવિત્તા ઉત્તાસહિત્તા ।

14. *Se haṃtā chettā bhattā lūṃpittā vilūṃpittā udda-*
vittā uttāsaittā.

14. (That is why) he indulges in (the acts of violence such as) striking, mutilating, cutting, stealing, pillaging, killing and torturing.

१५. अकडं करिस्सामित्ति मण्णमाणे ।

15. Akadam karissāmitti maṇṇamāṇe.

15. Believing that he can do what others have never been able to do, (he perpetrates acts of violence).

१६. जेहि वा सद्धिं संवसति ते वा णं एगया णियगा तं पुब्बिं पोसेत्ति, सो वा ते नियगे पच्छा पोसेज्जा ।

16. Jehim vā saddhim samvasati te vā ṇaṃ egayā ṇiyagā taṃ puvaṃ poseṃti, so vā te niyage pacchā posejjā.

16. Sometimes (in childhood or adversity) he was looked after by the members of his own family; later on he takes upon himself to look after them.

१७. नालं ते तव ताणाए वा, सरणाए वा ।

तुमपि तेसि नालं ताणाए वा, सरणाए वा ।

17. Nālaṃ te tava tāṇāe vā, saraṇāe vā.
tumampi tesim nālaṃ tāṇāe vā, saraṇāe vā.

17. (Even so,) O man! neither are they competent to give you protection or refuge, nor are you so competent.

१८. उवाइय-सेसेण वा सन्निहि-सन्निचओ कज्जइ, इहमेगेसि असंजयाणं भोयणाए ।

18. Uvāiya-seseṇa vā sannihi-sannicao kajjai, ihame-
gesim asaṃjayaṇaṃ bhoyaṇāe.

18. After providing for himself, he utilizes his savings to stock (dairy products) and hoard (food supplies) for entertaining some householders (like his friends and relatives).

१९. तओ से एग्या रोग-समुप्पाया समुप्पज्जंति ।

19. Tao se egayā roga-samuppāyā samuppajjaṃti.

19. Even after (accumulation of wealth), sometime (during the period of enjoyment) he falls a victim to various

diseases. (So even during the period of his affluence, he cannot enjoy the pleasures of affluence).

२०. जेहि वा सद्धि संवसति ते वा णं एगया नियगा तं पुब्बि परिहरति,
सो वा ते नियगे पच्छा परिहरेज्जा ।

20. *Jehim vā sadchim samvasati te vā ñam egayā niyagā taṃ pūvviṃ pariharamti, so vā te ñiyage pacchā pariharejjā.*

20. Those relatives with whom he resides, take the initiative to ostracise him (if he is affected by a disease like leprosy); later on he deserts them (on the slightest pretext).

२१. नालं ते तव ताणाए वा, सरणाए वा ।
तुमं पि तेसिं नालं ताणाए वा, सरणाए वा ।

21. *Nālaṃ te tava tāṇāe vā, saraṇāe vā, tumampi tesim nālaṃ tāṇāe vā, saraṇāe vā.*

21. (Even if they do not do so out of love for you,) O man! neither are they competent to give you protection or refuge, nor are you so competent.

२२. जाणित्तु दुक्खं पत्तेयं सायं ।

22. *Jānittu dukkhaṃ patteyaṃ sāyaṃ.*

22. Realising that pleasure and pain are personal affairs,

२३. अणभिककं तं च खलु वयं संपेहाए ।

23. *Anabhikkantaṃ ca khalu vayaṃ saṃpehāe.*

23. (and) seeing that youth and strength have not yet declined (i. e. you are still young and strong), —

२४. खणं जानाहि पण्डि !

24. *Khanam jānāhi paṇḍi!*

24. O wise man! know Time.

२५. जाव सोय-पण्णाणा अपरिहीणा,
जाव नेत्त-पण्णाणा अपरिहीणा,
जाव घाण-पण्णाणा अपरिहीणा,
जाव जीह-पण्णाणा अपरिहीणा,
जाव फास-पण्णाणा अपरिहीणा ।

25. Jāva soya-panṇāṇā aparihīṇā -
Jāva netta-panṇāṇā aparihīṇā,
Jāva ghāṇa-panṇāṇā aparihīṇā,
Jāva jīha-panṇāṇā aparihīṇā,
Jāva phāsa-panṇāṇā aparihīṇā.

25. So long as the aural sense is perfect,
so long as the visual sense is perfect,
so long as the olfactory sense is perfect,
so long as the palatal sense is perfect,
so long as the tactile sense is perfect; —

२६. इच्चेतेहि विरुवरूवेहि पण्णाणेहि अपरिहीणेहि आयट्ठं सम्मं
समणुवासिज्जासि ।

—ति बेमि ।

26. Iccetehiṃ virūvarūvehiṃ paṇṇāṇehiṃ aparihīṇehiṃ
āyatthaṃ sammaṃ samaṇuvāsijjāsi.

— Tti bemi.

26. while the above senses of man are in perfect condition, one should rightly pursue the way (of self-discipline) for one's own good.

— I say so.

SECTION II

बीओ उद्देशो

Bīo Uddeso

अरति-निव्वत्तण-पदं

२७. अरइं आउट्टे से मेहावी ।

Arati-nivvattaṇa-padam

27. Araim āutte se mehāvī.

Dispelling Ennui

27. The sage is one who dispels the feeling of being sick of ascetic life.

ANNOTATION 27: Feeling of happiness in practising self-discipline and detachment from sensual pleasures result in development of the Self and bliss. The feeling of being sick in asceticism and hankering after sensuality result in degradation of the Self as well as loss of bliss. Hence, a *sādhaka* is advised to avert his mind from such feeling of sickness.

२८. खणंसि मुक्के ।

28. Khaṇamsi mukke.

28. Such a *sādhaka* becomes instantly free (from the shackles of lust).

२९. अणानाए पुट्ठा वि एगे णियट्ठंति ।

29. Aṇāṇāe puṭṭhā vi ege ṇiyattamti.

29. (In contrast to this), some *sādhakas* who are led astray (i. e. those following the path outside the Instruction), being driven by (desire), go back to the household life.

३०. मंदा मोहेण पाउडा ।

30. *Maṇḍā mohēṇa pāudā.*

30. The foolish are thickly enveloped by delusion.

३१. “अपरिगहा भविस्सामो” समुट्ठाए, लद्धे कामेहिगाहंति ।

31. "*Apariggahā bhavissāmo*" *samuṭṭhāe, laddhe kāme-higāhaṁti.*

31. Though they get initiated into asceticism (resolving that) they would lead a life of absolute non-possession, they indulge in sensuality at the first opportunity.

३२. अणाणाए मुणिणो पडिलेहंति ।

32. *Aṇāṇāe muṇiṇo paḍilehaṁti.*

32. The *sādhakas* led astray seek (sensual pleasures).

३३. एत्थ मोहे पुणो-पुणो सण्णा ।

33. *Ettha mohe puṇo-puṇo saṇṇā.*

33. Once they get enamoured of sensuality, they get bogged down in it again and again. (The more they do so the more they get attached to it and so on. And this vicious circle keeps going on.)

३४. नो हव्वाए नो पाराए ।

34. *Na havvāe no pārāe.*

34. They can neither reach this shore nor the other one.

ANNOTATIONS 31-34: The plight of an indulgent *sādhaka* is comparable to that of a thirsty elephant who once entered

a lake to quench his thirst. It got bogged down in the marshy lake. The more it tried to extricate itself from the quagmire, the more he got bogged down in it, and ultimately met with its doom. Similarly a self-indulgent *sādhaka*, who enters the marshy lake of sensuality to quench his thirst of lust, would also get embogged in the quagmire of attachment and get more and more engulfed in it, ultimately to meet with his moral death. But he may not be bold enough to give up monastic robes owing either to shame or pride or compulsion. Such a person may not be a householder by dress but would certainly not be a *muni* or an ascetic by his conduct.

३५. विमुक्का हु ते जणा, जे जणा पारगामिणो ।

35. *Vimukkā hu te jaṇā, je jaṇā pāragāmiṇo.*

35. (But) those who transcend (dissipation) get emancipated.

अणगार-पदं

३६. लोभं अलोभेण दुग्धमाणे, लद्धे कामे नाभिगाहइ ।

Aṇagāra-padam

36. *Lobham alobheṇa dugamāṇe, laddhe kāme nābhigāhai.*

The (True) Monk

36. One who defeats lust with lustlessness no more indulges in the pleasures that offer themselves.

३७. विणइत्तु लोभं निक्खम्म, एस अकम्मे जाणति-पासति ।

37. *Viṇaittu lobham nikkhamma, esa akamme jāṇati-pāsati*

37. A *sādhaka*, who renounces the world by subjugating his desires, frees himself from action (i. e. gets himself absorbed in actionless meditation or becomes

free from the veils of the *karma*) and begins to perceive and cognize things (in their true perspective).

ANNOTATIONS 36-37. To defeat lust with lustlessness is the principle based on creating opposite force. Just as anger is destroyed by tranquility, conceit by humility, and deceit by guilelessness, so also lust is overcome by lustlessness. Just as fasting acts as a remedy for the person afflicted by fever, so also forswearing of lust acts as a remedy for one who is afflicted with the disease of "discontentment" —

*Yathāhāraparityāgaḥ, jvaratasyausadham tathā /
Lobhasyaivam parityāgaḥ, asaṃtosasya bhaiṣajam*॥

Sometimes it happens that some persons get initiated into asceticism without giving up 'lust'. But if they try to conquer lust with lustlessness, they are true *sādhakas*. Those who are initiated into asceticism without lust, become cogniser and perceiver like Bharat, the sovereign king, through meditation by removing the veils of *karma*, obstructing knowledge and perception.

३८. पडिलेहाए नावकंखति ।

38. Padilehāe nāvakaṃkhati.

38. He who discerns (what is beneficial to him and what is detrimental) does not long for (sensuality).

३९. एस अणगारेसि पवुक्खति ।

39. Esa aṇagāretti pavuccati.

39. He (who is not desirous of any worldly pleasures) is called an *aṇagara* (i. e. a monk who has renounced household life).

बंद-समादान-पदं

४०. अहो य राओ य परितप्पमाणे, कालाकालसमुद्गाई,
संजोगट्ठी अट्टालोमी, आलुंये सहसक्कारे,
विणिविट्ठचित्ते, एत्थ सत्थे पुणो-पुणो ।

Daṁḍa-samādāṇa-padam

40. *Aho ya rāo ya paritappamāṇe kālākālasamuṭṭhāi,
saṁjogatthi atthillobhi, ālumbe sahasakkāre,
Vinivittḥacitte, ettha satthe buno buno.*

Use of Violence

40. (A stupefied person) lives constantly tormented (by avidity); he endeavours (to amass wealth) in season and out of season; being desirous of sensual pleasures, he is avid for money, (so much so that) he becomes out and out a rogue committing theft or robbery. His mind is always engrossed in (amassing wealth). (Such) a man repeatedly becomes a killer (lit. weapon) (of living beings).
४१. से आय-बले, से णाइ-बले, से मित्त-बले, से पेच्च-बले, से देव-
बले, से राय-बले, से चोर-बले, से अतिहि-बले, से किवण-बले,
से समण-बले ।
41. *Se āya-bale, se ṇāi-bale, se mitta-bale, se pecca bale,
se deva-bale, se rāya-bale, se cora-bale, se atihi-bale,
se kivaṇa-bale, se samaṇa-bale.*
41. He (amasses) physical power, power of kith and kin, power of allies, supra-mundane-power, deity-power, royal-power, thief-power, guest-power, pauper-power, *śramaṇa*-power (ascetic power).

ANNOTATION 41: There are certain sources of power. By acquiring them a man wishes to achieve such things as enjoyment, happiness, victory, wealth, fame and religion.

- (1) *Physical strength:* For gaining bodily strength, one drinks wine and eats meat.
- (2) *Power of kith and kin:* In order to remain undefeated, one seeks power of one's kith and kin.

- (3) *Ally power*: For acquiring wealth and mental peace, one seeks power of his friends.
- (4) & (5) *Supra-mundane power, Deity-Power*: In order to secure happiness in the next life and to use deity-power, one propitiates deities by performing sacrifice, etc.
- (6) *Royal power*: In order to earn his livelihood, one serves the king.
- (7) *Thief-power*: In order to get a share in theft, one befriends thieves.
- (8), (9) & (10): *Guest-Power, Pauper-Power, Śramaṇa-Power*: Aspiring for wealth, fame and merit, one entertains guests, gives alms to the crippled paupers and ascetics.

४२. इच्छेतेहि विरुवरुवेहि कज्जेहि दंड-समायाणं ।

42. Iccetehim virūvarūvehim kajjehim daṇḍa-samāyaṇaṁ.

42. (To accomplish) these various tasks, he uses violence.

४३. सपेहाए भया कज्जति ।

43. Sapehāe bhayā kajjati.

43. Some person (uses violence) of his own accord and some other person (does so) out of fear.

४४. पाव-मोक्खोत्ति मण्णमाणे ।

44. Pāva-mokkhotti maṇṇamāṇe.

44. Considering (that performance of sacrifices results in) atonement of his sins, some person takes recourse to violence.

४५. अदुवा आसंसाए ।

45. Aduvā āsaṃsāe.

45. Or some other (commits violence) in the hope (of obtaining the unobtained).

हिंसाविवेग-पदं

४६. तं परिणाय मेहावी णेव सयं एएहि कज्जेहि दंडं समारभेज्जा,
णेवणं एएहि कज्जेहि दंडं समारभावेज्जा, णेवणं एएहि
कज्जेहि दंडं समारभंतं समणुजाणेज्जा ।

Himsāvivega-padam

46. *Taṃ parinnāya mehāvi* neva sayam eehim kajjehim
daṇḍam samārambhejjā, nevaṇṇam eehim kajjehim
daṇḍam samārambhāvejjā, nevaṇṇam eehim kajjehim
daṇḍam samārambhamntam samañujāṇejjā.

Forswearing of Violence

46. Having comprehended this, a wise man ought not to indulge himself in violence for the aforesaid motives, nor should he cause others to do so, nor should he approve of such indulgence.

अणासत्ति-पदं

४७. एस मग्गे आरिएहि पवेइए ।

Aṇāsatti-padam

47. Esa magge āriehim paveie.

Unattachment

47. The *Tīrthaṅkaras* have expounded this path (leading to the conquest of one's inner-world), --

४८. जहेत्थ कुसले णोवलिपिज्जासि ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

48. Jahettha kusale novaliṃpijjāsi.

— Tti bemi

48. so that no person adept (in the path of asceticism),
gets attachment to these (carnal pleasures).

— I say so.

SECTION III

तइओ उद्देसो

Taio Uddeso

समत्त-पदं

४९. से असइं उच्चागोए, असइं णियागोए ।
 णो हीणे, णो अइरित्ते, णो पीहए ।

Samatta padam

49. Se asaim uccāgoe, asaim ñiyāgoe.
 No hīṇe, no airitte, no pīhae.

Equality

49. This soul has many a time taken birth in higher clans (or castes) as well as in lower ones. Therefore, no being is low or high. (Hence, one should not crave for a higher clan).

५०. इति संखाय के गोयावादी ? के माणावादी ? कंसि वा एगे
 गिज्जे ?

50. Iti saṃkhāya ke goyāvādī? ke māṇāvādī?
 kaṃsi vā ege gijjhe?

50. In the wake of the knowledge (that this soul has many a time taken birth in higher clans as well as in lower ones), who will believe in the dogma of casteism, or egotism? Or who will hanker after a particular rank?

५१. तम्हा पंडिए णो हरिसे, णो कुज्जे ।

51. Tamhā paṁḍie ṇo harise, ṇo kujjhe.

51. Therefore, a wise man should not feel exalted (on taking birth in a higher clan) nor should he feel piqued (on taking birth in a lower clan).

५२. भूएहि जाण पडिलेह सात ।

52. *Bhūehim jāṇa paḍileha sātaṁ.*

52. Know (the bondage and consequences of *karma* experienced) by beings and see their happiness (and sufferings)¹.

५३. समिते एयाणुपस्सी ।

53. *Samite eyāṇupassi.*

53. One with the right perception realises these (consequences of good and evil *karmas*).

५४. तं जहा-अंधत्तं बहिरत्तं मूयत्तं काणत्तं कुट्तं खुजत्तं वडभत्तं
सामत्तं सबलत्तं ।

54. Tam jahā-amdhattam bahirattam mūyattam kāṇattam kuṇṭattam khujjattam vaḍabhattam sāmattam sabalattam.

54. Such as blindness, deafness, dumbness, one-eyedness, lameness, hunch-backedness, dwarfishness, leprosy and variegatedness.

५५. सहपमाणं अणेगरूवाओ जोणीओ संधाति, विरूवरूवे फासे
पडिसंवेदेइ ।

55. Sahapamaṇaṁ aṇegarūvāo joṇīo saṁdhāti, virūva-rūve paḍisaṁvedei.

55. Owing to his own infatuation, one gets born in different genera and suffers from onslaughts of various kinds.

1. Cf. 3/27.

५६. से अबुज्जमाणे हतोवहते जाइ-मरणं अणुपरियट्टमाणे ।

56. Se abujjhamāne hatovahate jāi-maraṇam anupari-yattamāne.

56. He (i. e. the infatuated person), not knowing the consequence of good and evil *karmas*, is afflicted (with disease) and feels hurt (by affronts). (Nevertheless) he (due to his egotism piles up *karmas*) and undergoes births and deaths again and again.

परिग्गह-तद्दोस-पदं

५७. जीवियं पुढो पियं इहमेगेसि माणवाणं, खेत्त-वत्थु ममायमाणाणं ।

Pariggaha -laddosa -padaṃ

57. Jīviyaṃ pudho piyaṃ ihamegesim māṇavāṇaṃ khetta-vatthu mamaṃyamaṇāṇaṃ.

Acquisitiveness and its Evils

57. Attached to (their) land and home, some (unenlightened) persons love (to lead) a highly (prosperous) life.

५८. आरतं विरत्तं मणिकुंडलं सह हिरण्णेण, इत्थियाओ परिगिज्ज
तत्थेव रत्ता ।

58. Āratam virattam maṇikuṇḍalam saha hiraṇṇeṇa, itthiyāo parigijjha tattheva rattā.

58. They accumulate colourful precious stones, earrings, gold and (beautiful) women and get infatuated by them.

५९. ण एत्थ तवो वा, दमो वा, णियमो वा दिस्सति ।

59. Na ettha tavo vā, damo vā, niyamo vā dissati.

59. Austerity, or the curbing of passions, or self-control is not seen in an acquisitive person.

६०. संपुण्णं बाले जीविउकामे लालप्पमाणे मूढे विप्परियासुवेइ ।

60. Sanipunnāṃ bāle jīviukāme lālappamāṇe mūdhe vippariyāsuvei.

60. The ignorant one craves for a life of (luxury) and repeatedly hankers¹ after pleasures). (Haunted by his own desires) he gets benumbed and is rewarded by the converse i. e. though he desires pleasures, he is rewarded with sufferings only².

६१. इणमेव णावकंखंति, जे जणा धुवचारिणो ।

जाती-मरणं परिणाय, खरे संकमणे दहे ॥

61. *Imameva nāvakaṃkhamti, je jaṇā dhuvacārino. Jāti-marāṇaṃ parināya, care saṃkamane dadhe.*

61. Those who are progressing towards salvation do not long for leading such (a self-contradictory life). Comprehending births and deaths (of those who lead such a self-contradictory life), they should unwaveringly tread' on the Bridge of Salvation.

६२. नत्थि कालस्स णागमो ।

62. Natthi kālassa ṇāgamo.

62. For death no moment is inopportune — (it can occur at any moment).

६३. सब्बे पाणा पियाउया सुहसाया दुक्खपडिकूला अप्पियवहा
पियजीविणो जीविउकामा ।

63. *Savve pāṇā piyāuyā suhasāyā dukkhapaḍikūlā appiyavahā piyajīvino jīviukāmā.*

63. All beings love life. They wish to relish pleasures. They loathe pain. They abhor being killed — they are attached to this mortal coil. They want to hang on to life.

1. See 2/51 foot note.

2. Cf. 2/150.

ANNOTATION 63: The truth that "Happiness is loved and sufferings loathed" has been discussed here in the context of acquisitiveness. One who amasses wealth endeavours to get rid of his miseries and acquire happiness. While doing so, he does not care if he ruins the happiness of others. He forgets the fact that just as he likes happiness and loathes sufferings, others also do so. In the field of commerce and trade, dishonesty and exploitation practised in society are nothing but the results of losing sight of the above fact. Bhagavān Mahāvīra has repeatedly stressed this point and admonished that conduct should be based on the precept of self-equality.

६४. सव्वेसि जीवियं पियं ।

64. *Savvesim jīviyaṃ piyaṃ.*

64. Life is dear to all beings.

६५. तं परिगिज्झ दुपयं चउप्पयं अभिजुंजियाणं ससिचियाणं तिविहेणं
जा वि से तत्थ मत्ता भवइ—अप्पा वा बहुगा वा ।

65. *Taṃ parigijjha dupayaṃ cauppayāṃ abhijumjīyāṇaṃ samsimciyāṇaṃ tivihenaṃ jā vi se tattha mattā bhavai—appā vā bahugā vā.*

65. In order that he may live, man owns and employs bipeds (servants) and quadrupeds (animals). Through these he multiplies (his) wealth. Through threefold efforts (i. e. his own, that of others, and of both), a little or great amount of wealth comes in his possession.

६६. से तत्थ गढिहं चिट्ठइ, भोयणाए ।

66. *Se tattha gaḍhie ciṭṭhai, bhoyaṇāe.*

66. He remains attached to that wealth and (protects it) for the enjoyment of sensual pleasures.

६७. तओ से एगया विपरिसिट्ठं सम्भूयं महोवगणं भवइ ।

67. *Tao se egaṃ viparisitṭhaṃ sambhūyaṃ mahovaganaṃ bhavai.*

67. Abundant wealth, left over after his enjoyment provides him with ample luxuries.

६८. तं पि से एगया दायाया विभयन्ति, अदत्तहारो वा से अवहरति,
रायाणो वा से विलुपन्ति, णस्सति वा से, विणस्सति वा से,
अगारदाहेण वा से डञ्जइ ।

68. Tam pi se egayā dāyāyā vibhayaṇti, adattahāro vā se avaharati, rāyāṇo vā se vilumparanti, ṇassati vā se, vinnassati vā se, agāradāheṇa vā se cajjhai.

68. There comes a time when heirs share that (huge amount of wealth and property which he had earned and saved for himself); or the thieves deprive him of it; or the king takes it away from him; or it gets destroyed or razed; or it is reduced to ashes (in case of his house catching fire).

६९. इति से परस्स अट्ठाए कूराइं कम्माइं वाले पकुव्वमाणे तेण
दुक्खेण मूढे विप्परियासुवेइ ।

69. Iti se parassa atthāe kūrāim kammāim bāle pakuvvamāṇe teṇa dukkheṇa mūḍhe vippariyāsuvei.

69. Thus an ignorant man indulging in atrocities for the sake of others (i. e. his heirs, etc.) (earns grief). Benumbed by griefs he becomes a victim of paradoxes i. e. he desires pleasures, but is rewarded with sufferings.

ANNOTATION 69. Just as the fruit of the mango is called mango, the seed of the mango is also called mango. Similarly, just as adverse feelings are called sufferings, the *karmas* which are the cause of such adverse circumstances are also called sufferings. Those philosophers who see no chain relationship between cause and effect can never eradicate the root cause of unhappiness. Consequently it perpetually recurs resulting in stupification.

७०. मुणिणा हु एयं पवेइयं ।

70. Muṇiṇā hu eyam paveiyam.

70. The *Muṇi* (Bhagavān Mahāvīra) has said so.

ANNOTATION 70. One who perpetrates atrocities is stupefied and one who is stupefied becomes a victim of paradoxes — this is the chain of cause and effect.

૭૧. અળોહંતરા એતે, નો ય ઓહં તરિત્તે ।
 અતીરંગમા એતે, નો ય તીરં ગમિત્તે ।
 અપારંગમા એતે, નો ય પારં ગમિત્તે ॥

71. *Anohamtarā ete, no ya oham tarittae.*
Atīraṅgamā ete, no ya tīraṅ gamittae.
Apāraṅgamā ete, no ya pāraṅ gamittae.

71. Such people (victims of paradox) do not swim across rapids of recurrent transmigration, nor are they capable of swimming across rapids of recurrent transmigration.

They do not reach banks, nor are they capable of reaching the banks.

They do not cross the rapids, nor are they capable of crossing the rapids.

૭૨. આયાણિજ્ઞં ચ આયાય, તમ્મિ ઠાણે ચ ચિટ્ઠહ ।
 વિત્તહં પપ્પ ક્ષેયણ્ણે, તમ્મિ ઠાણમ્મિ ચિટ્ઠહ ॥

72. *Āyāṇiḥḥam ca āyāya, tammi thāṇe na ciṭṭhai.*
Vitaham pappā kheyannaṇṇe, tammi thāṇammi ciṭṭhai.

72. One who has no knowledge of the Soul, though initiated in the path of Truth, does not adhere to it. (On the contrary), initiated in the path of un-truth, he sticks to it.

૭૩. ઉદ્દેસો પાસગસ્સ નત્થિ ।

73. Uddeso pāsagassa natthi.

73. A seer needs no guidance.

७४. बाले पुण णिहे कामसमणुण्णे असमियदुक्खे दुक्खी दुक्खाणमेव
आवट्ठं अणुपरियट्ठइ ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

74. Bāle puṇa ṇihe kāmasamaṇuṇṇe asamiyadukkhe
dukkhī dukkhāṇameva āvaṭṭaṃ aṇupariyaṭṭai.

— Tti bemi

74. The benighted one is incompetent to assuage sufferings, because he is attached to desires and is lecherous. Oppressed (by physical and mental pain), he keeps rotating in the whirl-pool of agony.

— I say so.

SECTION IV

चउत्थो उद्देसो

Cauttho Uddeso

भोग-भोगि-दोस-पदं

७५. तओ से एगया रोग-समुप्पाया समुप्पज्जंति ।

Bhoga-bhogi-dosa-padam

75. Tao se egayā roga-samuppāyā samuppajjanti.

Evils of Sensuality and Self-indulgent Persons

75. Even after (the accumulation of wealth,) sometime (during the period of enjoyment) man falls a victim to various diseases. (So even during the period of his affluence, he cannot enjoy the pleasures of splendour).

७६. जेहि वा सद्धि संबसति ते वा णं एगया णियया पुब्बिं परिवयंति,
सो वा ते णियगे पच्छा परिवएज्जा ।

76. Jehim vā saddhim samvasati te vā ṇaṃ egayā ṇiyayā puvvīm parivayaṃti, so vā te ṇiyage pacchā parivaejjā.

76. Those relatives with whom he resides take the initiative to ostracise him (if he is affected by a disease like leprosy), later on he deserts them (on the slightest pretext).

७७. नालं ते तव ताणाए वा, सरणाए वा ।
तुमं पि तेसि नालं ताणाए वा, सरणाए वा ।

77. *Nālaṃ te tava tāṇāe vā, saraṇāe vā,
tumaṃpi tesim nālaṃ tāṇāe vā, saraṇāe vā.*

77. (Even if they do not do so out of love for you,) o man!
neither are they competent to give you protection or
refuge, nor are you so competent.

७८. जाणित्तु दुक्खं पत्तेयं सायं ।

78. *Jāṇittu dukkham patteyaṃ sāyaṃ.*

78. Realising that pleasure and pain are personal affairs,
(one should subjugate his mind and senses).

७९. भोगामेव अनुसोयंति ।

79. *Bhogāmeva anusoyanti.*

79. (Persons who have no control over their senses)
continuously go on thinking of fulfilment of desires.

८०. इहमेगसि माणवानं ।

80. *Ihamegesim mānavāṇaṃ.*

80. Only those (who are not aware of the consequences
of indulging in sensuality) do so.

८१. तिविहेण जावि से तत्थ मत्ता भवइ—अप्पा वा बहुगा वा ।

81. *Tivihena jāvi se tattha mattā bhavai—appā vā bahugā
vā.*

81. Through threefold efforts (i. e. his own, that of others
and of both), a little or great amount of wealth comes
in his possession.

८२. से तत्थ गडिह चिट्ठति, भोयणाए ।

82. *Se tattha gaḍhih ciṭṭhati, bhoyaṇāe.*

82. He remains attached to that wealth and (protects it)
for the enjoyment of sensual pleasures.

८३. ततो से एगया विपरिसिट्ठं संभूयं महोवगरणं भवति ।

83. Tato se egayā viparisitṭhaṁ saṁbhūyaṁ mahovagaranam bhavati.

83. Abundant wealth, left over after his enjoyment, provides him with ample luxuries.

८४. तं पि से एगया दायाया विभयति, अदत्तहारो वा से अवहरति,
रायाणो वा से विलुपति, णस्सइ वा से, विणस्सइ वा से,
अगारडाहेण वा डज्जइ ।

84. Taṁ pi se egayā dāyāyā vibhayaṁti, adattahāro vā se avaharati, rāyaṇo vā se viluṇṇapaṁti, ṇassai vā se, viṇassai vā se, agāradāheṇa vā dajjhai.

84. There comes a time when heirs share that (huge amount of wealth and property which he had earned and saved for himself); or the thieves deprive him of it; or the king takes it away from him or it gets destroyed or razed; or it is reduced to ashes (in case of his house catching fire.)

८५. इति से परस्स अट्ठाए कूराइं कम्मइं बाले पकुव्वमाणे तेण
दुक्खेण मूढे विप्परियासुवेइ ।

85. Iti se parassa aṭṭhāe kūrāiṁ kammāiṁ bāle pakkuvva-māṇe teṇa dukkheṇa mūḍhe vippariyāsuvei.

85. Thus an ignorant man, indulging in atrocities for the sake of others (i.e. his heirs, etc.), (earns grief.) Benumbed by griefs he becomes a victim of paradoxes i.e. he desires pleasures, but is rewarded with sufferings.

८६. आसं च छंदं च विगिच्च धीरे ।

86. Āsaṁ ca chaṇḍaṁ ca vigicca dhīre.

86. O Serene One! Abandon lust and servility to desire.

८७. तुमं चेव तं सल्लमाहट्ठु ।

87. Tumaṃ ceva taṃ sallamāhaṭṭu.

87. (O man!) it is you who has implanted (in your own heart) this thorn (of lust and servility to desire).

८८. जेण सिया तेण णो सिया ।

88. Jeṇa siyā teṇa ṇo siyā.

88. That which brings happiness may even fail to do so.

८९. इणमेव नावबुज्झंति, जे जणा मोहपाउडा ।

89. Iṇameva navabujjhaṃti, je jaṇā mohapāuḍā.

89. Completely engulfed by delusion, people cannot comprehend this (fact i. e. paradoxical nature of the means of material happiness).

९०. थिभि लोए पव्वहिए ।

90. Thibhi loe pavvahie.

90. This world has been vanquished by the fair sex.

९१. ते भो वयंति—एयाइं आयतणाइं ।

91. Te bho vayaṃti—eyāim āyataṇāim.

91. O man! those (who are vanquished by women) say that they (women) are dens (of pleasure).

९२. से दुक्खाए मोहाए माराए नरगाए नरग-तिरिक्खाए ।

92. Se dukkhāe mohāe mārāe ṇaragāe ṇaraga-tirikkhāe.

92. (Man's subservience to sensual pleasures engenders) misery, delusion, death, hell and post-infernal sub-human life for him.

९३. सततं भूढे धम्मं नाभिजाणइ ।

93. Satatam mūḍhe dhammam nābhijānai.

93. One who is perpetually infatuated cannot comprehend righteousness.

९४. उदाहु वीरे—अप्पमादो महामोहे ।

94. Udāhu vīre—*appamādo mahāmohe*.

94. Bhagavān Mahāvīra said, ("A *sādhaka*) should be vigilant against incontinence."

९५. अलं कुसलस्स पमाएणं ।

95. Alam kusalassa pamāṇaṁ.

95. A wise man has nothing more to do with infatuation.

९६. संति-मरणं संपेहाए, भेउरधम्मं संपेहाए ।

96. Saṁti-maraṇaṁ saṁpehāe, bheuraḍhammaṁ saṁpehāe.

96. "(Infatuation) is (nothing but) death and (lack of it) is serenity." — (How can) one who perceives this (indulge in wanton behaviour?) (How can) one who observes that (the human frame) is fragile (indulge in wanton behaviour?).

९७. नालं पास ।

97. Nālaṁ pāsa.

97. (O man!) realize that (these sensual pleasures) cannot (quench the flames of discontentment).

९८. अलं ते एएहिं ।

98. Alam te eehiṁ.

98. What use are these (pleasures which fan the flames of discontentment) to you?

९९. एयं पास मुणी ! महभयं ।

99. Eyaṁ pāsa muṇī ! mahabbhayaṁ.

99. O ascetic! realise, these pleasures are perilous.

१००. नाइवाएज्ज कंचणं ।

100. *Ñāivāejja kaṁcaṇaṁ.*

100. One must not deprive any being of its life.

ANNOTATION 100. Self-indulgence and violence have close correspondence. There hardly exists a voluptuous person who could indulge in sensual pleasures without resorting to violence. However, where there is violence, there may or may not be enjoyment. But, self-indulgence is invariably associated with violence. That is why, one of the most valuable sermons in the context of liberation from self-indulgence is that on non-violence.

१०१. एस वीरे पसंसिए, जे न णिविज्जति आदाणाए ।

101. *Esa vīre pasaṁsie, je na ñivijjati ādāṇāe.*

101. Praiseworthy is the dauntless one, who does not get fed up with self-disciplined life.

१०२. न मे देति न कुप्पिज्जा, थोवं लद्धुं न खिसिए ।

पडिसेहियो परिणमिज्जा ।

102. *Na me deti na kuppijjā, thovaṁ laddhum na khimsae. Paḍisehio pariṇamijjā.*

102. (Thinking that) "he is not giving alms to me", (a monk) should not frown upon a person, nor should he criticise him on not receiving enough. If the owner of the house refuses, he should immediately leave.

ANNOTATION 102. Food is essential for sustaining of life. The monk obtains his food from householders. Taking food can become both indulgence and renunciation depending on whether it has been obtained and consumed with feelings of attachment or aversion or without such feelings. The *muni* practising self-discipline or renunciation should not, at the time of obtaining food, behave in an agitated manner.

He should not frown upon nor should he criticize the donor.
He should remain calm and equanimous.

१०३. एयं मोणं समणुवासेज्जासि ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

103. Eyaṃ moṇaṃ samaṇuvāsejjāsi.

— Tti bemi.

103. An ascetic should meticulously put into practice this knowledge¹.

— I say so.

1. The word *muṇi* denotes one who has attained knowledge.
Hence, the word *moṇa* would stand for 'knowledge'.

SECTION V

पंचमो उद्देशो

Pañcamo Uddeso

आहारस्स अणासत्ति-पदं

१०४. जमिणं विरूवरूवेहि सत्थेहि लोगस्स कम्म-समारंभा कज्जंति
तं जहा—अप्पणो से पुत्ताणं धूयाणं सुण्हाणं णातीणं धातीणं
राईणं दासाणं दासीणं कम्मकराणं कम्मकरीणं आएसाए, पुढो
पहेणाए, सामासाए, पायरासाए ।

Āhārassa aṇāsatti-padam

104. Jamiṇaṁ virūvarūvehi satthehi logassa kamma-samāraṁbhā kajjanti taṁ jahā — appaṇo se puttāṇaṁ dhūyāṇaṁ suṇhāṇaṁ ṇātīṇaṁ dhatīṇaṁ rāīṇaṁ dāsāṇaṁ dāsīṇaṁ kammakarāṇaṁ kammakārīṇaṁ āesaē, puḍho paheṇāē, sāmāsāē, pāyaraśāē.

Non-attachment to Food

104. Householders employing various kinds of weapons indulge in actions (of violence) causing the influx of *karma* particles for the sake of their bodies, their sons and daughters, daughters-in-law, relatives, maids, kings, slaves (both male and female), servants and maid-servants, guests, various sorts of gifts, lunch and dinner.

१०५. सन्निहि-सन्निकओ कज्जइ इहमेगेसि माणवाणं भोयणाए ।

105. Sannihi-sannicao kajjai ehamegesim māṇavāṇaṁ bhoyaṇāē.

105. They stock (dairy products) and hoard (food supplies) for entertaining some householders (like their friends and relatives)¹.

१०६. समुट्ठिए अणगारे आरिए आरियपण्णे आरियदंसी 'अयं संधी'ति
अदक्खु ।

106. Samuṭṭhie aṇagāre ārie āriyapaṇṇe āriyadaṁsī 'ayaṁ saṁdhī' ti adakkhu.

106. Realising that it is meal time, a monk who is noble, of noble intellect, of noble perception and diligent in self-discipline, should go out for begging food.

१०७. से णाइए, णाइआवए, ण समणुजाणइ ।

107. Se ṇāie, ṇāiāvae, ṇa samaṇujāṇai.

107. He should neither himself accept (things which are taboo) for him, nor cause other people to do so, nor approve of those who do so.

१०८. सव्वामगंघं परिण्णाय, निरामगंधो परिव्वए ।

108. Savvāmagaṁdhaṁ parinṇāya, nīrāmagaṁdho parivvāe.

108. He should avoid all food which is not permissible. Confining himself only to the permissible kind of food, he should lead a self-disciplined life.

१०९. अविस्समाणे कय-विक्कएसु । से ण किणे, ण किणावए, किणंतं
ण समणुजाणइ ।

109. Adissamāṇe kaya-vikkaesu. Se ṇa kiṇe, ṇa kiṇāvae, kiṇaṁtaṁ ṇa samaṇujāṇai.

109. He should not engage himself in buying and selling — he should neither himself buy nor cause to do so nor approve of other doing so.

1. Cf. 2/18

११०. से भिक्षू कालण्णे बलण्णे मायण्णे खेयण्णे खणयण्णे विणयण्णे
समयण्णे भावण्णे, परिग्गहं अममायमाणे, कालेणुद्दाई,
अपडिण्णे ।

110. Se bhikkhū kālaṇṇe balaṇṇe māyaṇṇe kheyāṇṇe khaṇa-
yaṇṇe viṇayaṇṇe samayaṇṇe bhāvaṇṇe, pariggahaṃ
amamāyamāṇe, kāleṇuṭṭhāi apaḍiṇṇe.

110. A monk should possess wisdom in respect of —
The (right) time (for begging food),
the physical strength (for wandering about for begging
alms),
the measure (of warranted food),
the region (apt for begging food from),
the opportune moment (for begging food),
the code of conduct (the manner of begging food),
the Doctrines (laid down in the scriptures),
the intensions of the giver (i. e. whether he likes or
dislikes giving food).
He should have no attachment to possessions.
He should carry out religious duties at the right mo-
ment and should be free from likes and dislikes for
particular kinds of food.

१११. दुहवो चेट्ता नियाइ ।

111. Duhao chettā niyāi.

111. He (leads a disciplined life) after having broken the
(shackles of attachment and aversion).

११२. वत्थं पडिग्गहं, कंबलं पायपुंछणं, उग्गहं च काड्ढासणं ।
एतेसु खेव जाएज्जा ।

112. Vatthaṃ paḍiggahaṃ, kambalaṃ pāyapum̐cchaṇaṃ,
uggahaṃ ca kaḍḍasaṇaṃ. Etesu ceva jāejjā.

112. He should beg only for such articles as clothes,
bowls, blankets, flapper (or broom), room and straw-
mats which have been made for the householders.

११३. लद्धे आहारे अणगारे मायं जाणेज्जा, से जहेयं भगवया पवेइयं ।

113. *Laddhe āhāre aṇagāre māyaṃ jāṇejjā, se jaheyaṃ bhagavayā paveiyaṃ.*

113. At the time of receiving food, a monk should know the right quantum that Bhagavān Mahāvīra has prescribed.

ANNOTATION 113. It is not possible to lay down the exact quantum of food. It depends upon one's appetite. Neither do all persons have the same appetite nor do they take the same quantum of food. Even then, Bhagavān Mahāvīra has indicated the average quantum of food as thirty-two morsels and has admonished the monks to take a little less than that.

११४. लाभो ति न मज्जेज्जा ।

114. *Lābho tti na majjejjā.*

114. On gaining the desired object (food, etc.), he should not feel elated.

११५. अलाभो ति न सोयए ।

115. *Alābho tti ṇa soyaē.*

115. On not receiving the desired object, he should not feel dejected.

११६. बहुं पि लद्धुं न निहे ।

116. *Baḥuṃ pi laddhuṃ ṇa ṇihe.*

116. In case of obtaining anything in excess, he should not hoard it up.

११७. परिग्गहाओ अप्पाणं अवसक्केज्जा ।

117. *Fariggahāo appāṇaṃ avasakkejjā.*

117. He should abstain from acquisitiveness.

ANNOTATION 117. Even while acquiring food, clothing etc. the monk should abstain from acquisitiveness. The thought "I will use this food and clothing for myself only and will not share it with others," is also acquisitiveness. "This, what I have obtained, does not belong to me, but belongs to the Preceptor and to the order" — thinking thus, he should avoid falling a prey to acquisitiveness. Not to take unacceptable food, clothing etc., not to get attached to and not to hoard acceptable food, clothing etc. duly obtained — all these are necessary to cultivate non-acquisitiveness.

Even for leading an ascetic life certain minimum utilities are necessary. They have to be obtained. Even then, he should keep in mind that just as a voyager does not get attached to a boat which is essential to him for crossing the sea, so also a monk should not become attached to the utilities which otherwise are necessary merely for sustaining life.

११८. अण्णहा णं पासए परिहरेज्जा ।

118. Aṇṇahā ṇaṃ pāsae pariharejjā.

118. A seer (of reality) should consume (things) in a manner different (from that of a layman).

ANNOTATION 118. Things are either consumed or renounced. In practice, however, renunciation has certain limits. To keep body and soul together, one has to use and consume things. A seer of reality uses and consumes them, so does a common man. But there is a world of difference between their objects, feelings and the ways in which they utilise and consume them:

	Object	Feeling	Way
Common man	Material pleasure	of attachment	non-disciplined
Seer	Sustaining the body for spiritual development	of non-attachment	self-disciplined

११९. एस मग्गे आरिएहि पवेइए ।

119. Esa magge āriehiṃ paveie.

119. This truth (the path of non-attachment) has been prescribed by the *Tīrthāṅkarās* .—

१२०. जहेत्थ कुसले णोवल्लिपिज्जासि त्ति बेमि ।

120. Jahettha kusale ṇovalimpijjāsi tti bemi.

120. lest the adept should become deeply attached to it (i. e. acquisitiveness).

काम-अनासत्ति-पदं

१२१. कामा दुरतिक्कमा ।

Kāma -aṇāsatti -padaṁ

121. Kāmā duratikkamā.

Non-attachment to Desire

121. It is a Herculean task to transcend desire.

१२२. जीवियं दुप्पडिवहणं ।

122. Jīviyaṁ duppaḍivahaṇaṁ.

122. Life cannot be prolonged — (the thread of life, once severed, cannot be retied).

१२३. कामकामी खलु अयं पुरिसे ।

123. Kāmakāmī khalu ayaṁ purise.

123. (Nevertheless) man is a sensualist — he craves for sensual pleasures.

१२४. से सोयति जूरति तिप्पति पिड्ढति परितप्पति ।

124. Se soyati jūrati tippati piḍḍati paritappati.

124. (Non-fulfilment of desire) cause a sensualist to grieve, (on not gaining objects of his desires or on separation from the loved ones,) he gets emaciated, sheds tears, and experiences pain and remorse.

१२५. आयतचक्षू लोग-विपस्सी लोगस्स अहो भागं जाणइ, उड्ढं
भागं जाणइ, तिरियं भागं जाणइ ।

125. *Āyatacakkhū loga-vipassī logassa aho bhāgaṃ jāṇai*
udḍham bhāgaṃ jāṇai, tiriyaṃ bhāgaṃ jāṇai.

125. A person with 'wide-open eyes' meditates on the *loka* (universe): He knows the lower portion, upper portion and middle portion of the *loka* (world).

ANNOTATION 125: The first medium of disinfecting the mind from voluptuousness is the meditation on *loka* (universe):

(1) The term *loka* (universe) means objects of pleasure. One such object is the body. Therefore, the term *loka* here stands for 'body'. It has three sections, viz.

- (a) The lower one — below the navel;
- (b) The upper one — above the navel;
- (c) The middle one — the navel itself.

Put in another way, these are:

- (a) The lower one -- the socket of the eyes, thyroid cartilage, the middle of the face (cheekbones).
- (b) The upper one -- knees, chest, forehead; these are the protruding parts.
- (c) The middle one — the plain region.

A *sādhaka* should visualise that there are outlets everywhere viz. in the lower, the upper and the middle sections, (see, 4/118).

The meditational technique of visualising the body in its totality has been very significant. The present *sūtra* is a pointer to it. The reader is referred to the sixth chapter of the *Viśuddhimagga*, part I, pp. 160-75.

Bhagavān Mahāvīra used to go in trance by meditating upon the upper, lower, and middle worlds (vide, Āyāro, 9/4/14).

Three methods of meditation are indicated by this, viz.

- (1) Concentration of perception on the vault of Heaven.
- (2) Fixing the eyes on the vertical or slanting wall.
- (3) Concentration of perception on the interior of the earth.

Through the above three methods of meditation, Bhagavān Mahāvīra contemplated over the corresponding elements present in the three worlds respectively.

Thus, contemplation of the world has been prescribed as a medium of meditation.

Concentration of the mind on the objects present in the upper, lower and the middle world is the medium through which enthusiasm, boldness and perseverance are respectively nourished. (Cf. *Namaskāra Svādhyāya*, p. 249).

- (4) The second interpretation of the *Sūtra* is: a farsighted *sādhaka* notices that the lower world is afflicted with misery owing to attachments to sexual pleasure. So are the upper and the middle worlds.
- (5) The third interpretation of this aphorism is as follows:

Bhagavān Mahāvīra used to go in trance by meditating.

A *sādhaka* with vision knows full well the thought processes contributory to the elevation, degradation and medi-
alization.

- (6) The fourth interpretation can be in terms of *trāṭaka*. Concentrating on a point with dilated and unblinking eyes is called *trāṭaka*. By accomplishment of

this *sāḍhanā* (of *trāṭaka*) one can perceive all the three worlds viz. upper, lower and middle.

१२६. गढिए अणुपरियट्टमाणे ।

126. Gaḍhie anupariyattamāṇe.

126. A lascivious person is caught into the vicious circle of the objects of desire.

ANNOTATION 126: Comprehension of the endless recurrence of sensuality is the second buttress of emancipation of the mind from lust.

The enjoyment of sex can never appease the desire for it. That is why an amorous person keeps dodging it. The only way to alleviate desire is desirelessness (temperance). One who is conversant with the principle of the endless recurrence of cupidity is awakened to the realization that lust enslaves. And ultimately, he is redeemed of it.

१२७. संधि विदित्ता इह मच्चिएहि ।

127. Saṁdhiṁ vidittā iha macciehim.

127. Comprehending the joints of mortal human (body), (one should liberate oneself from attachment to desire).

ANNOTATION 127: The third means of banishing sensuality from the mind is the perception of the joints of the body. This means to realize that the body is mortal and just a conglomeration of various joints. The body is believed to have a hundred and eighty joints in all, out of which fourteen are called "great joints". These are: three joints in the right hand — shoulder, elbow and wrist, three in the left hand, three on the right side below the trunk — hip joint, knee, ankle, three on the left side below the trunk, one in the neck and sacrolumbar joint. (Cf. *Visuddhimagga*, part I, 165).

१२८. एस बीरे पसंसिए, जे बद्धे पडिमोयए ।

128. Esa vīre paśamsie, je baddhe paḍimoyae.

128. Only that *sādhaka* is worthy of praise, who disentangles those who are fettered by sensuality.

१२९. जहा अंतो तहा बाहि, जहा बाहि तहा अंतो :

129. *Jahā aṃto tahā bāhīm, jahā bāhīm tahā aṃto.*

129. (The human body) is equally vitiated by both internal and external impurities.

ANNOTATION 129: The alternate translation of this aphorism is as follows:

There should be complete harmony between the internal self and the external behaviour of a *sādhaka*.

Some philosophers stressed on the purity of the internal self, while others that of the external behaviour. Bhagavān Mahāvīra did not accept either of these views. He viewed them together, and said: It is not enough to have the purity of the inner self only. The external conduct should also be pure, because it is the reflection of the inner self. It is not also enough to have purity of the external behaviour only. Without the purity of the inner self, it will be repression. That is why the inner self also should be pure. Confluence of the purity of the inner self as well as the external behaviour leads one to perfection of religious life.

१३०. अंतो अंतो देहंतराणि पासति पुढोवि सबंताइ ।

130. *Aṃto aṃto dehaṃtarāṇi pāsati puḍhovi savantāim.*

130. A *sādhaka* should (penetrate into) the innermost penetralia of the filthy body and observe (the functions of various essential ingredients) and fluids (humours) and their outlets.

ANNOTATIONS 129-130: The fourth agency of freeing the mind from sexuality is the cognizance of the foulness of the human body. It can be compared to a pitcher filled with filth which is trickling out from it. Thus it is dirty from within as well as from without. Similarly, this bodily claypot is internally replete with foul matter. This comes out through the various outlets making the exterior also foul.

"Here is blood; there is flesh;
Here is fat; there is bone;
Here again is marrow; there again is semen."

The *sādhaka* thus looks into these and contemplates thoroughly over them.

The interior of the body means the pits and holes which the *sādhaka* sees in the body. He perceives the navel — the pit in the stomach, the hole in the ear, the armpits in the right and the left sides, the pores and other holes in the body. Thus, his desires are pacified.

The Buddhist monks also made such repugnant things the object of meditation (Cf. *Viśuddhimagga* part I, pp. 164-65).

१३१. पंडिते पडिलेहाए ।

131. *Paṇḍīe paḍilehāe.*

131. A wise man should meditate on the repercussions of indulgence in sex and filthiness of the human body.

१३२. ते मइमं परिण्णाय, मा य हु लालं पच्चासी ।

132. *Se maimam pariṇṇāya, mā ya hu lālaṁ paccāsī.*

132. He who comprehends (the real nature of the body and sex) and forswears indulging in them, should not lick back his own spittle (i. e. should not go back upon his wise decision of forswearing indulgence).

१३३. मा तेसु तिरिच्छमप्पाणमावातए ।

133. *Mā tesu tiriicchamappāṇamāvātae.*

133. He should not get himself embogged in them (i. e. lust).

१३४. कासंकसे खलु अयं पुरिसे, बहुमाई,
कडेण सूढे पुणो तं करेइ लोभं ।

134. *Kāsankase khalu ayaṁ purise, bahumāi,
kaḍeṇa mūḍhe puṇo taṁ kareī lobhaṁ.*

134. (A self-indulgent) person remains engrossed in (such memory and fantasy as) "I did this or I shall do that". He is excessively deceitful. Stupefied by his own actions, he, once again, yearns for (acquiring means of sensual enjoyments).

ANNOTATION 134: A stupefied person is he who has become nonplussed due to his over-busyness (i. e. mental worry to do this or that). Such a stupefied person begets sufferings when he longs for happiness. Due to excitement, he cannot do things like sleeping, bathing and eating at the right time. He remains lost in reveries. So deeply does he get entangled in imaginary problems, that he utterly loses sight of the real ones, like the proverbial flying Dutchman (the eternal day-dreamer).

१३५. वेरं वद्धेति अप्पणो ।

135. *Veraṁ vaddheti appaṇo.*

135. (Indulging in deceit and greed,) he incurs the enmity (of all and sundry)¹.

१३६. जमिणं परिकह्मिज्जइ, इमस्स चेव पडिबूहणयाए ।

136. *Jamiṇaṁ parikahijjai, imassa ceva paḍibūhaṇayāe.*

136. Whatever I have said (viz. that a voluptuous person indulges in deceits and increases enmity) means (he does so) for nourishment of this (human body).

ANNOTATION 136: Sex and hunger—these are two natural instincts. In order to satiate them, one wants to exercise authority over others. Canons of materialism prescribe the means of satiating them, while those of spiritualism prescribe the means of forbearing them. In the words of a spiritualist, the means are —

*‘Sisnodara-kṛte pāṛtha!
Pythivīm jetumicchasi,*

1. Cf. *Suṣagadāṅga*, 1/9/2, 3.

*Jaya śiśnodaram pāṛtha!
Tataste pṛthivī jītā".*

"O king! You desire to conquer the world in order to satiate sex and hunger. Conquer sex and hunger themselves. The world would then be at your feet."

Bhagavān Mahāvīra said—those desirous of exercising authority over others in order to satiate their sex and hunger, generate a chain reaction of vengeance."

१३७. अमरायइ महासद्धी ।

137. *Amarāyai mahāsaddhī.*

137. He who is deeply devoted to (sensuality and wealth which is instrumental for it) behaves as if leading an immortal life.

ANNOTATION 137: A dancing girl named Magadhasenā lived in the city of Rājagṛha. There came the owner of a caravan, called Dhana. He was very rich. Being attracted by his good looks, youth and riches, Magadhasenā accosted him. But he was preoccupied with accounts of his income and expenses. He did not even care to cast a glance upon her. She was hurt and became very sad.

She at once left his place and went to the palace. There Jarāsandha, the king of Magadha, inquired of her, "What made you so dejected? Who made you unhappy?"

"A self-styled "immortal" man had done so", quipped back the dancing girl.

"What do you mean by "immortal" person?"

"Dhana, the owner of the caravan. I wonder how a person who is always obsessed with riches, and who did not even notice my presence, can ever visualise the presence of Death?"

It is true that an avid person cannot feel the presence of Death and the person who feels the presence of Death cannot be avid.

१३८. अट्टमेतं पेहाए ।

138. *Aṭṭametam pehāe.*

138. See! (one who behaves as if he is immortal while engaged in acquiring wealth) is afflicted.

१३६. अपरिण्णाए कंढति ।

139. *Aparinnāe kaṇḍati.*

139. The person who cannot give up (amassing of wealth) laments.

ANNOTATION 139: The person with a tendency for accumulation keeps bemoaning due to hankering after the wealth that he cannot acquire or due to grief caused by loss of wealth.

तिगिच्छा-पदं

१४०. से तं जाणह जमहं बेमि ।

Tigicchā-padam

140. Se taṁ jānaha jamahaṁ bemi.

Remedy of the Maladies

140. Comprehend what I say.

१४१. तेइच्छं पंडिते पवयमाणे ।

141. Teicchaṁ paṇḍite pavayamāṇe.

141. An expert physician is keeping himself occupied in his job.

१४२. से हंता छेत्ता भेत्ता लुंपइत्ता विलुंपइत्ता उद्वइत्ता ।

142. Se haṇṭā chettā bhattā luṃpaittā viluṃpaittā uddavaittā.

142. (For the sake of medical treatment), he injures, cuts, pierces, anatomizes and kills various living beings.

१४३. अकडं करिस्सामित्ति मण्णमाणे ।

143. Akadam karissāmitti maṇṇamāṇe.

143. "I shall do unprecedented work (in the field of medicine)"—with this belief (he indulges in causing injury etc. to the living beings).

१४४. जस्स वि य णं करेइ ।

144. *Jassa vi ya ṇaṁ karei.*

144. A person, whom he treats, (is also a party to this violence).

१४५. अलं बालस्स संगेण ।

145. *Alaṁ bālassa saṅgeṇaṁ.*

145. What benefit can be derived by an immature *sādhaka* (out of such a care of his body) (the treatment of which involves violence)¹?

१४६. जे वा से कारेइ बाले ।

146. *Je vā se kārei bāle.*

146. A *sādhaka* who takes such a treatment is puerile.

१४७. ण एव अणगारस्स जायति ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

147. *Na evaṁ aṇagārassa jāyati.*

— Tti bemi.

147. A monk ought not to take any such treatment.

— I say so.

ANNOTATIONS 140-147: There were two classes of ascetics — *munis* who were members of an order and those

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism is as follows:

a) Such (killing involved in medical treatment) is enough to put into the bondage (of *Karma* particles) the ignorant *sādhaka*.

b) What benefit can one derive from acquaintance with an ignorant person?

who were independent.

The former used to take care of their bodies, while the latter did not. The latter did not take medical treatment, even when they suffered from diseases. It seems that this difference in practices came about in the post-Mahāvīra era. In the beginning Bhagavān Mahāvīra prescribed that *munis* should not undergo medical treatment. This was possibly because of two reasons — non-violence and non-attachment to the body.

In medical treatment many an occasion arises when causing of violence becomes necessary. A medical practitioner causes violence as a part of treatment and this has been clearly brought out in aphorism 142. There is no denying that use of certain medicines will cause violence to worms etc.

Attachment to the body is also a form of acquisitiveness. A *sādhaka* practising non-acquisitiveness should be non-attached even to his own body. One who has given up attachment to his body and is completely indifferent to it, and who is in complete unison with his own soul, does not desire medical treatment. He leaves bodily affliction to take its own natural course. He endures it considering it as a result of his *karma*. He looks at life and death with equanimity and as such does not struggle for life nor try to avoid death. That is why, he never thinks about medical treatment.

There was a change in this line of thought during the post-Mahāvīra era. At that time, two categories of *sādhana* came about. In the first one, a medical treatment, in which no violence was caused by the medical practitioner, was permissible.

SECTION VI

छद्दो उद्देशो

Chattho Uddeso

परिग्गाह-परिच्चाय-पदं

१४८. से तं संबुज्झमाणे, आयाणीयं समुत्थाए ।

Pariggaha-pariccāya-padam

148. Se taṃ sambujjhamāṇe, āyāṇīyaṃ samutṭhāe.

Renunciation of Acquisitiveness

148. He (i. e. a self-disciplined *sādhaka*,) properly comprehending this (i. e. consequence of acquisitiveness) becomes vigilant over the practice of self-discipline.

१४९. तम्हा पावं कम्मं, णेव कुज्जा न कारवे ।

149. Tamhā pāvaṃ kammaṃ, ñeva kujjā na kārave.

149. Hence, he should neither himself indulge in sinful activities (i. e. accumulation) nor should he cause others to do so.

१५०. सिया से एगयारं विप्परामुसइ, छसु अण्णयरंसि कप्पति ।

150. Siyā se egayaraṃ vipparāmusai, chasu aṇṇayaraṃsi kappati.

150. It is probable that one who allows himself the slightest infringement of a single vow may infringe any one of the six vows (viz. non-violence, truth, non-stealing, celibacy, non-acquisitiveness and not taking food after sunset, (i. e. he infringes all the six vows).

ANNOTATION 150: Violence, untruth, stealing, non-celebracy, acquisitiveness and post-sunset dinner — these are six *avratas* (i. e. infringement of the six vows). Is it possible that anybody practising anyone of these six infringements can save himself from the non-observance of the other vows? Can any one who is acquisitive save himself from causing violence? Can anyone practising violence save himself from acquisitiveness? In reply to all these questions Bhagavān Mahāvīra laid down the following principle — There are two fundamental evils — attachment and aversion. Violence, acquisitiveness etc. are nothing but their modifications. Motivated by attachment and aversion, if anyone practises acquisitiveness, he also commits violence etc. Complete forswearing of all the six *avratas* can be done jointly only and not separately. It is not possible that a *muni* may practise non-violence but not non-acquisitiveness or may practise non-acquisitiveness without practising non-violence. These great vows (i. e. *mahāvratas*) are practised simultaneously or violated simultaneously. They are acquired when *pratyākhyānāvarena-kasāya* (which is one type of passion) has subsided, while they are violated when it comes into force. The *mahāvratas* cannot be observed or violated in any number less than six. Therefore the above principle can be enunciated in the context of acquisitiveness as follows:

One who violates the vow of non-acquisitiveness also violates other *Mahāvratas*, namely, non-violence etc.

Another interpretation of this aphorism is as follows:

It is possible that one who causes violence to any one (system of living beings) can cause violence to anyone of the six systems of living beings (i. e. he causes violence to all the six systems).

For a *sādhaka*, violence to all living beings is prohibited. This total prohibition creates the right temperament towards non-violence. If the killing of a particular system of beings is allowed and that of another system or systems of beings is prohibited, the right attitude towards non-violence cannot be friendly towards other systems of beings. In the epoch of Bhagavān Mahāvīra some friars used to justify themselves by saying that they killed no other living being except

beings of water-body. Some ascetics, belonging to the Śramaṇa tradition, used to profess, "We perpetrate violence only for food and for no other purpose."

When Bhagavān Mahāvīra's disciples used to pass through the paths of the jungle, there was a derth of 'inanimate water' (cf. 1/54-55). In many cases monks died of thirst. It is probable that a question might have been raised as to what harm might accrue from drinking animate water under those dire circumstances.

Bhagavān Mahāvīra, after weighing the pros and cons of the issue, observed that an aspirant whose mind was filled with a dormant feeling of violence even towards a single system of beings could not stride the path of absolute non-violence.

१५१. सुहृदी लालप्पमाणे सएण दुक्खेण मूढे विप्परियासमुदेति ।

151. *Suhatthī lālappamāṇe saeṇa dukkheṇa mūdhe vippariyā samuveti.*

151. Actuated by the desire for pleasure, one (indulges in acquisitiveness). He repeatedly hankers after (pleasure). Consequently haunted by his desires, he gets benumbed and earns sorrows, although yearning for pleasure.

१५२. सएण विप्पमाएण, पुढो वयं पकुव्वति ।

152. *Saeṇa vipamāeṇa puḍho vayaṃ pakuvvati.*

152. It is his own excessive stupor that engenders the cycle¹ of birth and death.

१५३. जंसिमे पाणा पव्वहिया । पडिलेहाए णो णिकरणाए ।

153. *Jamsime pāṇā pavvahiya. Paḍilehāe ṇo ṇikaraṇāe.*

1. In the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa* we find the term 'vaya' used in the sense of *gati* –

"*Vayaḥ suvarṇā upasedurindra mityuttamayā paridadhātī.*" Sāyaṇācārya also has used *vaya* to mean *gati* in his *bhāṣya* "*Veterdhātorgatyarthasya vaya iti rūpaṃ*" (*Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*, *Adhyāya* 12, *Khanda* 8.)

153. (Accumulation is the process) in which the beings undergo sufferings. Observing this one should not set one's mind upon it.

१५४. एस परिण्णा पवुच्चइ ।

154. Esa pariṇṇa pavuccai.

154. This (forswearing of attachment) is called *Pariṇṇā* (discernment).

१५५. कम्मोवसंती ।

155. Kammovasaṁti.

155. This *pariṇṇā* produces the subsidence of *karma*.

ANNOTATION 155: Man performs actions (*karma*). Actions in themselves have no motives. They are performed for fulfilling certain aims. There are certain necessities of life, the fulfilling of which requires actions. It is one thing to act in order to fulfil certain necessities and it is quite another thing to search for a necessity in order to act. When the mind is full of attachment, we create artificial necessities. By this, our problems multiply. The actions of one who is free from attachment get reduced to bare necessities. Simultaneously, the bondages of *karma* particles which are caused by actions also subside.

१५६. जे ममाइय-मति जहाति, से जहाति ममाइयं ।

156. Je mamāiya-matiṁ jahāti, se jahāti mamāiyam.

156. Only he who forswears the instinct of acquisitiveness is competent to renounce his possessions.

१५७. से हु दिट्ठपाहे मुणी, जस्स बरिण ममाइयं ।

157. Se hu diṭṭhapahe muṇī, jassa ṇatthi mamāiyam.

157. That ascetic alone who has renounced possession, has seen the path.

१५८. तं परिण्णाय मेहावी ।

158. *Taṃ pariṇāya mehāvī.*

158. A sage should be conversant with it (i. e. with the evils of acquisitiveness) and renounce it.

१५९. विदित्ता लोगं, वंता लोगसण्णं, से मतिमं परक्कमेज्जासि
त्ति बेमि ।

159. *Vidittā logaṃ, vaṇṭā logasaṇṇaṃ, se matimaṃ parakkamejjāsi tti bemi.*

159. After comprehending (the consequences of venturing in) the realm (of acquisitiveness) and disgorging mammonism, a wise person should diligently practise (self-restraint).

— I say so.

अनासत्तस्स ववहार-पदं

१६०. नारति सहते वीरे, वीरे णो सहते रति ।
जम्हा अविमणे वीरे, तम्हा वीरे ण रज्जति ॥

Aṇāsattaṃssa vavahāra-padaṃ

160. *Nāratim saḥate vīre, vīre ṇo saḥate ratim.
Jaṃhā avimaṇe vīre, taṃhā vīre ṇa rājjati.*

Conduct of the Unattached One

160. A bold one does not tolerate ennui (created during the practice of self-restraint) (— he ousts it from his mind then and there through meditation). He does not tolerate delights (of intemperance) (— he instantly purges his mind of them through meditation), because he does not become discomposed (by pleasant and unpleasant sensory objects (— he remains equanimous). Therefore he does not get attached.

ANNOTATION 160. One should not tolerate apathy to subdual — this is the secret of the development of one's will-power. Deleberate meditation, i. e., canalisation of

thought-processes, on subjects in which men are not normally interested is helpful in the development of will-power. Sense-organs are a slave to sensuality, rather than indifferent to it. Therefore, sometimes a *sādhaka* gets attracted to what 'the flesh is heir to! Hence he becomes apathetic to the practice of self-discipline. His determination begins to slacken. A *sādhaka* who cannot tolerate laxity, canalizes his thought-process in the direction of self-control. Thus, developing his will-power, he gains mastery over self-discipline.

The path prescribed by Bhagavān Mahāvīra, for the achievement of self-realization comprises the practice of constant vigilance and perseverance. In case a *sādhaka* is infatuated even momentarily by sensual delights, meditation once does away with his stupor. Consequently, he escapes from the indelible impress of the pent up sensual impulses.

If wantonness is not purged away, the mind begins to contract passion. One cannot, then, get rid of carnality. Therefore, the author has exhorted the aspirant to be very careful in this regard.

१६१. सहे य फासे अहियासमाण ।

161. *Sadde ya phāse ahiyāsamāṇa.*

Behaviour of a Recluse

161. An aspirant after non-attachment brooks the onslaught of sound, colour, taste, smell and touch — (he does not develop attachment or aversion towards them).

१६२. निव्विन्द णंदि इह जीवियस्स ।

162. *Nivvinda ṇaṇḍim iha jīviyassa.*

162. O man! withdraw yourself from the allurements caused by the enjoyment of (indisciplined) life.

१६३. मुणी मोणं समादाय, धुणे कम्म-सरीरगं ।

163. *Muṇī moṇaṃ samādāya, dhuṇe kamma-sarīragam.*

163. After gaining knowledge¹, a *muni* should shake to its roots his *karma* body (to cast off *karma* particles).

१६४. पतं लूहं सेवन्ति वीरा समतदंसिणो ।

164. *Paṁtaṁ lūhaṁ sevaṁti vīrā samattadaṁsiṇo.*

164. The heroic one practising equanimity² should take tasteless and coarse food.

१६५. एस ओघंतरे मुनी, तिण्णे मुत्ते विरते, वियाहिते ति बेमि ।

165. *Esa oghāntare muṇi tīṇṇe mutte vīrate, viyāhite tti bemi.*

165. Such a *muni* who has crossed the ocean of life and death, is called successful, liberated, and devoid of passion. I say so.

१६६. दुव्वसु मुणी अणाणाए ।

166. *Duvasu muṇi aṇāṇāe.*

The Richly Disciplined and the Poorly Disciplined

166. A *muni* who violates these injunctions becomes poor (by losing wealth of self-discipline).

1. Cf. foot-note on 2/103.

2. The author of the *Vṛtti* has interpreted *sammattadaṁsiṇo* as *samatvadarśi* in the first instance and as an alternative as *samyaktvadarśi*. Probably the text before him was "*samattadaṁsiṇo*". The interpretation '*samatvadarśi*' seems to be more consistent, because a *samatvadarśi* i. e. one who practises equanimity alone can eat unsavoury food with equanimity. The *Dasaveyāliyaṁ* (5/1/97) corroborates this contention.

"Tittagaṁ va kaḍḍayaṁ va kaṣāyaṁ, ambilaṁ va mahuraṁ
lavaṇaṁ vā.

Eya laddhamamaṭṭha-pauttaṁ, mahu-ghayaṁ va bhumjjeja
saṁjjae."

The self-disciplined *muni* should eat food prepared for a householder and offered to him of whatever taste it may be as if he were eating honey and butter.

१६७. तुच्छए गिलाइ वत्तए ।

167. *Tucchae gilāi vattae.*

167. One who is devoid of *sāḍhanā* fights shy of expounding (righteousness).

१६८. एस वीरे पसंसिए ।

168. *Esa vīre pasamsie.*

168. (On the contrary), a heroic one (who carries out these injunctions) becomes praiseworthy.

ANNOTATION 168. A *muni* who commands the wealth of self-discipline is called a *suvasu muni*. He lives contentedly in *sāḍhanā* and is competent enough to attain liberation. He is never unwilling to expound the path of *sāḍhanā*.

१६९. अच्चेइ लोयसंजोयं ।

169. *Accei loyasamjoyam.*

169. He circumvents the worldly bondages (such as money, family, attachment and aversion).

१७०. एस णाए पवुच्चइ ।

170. *Esa ṇāe pavuccai.*

170. He is known as the 'Leader' (i. e. one who leads people towards liberation).

बंध-मोक्ष-पदं

१७१. जं दुक्खं पवेदितं इह माणवाणं, तस्स दुक्खस्स कुसला परिण-
मुदाहरति ।

Baṁḍha-mokkha-padam

171. Jam dukkham paveditam iha māṇavāṇam, tassa dukkhassa kusalā pariṇnamudāharanti.

Liberation from Bondage

171. The sufferings of human beings in this world are well-known. The enlightened ones (i. e. *Tirthankaras*)

have instructed us on judicious liberation from misery.

ANNOTATION 171. In common language, the experience which one does not like is referred to as sufferings. In the language of religion, the cause of sufferings is also called suffering. The bondage of *karmas* is the cause of sufferings. Bhagavān Mahāvira admonished the people thus —

There is bondage and there is cause of bondage.
There is liberation and there is cause of liberation.

१७२. इति कम्म परिण्णाय सब्बसो ।

172. Iti kamma parinnāya savvaso.

172. (In order to emancipate himself from sufferings) one should discernfully get rid of (i. e. comprehend and forswear) *karmas*.

१७३. जे अणण्णदंसी, से अणण्णारामे,
जे अणण्णारामे, से अणण्णदंसी ।

173. Je aṇaṇṇadaṃsī, se aṇaṇṇārāme,
Je aṇaṇṇārāme, se aṇaṇṇadaṃsī.

173. He who looks inwardly at the Self revels in the Self;
One who revels in the Self looks inwardly at the Self.

ANNOTATION 173. The fundamental mainstay of Bhagavān Mahāvira's asceticism is *apramāda* (i. e. complete lack of inertia, or constant vigilance). The first principle of this is close introspection.

The Bhagavān said, "Perceive the Self through the Self." ¹ Not being an extrovert implies being an introvert. Hence, the aphorism. Thus the processes of introspection and revelry in the Self continue to follow each other.

Passions (e. g. the Id-impulses, indignation, conceit, deceit and avidity) are not the properties of the soul; and, therefore, a true introvert does not delight in them.

1. *Dasaveyāliyaṃ, Cūlikā*, 2/11.

Knowing the Self is the Right Knowledge.
 Perceiving the Self is the Right Perception.
 Revelling in the Self is the Right Conduct.
 This alone is the path to salvation.

The second principle of *apramāda* is — to live in the present, i. e. to identify oneself with the current activity. One who is absorbed in the present activity does not pay heed to any other activities. One who remains lost in the reminiscences of the past and imaginations of the future cannot live in the present. A person who is engaged in one activity while his mind is occupied with another cannot remain alive to the exigencies of the present concentration.

धम्मकहा-पदं

१७४. जहा पुण्णस्स कत्थइ, तहा तुच्छस्स कत्थइ ।

जहा तुच्छस्स कत्थइ, तहा पुण्णस्स कत्थइ ॥

Dhammakahā-padam

174. *Jahā puṇṇassa katthai, tahā tucchassa katthai,*
Jahā tucchassa katthai, tahā puṇṇassa katthai.

On Preaching Sermons

174. (A preacher) preaches to the haves and have-nots alike.

१७५. अवि य हणे अणादियमाणे ।

175. *Avi ya haṇe anādiyamāṇe.*

175. Inadvertent insult (to a particular dogma or an ideal hero of one of the audience during a religious discourse) may lead someone to come to blows with him.

१७६. एत्थंपि जाण, सेयंति नत्थि ।

176. *Ethaṃpi jāṇa, seyaṃti natthi.*

176. Know that — No good accrues from the religious discourse (of a preacher who is ignorant of the decorum of a religious discourse).

ANNOTATION 176. A widely read preacher can expatiate upon topics, both on philosophy and asceticism. On the other hand, a poorly read one cannot do so. All the same he can talk about renunciation, he should never enter into polemics. For, he may make a beginning, but he would not be able to round it off. That is why his discourse on philosophy would not be of any benefit.

१७७. के यं पुरिसे ? कं च णए ?

177. *Ke yaṃ purise ? Kaṃ ca ṇae ?*

177. (A spiritual discourser must feel the pulse of everyone of his audience —) What sort of person is he (addressing) and what creed does he belong to ?

१७८. एस वीरे वसंसिए, जे बद्धे पडिमोयए ।

178. *Esa vīre pasamsie, je baddhe paḍimoyae.*

178. Only that heroic person who liberates people from fetters (through his right and proper sermons) deserves commendation.

१७९. उद्धं अहं तिरियं दिसासु, से सव्वतो सव्वपरिण्णकारी ।

179. *Uddhaṃ ahaṃ tiriyaṃ disāsu, se savvato savva-pariṇṇacārī.*

179. Fully discerning everything, he moves in all directions — upward, downward and sideways.

१८०. न लिप्पई छणपाएण वीरे ।

180. *Na lippai chaṇapaṇa vīre.*

180. The heroic one does not get involved in the affairs of violence.

૧૮૧. સે મેહાવી અનુગ્ધાયણસ્સ ક્ષેયણ્ણે, જે ય ચંદ્રવપ્પમોક્કમણ્ણેસી ।

181. Se mehāvī anugghāyaṇassa kheyañṇe, je ya
baṇḍhappa mokkhamāṇesi.

181. He, who investigates ways and means of attaining liberation from bondage, absorbs the quintessence (core) of non-violence.

૧૮૨. કુસલે પુણ નો બદ્ધે, નો મુક્કે ।

182. Kusale puṇa nō baddhe, nō mukke.

182. The wise one is above freedom and bondage.

ANNOTATION 182. By wise one (*kusala*) is meant a person endowed with knowledge. A *muni* who is proficient in religious discourse, erudite in various schools of philosophy, practicing what he professes, conqueror of sleep, sense-organs and hardships of *sādhana* and conversant with the limitations of time and space, is called "*kusala*" i. e. a Wise One).

Tīrthaṅkara is also referred to as "*Kusala*".

૧૮૩. સે જાં ચ આરબ્હે, જાં ચ નારબ્હે, અનારદ્ધમં ચ નારબ્હે ।

183. Se jaṃ ca ārabhe, jaṃ ca nārabhe, anāraddham ca nārabhe.

183. He (i. e. a *Kusala*) does certain things and does not do certain other things. The *muni* should not undertake that which has not been undertaken by the Wise One.

૧૮૪. છજં છજં પરિણ્ણાય, લોગસણ્ણમં ચ સવ્વસો ।

184. Chaṇaṃ chaṇaṃ parinñāya, logasaṇṇaṃ ca savvaso.

184. He should first comprehend and then forswear each of those planes on which violence is perpetrated. Similarly, he should thoroughly comprehend the mundane pleasures and forswear them.

१८५. उद्देशो पासगस्स णत्थि ।

185. Uddeso pāsagassa ṇatthi.

185. A seer (of truth) needs no directives.

१८६. बाले पुण णिहे कामसमणुण्णे असमियदुक्खे दुक्खी दुक्खाणमेव
आवट्ठं अणुपरियट्ठइ ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

186. Bāle puṇa ṇihe kāmasamaṇuṇṇe asamiyadukkhe
dukkhī dukkhāṇameva āvaṭṭaṃ aṇupariyaṭṭai.

— Tti bemi.

186. The benighted one is incompetent to assuage sufferings, because he is attached to desires and is lecherous. Oppressed (by physical and mental pains), he keeps rotating in the whirlpool of agony.

— I say so.

CHAPTER III

THE SHIFTING SANDS OF
LIFE

तइयं अज्झयणं
सीओसणिज्जं

TAIYAṂ AJJHAYAṆAṂ

SĪOSANĪJJAMAṂ

SECTION I

पढमो उद्देशो

Paḍhamo Uddeso

सुप्त-जागर-पदं

१. सुप्ता अमुणी सया, मुणिणो सया जागरंति ।

Sutta-jāgara-padam

1. Suttā amuṇī sayā, muṇiṇo sayā jāgaramti.

The Torpid and the Wide-awake

1. The unwise keep sleeping; the wise are ever awake.

ANNOTATION 1. At any time a person's body or his soul can be in any one of the three planes — asleep, half-awake and awake. The Degree of the development of consciousness (i. e. soul) determines the plane in which it resides.

Development of consciousness		
Nadir of self-discipline	Mid-point of self-discipline	Zenith of self-discipline
Sleep	Half-awakenness	awakenness

In the terminology of religious philosophy the indisciplined is called unwise and the disciplined is called wise.

२. लोयंसि जाण अहिंसाय दुक्खं ।

2. Loyaṃsi jāṇa ahiyāya dukkham.

2. Know that ignorance¹ in this world is baneful.
३. समयं लोणस्त जाणित्ता, एत्थ सत्थोवरए ।
3. *Samayaṃ loṇassa jāñittā*, ettha satthovarae.
3. "All souls are equal".—One should perceive this and abstain from violence to the entire animate world;
४. जस्सिमे सद्दा य रूवा य गंधा य रसा य फासा य अबिसमन्ता-
गया भवन्ति, से आयवं नाणवं देयवं धम्मवं बंभवं ।
4. Jassime saddā ya rūvā ya gandhā ya rasā ya phāsā ya abhisamannāgayā bhavaṃti, se āyavaṃ nāṇavaṃ deya-vaṃ dhammavaṃ bambhavaṃ.
4. One who thoroughly knows these — sound, colour, smell, taste, and touch — (i. e. does not have attachment or aversion to them) is one who is in possession of the Self, Knowledge, Scriptures, Piety and the Supreme Reality.

ANNOTATION 4. According to the *Cūrṇi*, this aphorism is translated thus:— "One who thoroughly knows these — sound, colour, smell, taste, and touch (i. e., does not have attachment or aversion to them) is one who knows the Self, Knowledge, Scriptures, Piety and the Supreme Reality.

Attachment to sound, colour, taste, smell and touch obstructs the realisation of the soul. One attached to them is the same as one who does not possess the soul while one who is not attached to them is the same as one who is in possession of the soul. One who is in possession of the Self gains possession of Knowledge, Scripture, Piety as well as the Supreme Reality — is in possession of every thing. One who knows the soul knows knowledge, scriptures, piety as well as the Supreme Reality — knows everything.

1. Ignorance is the translation of the word *dukkhaṃ* which literally means misery or suffering. As ignorance is the cause of misery, the author has used the word misery in lieu of ignorance. According to the *Cūrṇi* the cause of misery is karma. That is why he has interpreted *dukkhaṃ* as karma. But ignorance is due to the *Jñānavarāṇa* karma (i. e. the karma obscuring knowledge). Hence, in the present context *dukkhaṃ* can be translated as ignorance.

५. पण्णाहेहि परियाणइ लोयं, मुणोति वच्चे, धम्मविउत्ति अंजू ।

5. Pannāṇehim̐ pariyāṇai loyam̐, muṇīti vacce, dhammaviutti añjū.

5. One who comprehends the *loka* (universe) through his own wisdom is called a *muṇi*.¹ He is conversant with the *dharma*² and is simple and straightforward in his behaviour.

६. आवट्टसोए संगमभिजाणति ।

6. Āvattasoe saṅgamabhijāṇati.

6. (A self-knowing *muṇi*) perceives attachment as a whirl-pool).

७. सीओसिणच्चाई से निगंथे अरइ-रइ-सहे फरुसियं णो वेदेति ।

7. Sīosinaccāi se niggamthe arai-rai-sahe pharusiyam̐ no vedeti.

7. A Jain ascetic (*Nirgrantha*) endures extremities of weather and does not fall a prey either to the ennui (created in the practice of self-restraint) or to the delights (produced by self-indulgence). He is unmindful of the pain.

ANNOTATION 7. Every person is destined to suffer adversities in this world. More so is a *sādhaka* who leads a life of non-violence and non-acquisitiveness. An ignorant person feels the pain of adversities, while a wise one is aware of adversities, but he does not allow them to make him suffer. His endurance is so much developed that he does not tag pain to his knowledge of it.

1. The word *muṇi* means a wise man. It comes from the root *mun* meaning 'to know'. According to the commentator, the word *muṇi* is explained as follows:

"Manute manyate vā jagataḥ trikālāvasthām muṇiḥ".
i.e.—one who knows past, present and future states of the universe.

2. *Dharma* means nature. Hence *dharmaṇi* means one who is conversant with the nature of Reality or that of the Soul in the context of *sādhana*.

८. जागर-वेरोवारे वीरे ।

8. Jāgara-verovarāe vīre.

8. A bold one is he who is wide-awake and above enmity.

९. एवं दुक्खा पमोक्खसि ।

9. *Evam dukkhā pamokkhasi.*

9. O bold one, it (is) thus (i. e. through the practice of prudence, non-attachment, tolerance, awakening and friendliness) that you will get rid of suffering.

१०. जरामच्चुवसोवणीए नरे, सययं मूढे धम्मं नाभिजाणति ।

10. Jarāmaccuvasoṇīe nare, sayayaṃ mūḍhe dhammamāṃ nābhijāṇati.

10. A person, who is enslaved by birth and death and is perpetually stupefied by delusion, does not comprehend *Dharma*.

११. पासिय आउरे पाणे अप्पमत्तो परिव्वए ।

11. *Pāsiya āure pāṇe appamatto parivvāe.*

11. Seeing torpid beings tormented, one should be ever vigilant.

ANNOTATION 11. Consciousness and unconsciousness are relative terms. When one is conscious of the external world, he is unconscious of the Inner Self. Conversely when one is conscious of the Inner Self, he is unconscious of the external world. One who is conscious of the external world throws the Inner Self into oblivion; that is why he becomes unwatchful. Thus unwatchfulness means sinking into oblivion. One who is conscious of the Inner Self is constantly alive to it. Hence, he remains ever vigilant. Thus watchfulness means constant consciousness. Constant consciousness means to be heedful and to throw into oblivion the causes which make one heedless.

१२. मंता एयं महन् ! पास ।

12. *Mantā eyaṃ maimaṃ! pāsa.*

12. O wise one! contemplate and realize this.

१३. आरंभजं दुक्खमिणं ति णच्चा ।

13. *Āraṃbhajaṃ dukkhamiṇaṃ ti ṇaccā.*

13. Suffering is the offspring of violence — realising this, (try to be ever vigilant).

१४. माई पमाई पुणरेइ गबभं ।

14. *Māi pamāi puṇarei gabbhaṃ.*

14. A deceitful and unwatchful person is born again and again.

१५. उवेहमाणो सद्-रूवेसु अंजू, मारामिसंकी मरणा पमुच्चति ।

15. *Uvehamāṇo sadda-rūvesu aṃjū, māraḃhisamkī maraṇā pamuccati.*

15. One who is indifferent to colour (form) and sound is ingenuous (i. e. self-disciplined).
One who expects death¹ at any moment, transcends its limitations.

१६. अप्पमतो कामेहि, उवरतो पावकम्मेहि, वीरे आयगुत्ते जे खेयण्णे ।

16. *Appamatto kāmehiṃ, uvarato pāvakammehiṃ, vīre āyagutte je kheyanne.*

16. One who is vigilant against desires and ceases from delinquent behaviour is bold and self-secured. (Such a person) knows the essence of things.

१७. जे पज्जवजाय-सत्थस्स खेयण्णे, से असत्थस्स खेयण्णे,
जे असत्थस्स खेयण्णे, से पज्जवजाय-सत्थस्स खेयण्णे ।

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism is as follows:

One who is apprehensive of sensuality transcends Death.

17. Je pajjavajāya-satthassa kheyāṇṇe, se asatthassa kheyāṇṇe,
Je asatthassa kheyāṇṇe, se pajjavajāya-satthassa kheyāṇṇe.
17. One who is conversant with the core of attachment to various phases (of sensual objects) knows the core of detachment.
One who is conversant with the core of detachment knows the core of attachment to various phases (of sensual objects).

१८. अकम्मस्स ववहारो न विज्जइ ।

18. Akammassa vavahāro na vijjai.

18. For him who is free from *karmas* (i. e. who is pure) there is no appellation — he is not designated by name or clan.

१९. कम्मणो उवाही जायइ ।

19. Kammunā uvāhī jāyai.

19. It is because of *karmas* that the soul becomes conditioned by extraneous impositions.

ANNOTATIONS 18-19. Body, form, colour, name, clan, experience of pleasure and pain, births in various genera — all these are responsible for causing distinctions amongst souls. The ultimate cause of all these distinctions is *karma*. That is why a soul bound by *karmas* has various sorts of appellations and extraneous impositions. On the contrary, a soul free from bondages has neither any appellation nor any extraneous imposition.

२०. कम्मं च पडिलेहाए ।

20. *Kammaṃ ca paḍilehāe.*

20. See (in meditation) *karma* (and strive to cast it off).

२१. कम्ममूलं च जं छणं ।

21. *Kammamūlaṃ ca jaṃ chaṇaṃ.*

21. The root of *karma* is violence¹.

२२. पडिलेहिय सव्वं समायाय ।

22. *Paḍilehiya savvam samāyāya.*

22. After having seen (in meditation) the *karma*, one ought to embrace perfect self-discipline.

२३. दोहि अतेहि अदिस्समाणे ।

23. *Dohiṃ aṃtehiṃ adissamāṇe.*

23. One should keep oneself away from the twin endpoints (of attachment and aversion).

ANNOTATION 23. While a person possessed of attachment is exposed to attachment and a person possessed of aversion is exposed to aversion, a person devoid of all sorts of passions is exposed to neither.

२४. तं परिणाय मेहावी ।

24. *Taṃ pariṇāya mehāvī.*

24. A sage should comprehend (attachment and aversion) and forswear them.

२५. विदिता लोगं, वंता लोगसण्णं से मइमं परक्कमेज्जासि ।

25. *Vidittā logaṃ, vaṃtā kamejjāsi.*

25. After comprehending (in) the realm (of sentiment to sensuality, a self-restraint).

1. Alternate translation of this
The root of violence is *karma*

SECTION II

बीओ उद्देसो

Bīo Uddeso

परमबोध-पदं

२६. जातिं च वृद्धिं च इहज्ज ! पासे ।

*Paramabodha -padaṃ*26. *Jātim ca vuddhim ca ihajja! pāse.**Knowledge of the Supreme Reality*

26. O Noble One! See (in meditation) birth and growth.

ANNOTATION 26. To see birth means to observe the chain of births. One, who observes birth by diving deep into his own mind, regains memory of a number of his previous births through further observation. We easily remember events which had taken place ten or twenty years back. Similarly, the last birth also should be in our memory. But usually it is not so. The reason for this is stupefaction caused by extreme pain felt at the time of birth and death.

*Jātamānassa jaṃ dukkhaṃ maramānassa jaṃtuno/
Tena dukkheṇa sammūḍho, jātim na sarati appaṇo//*

By observing birth — by concentrating on it — the stupefaction is overcome and the memory of the past births is regained.

२७. मुक्तिहेतुजाणे पडिलेह सातं ।

27. *Mukṭihetu jāṇe paḍileha sātāṃ.*

27. Know (the bondage and consequences of *karma* experienced by) beings and see their happiness (and sufferings)¹.

ANNOTATION 27. According to the author of the *Cūrṇī*, the purport of this aphorism is:

You should not do that which is disliked by others.

२८. तम्हा तिबिज्जो परमंति नच्चा, समत्तदंसी न करेति पावं ।

28. *Tamhā tivijjo paramamti naccā, samattadaṃsī na kareti pāvaṃ.*

28. That is why a *Trividyā*² (i. e. a person knowing three sciences), after having comprehended the Supreme³ Reality (becomes equanimous)⁴. The equanimous person does not commit sin (such as indulging in violence, etc.).

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism is as follows:

Treat all beings as you do yourself. Realize the significance (of the truth) that (just as you like) pleasure (and dislike pain, so do others).

2. The Author of the *Cūrṇī* interprets this term in two forms: (i) *tivijja*, and (ii) *attivijja*.

He states "*Vijjatti ke vidvaṃ! ahavā attivijjā.*"

The author of the *upṭṭi*, however, interprets it as *attivijja*. It seems that the erosion of the tradition of the interpretation of the term *tivijja* is the cause of resorting to separation of the conjunction between *tivijja* and *attivijja*. But according to one view, the text should be *tivijja*. The Buddhist literature has retained the tradition of its meaning in its original form. (See the annotation above).

3. The word *parama* (i. e. Supreme Reality) stands for truth or *nirvāṇa*. The trinity — Right Knowledge, Right Perception and Right Conduct being the means of achieving *parama* — is also termed as *parama*.
4. The variant of *sammatta* (*samattva*) is *sammatta* (*samyaktva*). In the *Āvaśyaka Nirvyukti*, *samyaktva* and *samattva* have been shown to be synonyms.

Samayā sammatta parokṭha naṃti siva hīa vāṇam anāṃdam ca. Aduṃṇohiamagaraham anavaṇṇasime'vi egaṭṭhā.

(— *Āvaśyaka Nirvyukti*, verse 1046: with *Malyagiri's upṭṭi*, page 575.) If the variant *sammattadaṃsī* is accepted, the translation of this aphorism would be —

ANNOTATION 28. The three sciences are:

1. The science of memory of past births.
2. The science of knowing the animal kingdom.
3. The science of critically analysing their (animals') pleasures and sufferings.

One who has mastered these three sciences is called a *trividyā*. According to the Buddhist tradition, *trivijja* is three types of knowledge:

1. Knowledge of the past births.
2. Knowledge of birth and death (of beings).
3. Knowledge of purging of defilements of consciousness.

Attachment and aversion are two ultimate causes of *Karma*. They are the twin causes of loss of equanimity. One affected with attachment and aversion is too stupefied to retain equanimity or realise the intrinsic equality of all animals. One who fails to realise this equality, commits sin by being attached to one or becoming averse to other. On the other hand, an equanimous person has neither attachment to anyone nor aversion to any other; that is why, he does not commit sin.

२९. उम्मुञ्च पासं इह मच्चिएहि ।

29. *Ummumca pāsam iha macciehiṃ.*

.....That is why a *trividyā*, having comprehended the Supreme Reality (becomes *samyaktvadarśi* i.e. one possessing Right Perception). A *samyaktvadarśi* does not commit sin (i.e. indulging in violence, etc.) 'That a *samyaktvadarśi* never commits sin' is an aphorism pregnant with mysticism. One who realises the true nature of sin is incapable of committing any sin. Conversely, it is only he who does not know or realise its true nature, that commits sin.

*Jānāmi dharamaṃ, na ca me pravṛttiḥ.
Jānāmyadharmam, na ca me nivṛttiḥ.*

— 'I know the righteous way of life, yet I do not follow it. I know what is unrighteous and yet I do not refrain from it.' This is merely a superficial reflection. The right knowledge gained from profundity of consciousness does save one from indulging in unrighteous action.

29. Cut across the shackles (of attachment) that bind to the mortals.

३०. आरंभजीवी उ भयाणुपस्सी ।

30. *Ārambhajīvī u bhayaṇupassī.*

30. Fears haunt him who lives by the sword.

ANNOTATION 30. By 'ārambha' is meant hitting, cutting and killing. One perpetrates *ārambha* to gain worldly possessions. Thieves, bandits and the like who indulge in violence and acquisitiveness on a large scale are incessantly bedevilled with the fear of incarceration, apprehension, decapitation, etc.

३१. कामेसु गिद्धा निचयं करेति, संसिच्चमाणा पुनरेति गबभं ।

31. *Kāmesu giddhā nicayaṁ karenti, saṁsiccamaṇā punareṁti gabbhaṁ.*

31. Sensualists pile up acquisitions. Nourished (with attachment to possessions), they are born again and again.

ANNOTATION 31. In the quartet (i.e. righteousness, wealth, desires, and salvation) of the principal objects of life, desire is the end and wealth the means. The present apothegm elucidates the truism that attachment to desire impels one to amass riches.

३२. अवि से हासमासज्ज, हंता णंदीति मम्मति ।

अलं बालस्स संगेणं, वेरं वद्धेति अप्पणो ।

32. *Avi se hāsamāsajja, haṁtā ṇandīti mammati.*
Ālaṁ bālassa saṁgeṇaṁ, veraṁ vaddheti appaṇo.

32. A pleasure-seeker derives a sadistic delight from killing other beings.

What benefit does an ignorant one derive from such

sadism? He incurs more and more enmity (of other beings) by this!¹

ANNOTATION 32. Just as some people derive pleasure out of killings, so do others out of telling a lie, committing thefts, debauchery, and accumulating wealth. All of them augment enmity.

३३. तम्हा तिविज्जो परमंति णच्चा, आयंकदंसी न करेति पावं ।

33. *Tamhā tivijjo paramamti ṇaccā, āyaṅkadamśi na kareti pāvaṃ.*

33. That is why a *trividyā* having comprehended the Supreme Reality, (perceives terror in act of violence, etc.). He who perceives terror in (act of violence, etc.) does not commit sin (viz., indulging in violence etc.²).

३४. अगं च मूलं च विगिञ्च धीरे ।

34. *Aggaṃ ca mūlaṃ ca vigiñca dhīre.*

34. O sober one! cast off the root and the ramifications (of sorrow).

ANNOTATION 34. Some philosophers believe in analysing only the effects (or ramifications) and as such they never get to the root-cause of a phenomenon. They cannot fathom the depths of the problem. Bhagavān Mahāvīra concentrated more on the cause of the problem rather than on its effect. The root of all sufferings according to him is *moha* (delusion). The rest are its ramifications.

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism may be done as follows:

This (sadistic killing) is enough for an ignorant one to be bound by *karmas*. He incurs more and more enmity.

2. Lord Buddha once exhorted his disciples: "O Mendicants! It is to be hoped that a person who perceives the element of terror in a vice would be redeemed of all vices in the world."

(— Anguttara Nikāya, Part I, page 51)

३५. पलिच्छिंदिया नं निक्कम्मदंसी ।

35. *Palicchindiyā naṃ ṇikkammadaṃsī.*

35. Man achieves self-realization through extirpation (of attachment and aversion by practising self-restraint and penance).

ANNOTATION 35: The soul does exist, but it is not visible. Passions -- attachment and aversion -- are impediments in preceiving it. They spread a shroud of *karmas* upon the soul, making it difficult to perceive itself. When the passions are weeded out, the soul becomes *niṣkarma*. (i. e. free from the veils of *karmas*).

Niṣkarmadarśī can be interpreted as one who has attained

1. Self-realisation,
2. Salvation,
3. Omniscience, or
4. Non-action.

The fundamental basis of Mahāvīra's technique of *sādhana* is non-action. Reality is only that in which there is action. The natural activity of soul is action of consciousness. Any activity apart from this is not a natural one. To cease from un-natural activity is the secret of attaining natural activity. The moment the natural activity is attained, activities of attachment and aversion cease. Cf. 4/50.

३६. एस मरणा पमुच्चइ ।

36. *Esa maraṇā pamuccai.*

36. He (i. e. one who has attained self-realization) transcends Death.

३७. से ह् दु दिट्ठपहे मुणी ।

37. *Se hu diṭṭhapahe muṇī.*

37. Only, a *muṇī* who has attained self-realization has perceived the path (leading to salvation).

३८. लोयंसी परमदंसी विवित्तजीवी उवसंते,
समिते सहिते सया जए कालकंखी परिव्वए ।

38. *Loyamsī paramadaṁsī vivittajīvī uvasante,*
Samite sahite sayā jaye kālakamkhi parivvāe.

38. One who perceives the Supreme Reality in the *loka*¹ leads a life of recluse and pursues asceticism unto his last breath, subduing his passions, conducting himself upright, equipping himself with (knowledge, etc.) and remaining ever vigilant.

ANNOTATIONS 38. Bhagavān Mahāvīra has prescribed a life-long course of monkhood. A person who has practised asceticism in the true sense of the word, cannot retrace his steps. That is why, this prescription is not superimposed but is natural.

३९. बहुं च खलु पाव-कम्मं पगडं ।

39. *Baḥuṁ ca khalu pāva-kammaṁ pagaḍaṁ.*

39. (This soul) has committed many a sin (in the past).

४०. सच्चंसि धितिं कुव्वह ।

40. *Saccaṁsi dhitim kuvvaha.*

40. Be steadfast in Truth².

४१. एत्थोवरए मेहावी सव्वं पाव-कम्मं ज्ञोसेति ।

41. *Etthovarāe mehāvī savvaṁ pāva-kammaṁ jhoṣeti.*

41. The wise one who is immersed in Truth causes all *karmas* to wither away.

1. Cf. 2./125.

2. That is to say, stay in Truth, experience ecstasy in Truth, do not depart from Truth.

अणेगचित्त-पदं

४२. अणेगचित्ते खलु अयं पुरिसे, से केयणं अरिहए पूरइत्ताए ।

Aṇegacitta-padam

42. Apegacitte khalu ayam purise, se keyaṇaṁ arihae pūraittae.

Manifold Desires of Man

42. Man has many desires; he wants to fill up a sieve.

ANNOTATION 42. The author has compared desire with a sieve. Desire is impossible of fulfilment, just as a sieve is. The author of the *Cūrṇi* here quotes a verse —

*Na śayāno jayennidrām, na bhuñjāno jayet kṣudhām /
Na kāmamānaḥ kāmānām, lābheneha praśāmyati //*

One cannot conquer sleeplessness by sleep; hunger by food and desire by gain.

४३. से अण्णवहाए अण्णपरियावाए अण्णपरिग्गहाए, जणवयवहाए
जणवयपरियावाए जणवयपरिग्गहाए ।

43. Se aṇṇavahāe aṇṇapariyāvāe aṇṇapariggahāe, jaṇa-vayavahāe jaṇavayapariyāvāe jaṇavayapariggahāe.

43. (A man afflicted with desire indulges in actions) in order to kill, torture and subjugate others, and in order to perpetrate genocide, tyranny and imperialism.

संजमाचरण-पदं

४४. आसेवित्ता एतमट्ठं इच्चेवेगे समुट्ठिया, तम्हा तं बिइयं नो सेवए ।

Samjamācarana-padam

44. Āsevittā etamattham iccevege samutthiyā, tamhā taṁ biīyaṁ no sevāe.

Practice of Self-discipline

44. Some people first indulge in the aforesaid activities and then take to the practice of self-discipline. Therefore, they do not again indulge in these actions (viz. sensual pleasures, violence, etc.).

४५. निस्सारं पासिय णाणी, उववायं चवणं णच्चा । अणणं चर माहणे !

45. *Nissāraṃ pāsiya ṇāṇī, uvavāyaṃ cavaṇaṃ ṇaccā, aṇaṇṇaṃ cara māhaṇe!*

45. O wise one! see that sensual objects are worthless. Know that birth and death (are inevitable). Hence, O *māhana* (i. e. practitioner of non-violence) ! follow the unique (path of continence or salvation),

४६. से ण छणे ण छाणावए, छणंतं णाणुजाणइ ।

46. *Se ṇa chaṇe ṇa chaṇāvae, chaṇantaṃ ṇāṇujāṇai.*

46. He (the *māhana*) should neither himself cause violence to beings, nor get others to do so, nor should he approve of others doing it.

४७. निव्विद णंदि अरते पयासु ।

47. *Ñivvinda ṇaṇḍim arate payāsu.*

47. Always give a cold shoulder to enjoyment (of sensual pleasures). Do not get enamoured of women.

४८. अणोमदंसी णिसन्ने पावेहिं कम्महिं ।

48. *Aṇomadamsī ṇisanne pāvehiṃ kammehiṃ.*

48. One who perceives the Supreme Reality has no regard for sins.

४९. कोहाइमाणं हणिया य वीरे, लोभस्स पासे णिरयं महंतं ।
तम्हा हि वीरे विरते वहाओ, छिदेज्ज सोयं लहुभूय-गामी ॥

49. *Kohāimāṇaṃ haṇiyā ya vīre, lobhassa pāse ṇirayaṃ mahantaṃ.*

Tamhā hi vīre virate vahāo, chindejja soyaṃ lahubbhūya-gāmi..

49. The dauntless one should lay axe to anger and pride which are the vanguards of passions (*kaṣāya*) and should look upon avidity as a great hell. (Avidity is hell); that is why a dauntless one who moves unimpeded like a breeze, ceasing from killing (other beings), should destroy desires.

५०. गंथं परिणाय इहज्जेव वीरे, सोयं परिणाय चरेज्ज दंते ।
उम्मग्ग लद्धं इह माणवेहि, णो पाणिणं पाणे समारभेज्जासि ॥
— त्ति बेमि ।

50. *Gamthaṃ pariṇāya ihajjeva vīre, soyaṃ pariṇāya carejja dante.*

Ummagga laddhum iha māṇavehiṃ, ṇo pāṇiṇaṃ pāṇe samārabhejjāsi..

— Tti bemi.

50. A heroic subjugator of senses should move about, having instantly forsworn acquisitiveness and desire.

One can emerge out from the ocean of mundane existence in this very life of a human being. A *maṇi* should not indulge in violence after having obtained it (i. e. birth as a human being).

— I say so.

SECTION III

तद्वओ उद्देसो

Taio Uddeso

अज्झत्थ-पदं

५१. संधि लोगस्स जाणिता ।

*Ajjhattha-padam*51. *Samdhim logassa janitta.**Spiritual World*

51. Having comprehended the nature of the Self, a *muni* ought not to (wallow in stupor).

ANNOTATION 51. Consciousness is the innate characteristic of the Self. To be conscious of it means to be vigilant. Infatuation is not possible unless one is not enlivened by consciousness. Knowing that there is a loophole in the walls of the prison, it is not in the interests of the captive to wallow in stupor. Similarly it is not in the interest of a *sādhaka* to wallow in stupor when he comes to know that there is a way out of the prison of delusion.

५२. आयओ बहिया पास ।

52. *Āyao bahiyā pāsa.*

52. Perceive other living beings as equal to your Self.

५३. तम्हा ण हंता ण विघायए ।

53. *Tambā ṇa haṁtā ṇa vignāyae.*

53. (All beings like pleasure and dislike suffering;) therefore, a *muni* should neither himself kill other beings nor get others to do so.

५४. जमिणं अणमणावतिगिच्छाए पडिलेहाए ण करेइ पावं कम्म,
किं तत्थ मुणी कारणं सिया ?

54. Jamiṇaṃ aṇṇamaṇṇāvatigicchāe paḍilehāe ṇa karei pāvaṃ kammaṃ, kiṃ tattha muṇi kāraṇaṃ siyā ?

54. One does not commit sinful actions out of mutual apprehension or in others' presence. Is this an act befitting a sage ?

ANNOTATION 54. It is spiritual knowledge which induces one not to commit sin. A true spiritualist does not commit sin either in the presence of others or otherwise. However, the pragmatist does not commit sin in public, while he does so in privacy.

A disciple inquired of his preceptor, "O Venerable One! Would it be a true renunciation if one does not commit sin just because of fear, apprehension or shyness of others?"

The preceptor replied, "It is not true renunciation. One whose conscience is not induced to forswear sinful *karmas* is certainly not a sage. He is a sage only in name."

५५. समयं तत्थुवेहाए, अप्पणं विप्पसायए ।

55. *Samayaṃ tatthuvehāe, appāṇaṃ vip̐pasāyae.*

55. By practising equanimity in life one should gratify one's Self.

ANNOTATION 55. Equanimity means not to commit sinful action both in privacy and in public. Only that *sādhaka* can remain in a blissful state of mind (i. e. pure), whose conduct is uniform both publicly and privately. The conscience of a person, who keeps committing sins privately cannot remain really gratified — it becomes defiled.

५६. अणणपरमं नाणी, णो पमाए कयाइ वि ।

आयगुत्ते सया वीरे, जायामायाए जावए ॥

56. *Aṇaṇṇaparamam nāṇī, ño pamāe kayāi vi.*

Āyagutte sayā vīre, jāyāmāyāe jāvae..

56 A *munī* (sage) should not be slack even for a single moment in the effort to achieve the Supreme Truth (i. e. self-realization). He should perpetually subdue his sense and be bold. He should live on a limited diet.

५७. विरागं रुवेहि गच्छेज्जा, महया खुड्डएहि वा ।

57. *Virāgam rūvehim gacchejjā, mahayā khuddāe hi vā.*

57. One should develop indifference to all kinds of forms (substances) — both trivial and grand.

५८. आगतिं गतिं परिण्णाय, दोहि वि अंतेहि अदिस्समाणे ।

से ण छिज्जइ ण भिज्जइ ण उज्जइ, ण हम्मइ कंचणं सव्वलोए ॥

58. *Āgatiṃ gatiṃ pariṇṇāya, dohiṃ vi amtehiṃ adis-*
sa māṇe,

Se ṇa chijjai ṇa bhijjai ṇa dajjai, ṇa hammai
kaṃcaṇaṃ savvaloe..

58. Comprehending the (phenomenon of) departure (from one life) and arrival (into another life) (i. e. recurrent transmigration), one remains unexposed to the twin end-points (of attachment and aversion). In no part of the world, does he meet with mutilation, vulnerability, incineration or decapitation.

ANNOTATION 58. *Yasya hastau ca pādau ca, jihvāgram*
ca susamīyatam/
Indriyāṇi ca guptāni, rājā tasya karoti kim?//

Even a king cannot inflict any harm on a person who has all his senses i. e. hands, feet and the tip of the tongue in full control.

५९. अवरेण पुर्वं न सरंति एगे, किमस्सतीतं ? किं वागमिस्सं ?

भासंति एगे इह माणवा उ, जमस्सतीतं आगमिस्सं ॥

59. *Avareṇa purvvaṃ na saraṃti ege, kimassatītaṃ?*
kim vāgamiṣṣaṃ?

Bhāsaṃti ege iha māṇavā u, jamassatītaṃ āgamiṣṣaṃ.

59. Some people do not contemplate the Past and the Future — what was the Past of this? What will be the Future of this? Some persons assert that which was the Past of the soul will be its Future.

६०. नातीतमट्ठं न य आगमिस्सं, अट्ठं नियच्छंति तहागया उ ।

विधूत-कप्पे एयाणुपस्सी, निज्जोसइत्ता खवगे महेसी ॥

60. *Nātītamattṭhaṃ na ya āgamiṣṣaṃ, attṭhaṃ niyacchamti*
tahāgayā u /

Vidhūta-kabbe eyāṇupaṣṣī, nījjhosattā khavage
maheṣī //

60. *Tathāgatas* are indifferent to the things of Past and Future.

The great seers who observe the *Dhuta*¹ code of conduct, annihilate (the *karma*-body) by attenuating it through becoming observer of the Present.

ANNOTATIONS 59-60. These aphorisms can be explained from both points of view, viz. philosophical point of view and view-point of *sādhana*.

The philosophical interpretation is as follows:

Some philosophers do not believe in the law of causality with respect to the past and future of a soul.

Some other philosophers, on the other hand, contend that what the past of soul was will be its future also.

The *Tathāgatas* do not recognise the past and the future of a thing.

A great Seer scrutinizes all these schools of thought. Doing so, he observes the higher conduct prescribed as

1. See 6/24.

dhuta (to be described in the chapter VI). Thereby attenuating the *karma* body, he ultimately gets rid of it.

From the point of view of *sadhanā*, these aphorisms can be interpreted thus:

There are some *sādhakas* who neither give heed to the memory of the sensual pleasures of the past nor desire for future pleasures. Some other *sādhakas* assert that the past was not satiated with self-indulgence, and therefore, it follows that the future also would not be satiated with it.

It is the memory of the past pleasures and the desires for the future ones that breed attachment, aversion and delusion. That is why, the *Tathāgatas* (i. e. the aspirants who strive for the attainment of the state of Perfect Equanimity) do not head the matters of the Past and Future—they do not allow such state of mind to be created as is filled with attachment and aversion.

One whose conduct is such as to pacify or get rid of attachment, aversion and delusion is called as a "*vidhūta-kalpa*" of "one observing the *dhuta* code of conduct".

One who is *tathāgata* and *vidhūta-kalpa* is *eyānupassī*, which can be interpreted in three ways:

1. *Etadanupaśyī* — One who observes the realities happening in the present only.
2. *Ekānupaśyī* — One who observes the soul as 'solitary'.
3. *Ejānupaśyī* — One who observes the vibrations (of the *karma* body) or transformations taking place on account of the observance of the *dhuta* code of conduct.

Such a *sādhaka* annihilates the *karma* body by remaining free from attachment and aversion.

६१. का अरई ? के आणंदे ? एत्थंपि अगहे चरे ।

सब्बं हासं परिच्चज्ज, आलीण-गुत्तो परिव्वए ॥

61. *Kā araī ? Ke āṇande ? Etthaṃpi aggahe care /*

Savvaṃ hāsaṃ pariccajja, ālīṇa-gutto parivvāe //

61. (To a *sādhaka*) what is ennui? And what is pleasure? He should not respond to either of these alternatives.

Abandoning all kinds of (frivolities such as) laughter,

etc. and subjugating the senses and disciplining the mind speech and body, he should lead the life of an ascetic.

६२. पुरिसा ! तुममेव तुमं मित्तं, किं बहिया मित्तमिच्छसि ?

62. *Purisā! tumameva tumam mittam, kim bahiyā mitta micchasi ?*

62. O man! You are your own friend. (Then) why seek¹ one outside?

६३. जं जाणेज्जा उच्छालइयं, तं जाणेज्जा दूरालइयं ।
जं जाणेज्जा दूरालइयं, तं जाणेज्जा उच्छालइयं ॥

63. *Jam jāṇejjā uccālaiyam, taṁ jāṇejjā dūrālaiyam /*
Jam jāṇejjā dūrālaiyam, taṁ jāṇejjā uccālaiyam //

63. One, whom you consider to be devoted to the Supreme Reality, know him to be devoted to that which is quite remote from (lust).

And one, whom you consider to be devoted to that which is quite remote from (lust), know him to be devoted to the Supreme Reality².

६४. पुरिसा ! अत्ताणमेव अभिणिगिज्ज, एवं दुक्खा पमोक्खसि ।

64. *Purisā! attāṇameva abhinigijja, evaṁ dukkhā pamokkhasi.*

64. O man! grasp the Soul. This is how you will be emancipated from sufferings.

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism can be done as follows:

You are your own friend, then ~~why~~ long for external friend?

2. The alternate translation of this aphorism can be done as follows:

One, whom you consider to be devoted to the Supreme Reality — know him to be devoted to the Highest (aim) and vice-versa.

ANNOTATION 64. The word soul is used here for consciousness, mind and body. The meaning of the word *abhinigraha* is — to go near and grasp. One who goes near his mind, grasps it, knows it and observes it, gets rid of all his miseries. To know intimately is to grasp. Effort to control generates a reaction. It does not lead to control. Knowledge cannot be achieved by it. In the matter of religion, *nigraha* is nothing but to know the Truth.

६५. पुरिसा ! सच्चमेव समभिजाणाहि ।

65. Purisā! saccameva samabhi jāṇāhi.

65. O Self! follow the Truth and Truth alone.

६६. सच्चस्स आणाए उवट्ठिए से मेहावी मारं तरति ।

66. Saccassa āṇāe uvaṭṭhie se mehāvī māraṃ tarati.

66. A wise person who is always at the beck and call of Truth transcends Death (or sensualities).

६७. सहिए धम्ममादाय, सेयं समणुपस्सति ।

67. Sahie dhammamādāya, seyaṃ samāṇupassati.

67. An aspirant after Truth realizes beatitude after espousing righteousness.

६८. दुहओ जीवियस्स, परिवंदण-माणण-पूयणाए, जसि एगे पमादेति ।

68. Duhao jīviyassa, parivaṇḍaṇa-māṇaṇa-pūyaṇāe, jaṃsi ege pamādeṃti.

68. Being overwhelmed by attachment and aversion, man (struggles) for present life and for fame, honour and self-glorification. Even some *sādhakas* are stupefied by them¹.

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism can be done as follows:

Man (indulges in actions) in order to achieve fame, honour and self-glorification both in this world as well as in the one beyond. Even some *sādhakas* are stupefied by them.

६९. सहिए दुक्खमत्ताए पुट्ठो णो जंसाए ।

69. *Sahie dukkhamattāe puṭṭho ṇo jhaṁjhāe.*

69. Truth-seeking *sādhaka* should not feel agitated on being sullied by the number of vicissitudes.

७०. पासिमं दविए लोयालोय-पवंचाओ मुच्चइ ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

70. *Pāsimaṁ davie loyāloya-pavaṁcāo muccai.*

— Tti bemi.

70. One who perceives (Truth) and has lulled all his passions becomes liberated from the visible worldly snares.

— I say so.

SECTION IV

चउत्थो उद्देसो

Cauttho Uddeso

कसायविरह-पदं

७१. से वंता कोहं च, माणं च, मायं च, लोभं च ।

*Kasāyavirai-badam*71. Se vaṃtā kohaṃ ca, māṇaṃ ca, māyaṃ ca,
lobhaṃ ca.*Riddance of Kaṣāya*71. A *sādhaka* is he who disgorges anger, pride, deceit
and greed from himself.

७२. एयं पासगस्स दंसणं उवरयसत्थस्स पलियंतकरस्स ।

72. Eyaṃ pāsagassa daṃsaṇaṃ uvarayasatthassa
paliyaṃtakarassa.72. This is the philosophy of a true abstainer from vio-
lence and a seer who has removed the veils (of the
karmas obscuring the perspicacity).

७३. आयाणं [णिसिद्धा ?] सगडब्धि ।

73. Āyāṇaṃ (ṇisiddhā ?) sagaḍabbhi.

73. Only he who obstructs the ultimate causes of the
(*karmas*) (viz. attachment and aversion), is able to
smash his own (*karmas*).

७४. जे एगं जाणइ, से सब्बं जाणइ,
जे सब्बं जाणइ, से एगं जाणइ ।

74. Je egaṃ jāṇai, se savvaṃ jāṇai,
Je savvaṃ jāṇai, se egaṃ jāṇai.

74. One who cognizes one cognizes all.
One who cognizes all cognizes one.

ANNOTATION 74. So developed is the knowledge of a person who has cognized the tri-temporal modes of one substance that he is capable of cognizing all substances and *vice-versa*.

The substances have two kinds of modes:

- (1) inherent and
- (2) externally derived.

Unless both of these are fully comprehended, even a single entity cannot be fully known. The comprehension of one entity through both kinds of modes leads one to the comprehension of all entities.

The spiritual significance of this *sūtra* can be expressed thus:

One who knows the soul knows everything, and *vice-versa*.

७५. सब्बतो पमत्तस्स भयं, सब्बतो अप्पमत्तस्स नत्थि भयं ।

75. Savvato pamattassa bhayaṃ, savvato appamattassa natthi bhayaṃ.

75. An infatuated one feels apprehensions from all directions, while a self-possessed one has no apprehension from any direction.

७६. जे एगं नामे, से बहुं नामे,
जे बहुं नामे, से एगं नामे ।

76. Je egaṃ nāme, se bahuṃ nāme,
Je bahuṃ nāme, se egaṃ nāme.

76. He who vanquishes one vanquishes many;
And he who vanquishes many, vanquishes one¹.

७७. दुक्खं लोयस्स जाणित्ता ।

77. *Dukkham loyassa jānittā.*

77. Having comprehended the nature of misery of the world, (one should lay axe to its very roots viz. *kaṣṣāya* (passions)).

७८. वंता लोगस्स संजोग, जंति वीरा महाजाणं ।

परेण परं जंति, नावकंखंति जीवियं ॥

78. *Vanta logassa saṃjogam, janti vīra mahājāṇam.*
Parena param janti, nāvakaṃkhamti jīviyaṃ.

78. The undaunted *sādhakas* who (cheerfully) turn their back upon worldly associations attain the Great Path (salvation or the Path to salvation). They continue to make progress. They do not crave for (intemperate) life any more.

७९. एगं विगिच्चमाणे पुढो विगिच्चइ,
पुढो विगिच्चमाणे एगं विगिच्चइ ।

79. *Egaṃ vigimcamāṇe puḍho vigimcai,*
Puḍho vigimcamāṇe egaṃ vigimcai.

79. One who forswears one forswears many;
One who forswears many forswears one.

ANNOTATIONS 76-79. These two aphorisms can be interpreted in several ways from different points of views.

८०. सद्धी अण्णे मेहावी ।

80. *Saddhī aṇṇe mehāvī.*

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism can be done as follows:

One who is single-natured is many-natured and vice-versa.

80. He who reposes his (entire) faith in the instruction (of the *Tīrthaṅkaras*) is a (really) wise one.

८१. लोणं च आणाए अभिसमेच्चा अकुतोभयं ।

81. *Logaṃ ca āṇāe abhisameccā akutobhayaṃ.*

81. One having known the world (of passions) through the Instruction (of the *Tīrthaṅkaras*) becomes intrepid (i. e. he has no apprehension from any direction).

८२. अत्थि सत्थं परेण परं, णत्थि असत्थं परेण परं ।

82. *Atthi sattham pareṇa param, natthi asattham pareṇa param.*

82. There is (always) a weapon mightier than another one; whereas there is no weapon mightier than the state of disarmament.

ANNOTATION 82. Malice, hatred, wrath, etc. are various weapons, whereas friendliness, forgiveness, tolerance, etc. are means of disarmament. Different weapons have different degrees of destructiveness. As for example, X is less inimical to A, more inimical to B, still more inimical to C and so on and so forth. Thus does the intensity of enmity of X towards other persons vary. This shows that the edges of weapons have different degrees of bluntness or sharpness.

Violence is not only committed by the use of weapons but it itself is a sort of weapon. Violence means lack of self-discipline. One whose senses and mind are not under his control is a weapon to every living being. Abstinence from violence is a non-weapon i. e. a means of disarmament. One's own restraint towards all living beings is non-violence. One whose senses and mind are under his control does not act as a 'weapon' to all living beings.

८३. जे मोहबंसी से माणबंसी जे माणबंसी से मायबंसी ।

जे मायबंसी से लोभबंसी जे लोभबंसी से पेज्जबंसी ।

जे पेज्जबंसी से दोसबंसी जे दोसबंसी से मोहबंसी ।

जे मोहवंसी से गबभवंसी, जे गबभवंसी से जम्मवंसी ।
 जे जम्मवंसी से मारवंसी, जे मारवंसी से निरयवंसी ।
 जे निरयवंसी से तिरियवंसी, जे तिरियवंसी से दुक्खवंसी ।

83. *Je kohadaṃsī se māṇadaṃsī, je māṇadaṃsī se māyadaṃsī.*

Je māyadaṃsī se lobhadaṃsī, je lobhadaṃsī se pejjadaṃsī.

Je pejjadaṃsī se dosadaṃsī, je dosadaṃsī se mohadaṃsī.

Je mohadaṃsī se gabbhadaṃsī, je gabbhadaṃsī se jammadaṃsī.

Je jammadaṃsī se māradaṃsī, je māradaṃsī se nirayadaṃsī.

Je nirayadaṃsī se tiriyaṃsī, je tiriyaṃsī se dukkhadaṃsī.

83. One who harbours anger harbours conceit;
 one who harbours conceit harbours deceit;
 one who harbours deceit harbours avidity;
 one who harbours avidity harbours attachment;
 one who harbours attachment harbours aversion;
 one who harbours aversion harbours delusion;
 one who harbours delusion is conceived in the womb;
 one who is conceived in the womb is born;
 one who is born dies;
 one who dies enters into the Inferno;
 one who enters into the Inferno enters into the animal existence;
 one who enters into the animal existence suffers agony.

८४. से मेहावी अभिनिवट्टेज्जा कोहं च, माणं च, मायं च, लोहं च,
 पेज्जं च, दोसं च, मोहं च, गबभं च, जम्मं च, मारं च, नरयं च,
 तिरियं च, दुक्खं च ।

84. Se mehāvī abhinivattejjā kohaṃ ca, mānaṃ ca,
māyaṃ ca, lohaṃ ca, pejjaṃ ca, dosaṃ ca,
mohaṃ ca, gabbhaṃ ca, jammaṃ ca, māraṃ ca,
naragaṃ ca, tiriyaṃ ca, dukkhaṃ ca.

84. A wise one should get rid of anger, conceit, deceit, avidity, attachment, aversion, delusion, existence in the womb, birth, death, the Inferno, animal existence and agony.

८५. एयं पासगस्स दंसणं उवरयसत्थस्स पलियंतकरस्स ।

85. Eyaṃ pāsagassa daṃsaṇaṃ uvarayasatthassa
paliyaṃtakarassa.

85. This is the philosophy of a true abstainer from violence and a seer who has removed the veils (of the *karmas* obscuring the perspicacity).

८६. आयाणं णिसिद्धा सगडब्धि ।

86. Āyānaṃ nisiddhā sagadabbhi.

86. Only he who obstructs the ultimate causes (of the *karmas*) (viz. attachment and aversion) is able to smash his own (*karmas*).

८७. किमत्थि उवाही पासगस्स ण विज्जइ ?

णत्थि ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

87. Kimatthi uvāhī pāsagassa ṇa vijjai ?
Naṭthi.

— Tti bemi

87. Does a seer (of Truth) ever has any extraneous impositions?
No (he has) none.

— I say so.

CHAPTER IV

THE TRUTH

चउत्थं अज्झयणं
सम्मत्तं

CAUTTHAMĀ AJJHAYANAM

SAMMATTAM

SECTION I

पढमो उद्देशो

Padhamo Uddeso

सम्मावाए अहिंसा-पदं

१. से बेमि—जे अईया, जे य पडुप्पन्ना, जे य आगमेस्सा अरहंता
 भगवंतो ते सव्वे एवमाइक्खंति, एवं भासंति, एवं पण्णवेति, एवं
 पख्वेति—सव्वे पाणा सव्वे भूता सव्वे जीवा सव्वे सत्ता ण हंतव्वा,
 ण अज्जावेयव्वा, ण परिघेतव्वा, ण परितावेयव्वा, ण उद्देवयव्वा ।

Sammāvāe ahimsā-padam

1. Se bemi—je āiyā, je ya paḍuppanṇā, je ya āgamessa
 arahamntā bhagavaṃto te savve evamaikkhamnti, evaṃ
 bhāsamnti, evaṃ paṇṇaveṃti, evaṃ parūveṃti—savve
 pāṇā savve bhūtā savve jīvā savve sattā na haṃtavvā,
 na ajjāveyavvā, na parighetavvā, na paritāveyavvā,
 na uddaveyavvā.

The True Doctrine: Non-violence

1. I say —

The *Arhats* (Venerable Ones) of the past, those of the present and the future narrate thus, discourse thus, proclaim thus, and asseverate thus:

One should not injure, subjugate, enslave, torture or kill any animal, living being, organism or sentient being.

२. एस धम्मं सुद्धं णिइए सासए समिच्च लोयं खेयण्णेहि पवेइए ।

2. Esa dhamme suddhe ñiie sāsaē samicca loyaṃ
 kheyannehiraṃ paveie.

2. This Doctrine of Non-violence (viz. *Ahimsā-dharma*) is immaculate, immutable and eternal.

The Self-realised *Arhats*, having comprehended the world (of living beings), have propounded this (Doctrine).

३. तं जहा—उट्ठिएसु वा, अणुट्ठिएसु वा ।
 उवट्ठिएसु वा, अणुवट्ठिएसु वा ।
 उवरयदंडेसु वा, अणुवरयदंडेसु वा ।
 सोवहिएसु वा, अणोवहिएसु वा ।
 संजोगरएसु वा, असंजोगरएसु वा ।

3. *Taṃ jahā—utthiesu vā, aṇuṭṭhiesu vā;*
uvatthiesu vā, anuvatthiesu vā;
uvarayadaṇḍesu vā, aṇuvavarayadaṇḍesu vā;
sovahiesu vā, aṇovahiesu vā;
saṃjogaraesu vā, asaṃjogaraesu vā.

3. (The *Arhats* have propounded the Doctrine of Non-violence for one and all, equally for) those who are intent on practising it and those who are not;
 those who are desirous to practise it and those who are not,
 those who have eschewed violence and those who have not;
 those who are acquisitive and those who are not;
 those who are deeply engrossed in worldly ties and those who are not.

४. तच्च चेयं तथा चेयं, अस्मि चेयं पवुक्कह ।

4. *Taccam ceyam tathā ceyam, assim ceyam pavuccai.*

4. This Doctrine of *Ahimsā* is Truth. It is truly axiomatic. It is rightly enunciated here (i.e. in the Teachings of the *Arhats*).

५. तं आइइत्तु ण निहे ण निक्खिवे, जाणित्तु धम्मं जहा तथा ।

5. *Taṃ āiittu ṇa nihe ṇa nikkhivē, jāñittu dhammaṃ jahā tathā.*

5. Having accepted this (Great vow of Non-violence), one should neither vitiate it nor forsake it.

Comprehending the true spirit of the Doctrine, (one should practise it till one's last breath).

६. दिट्ठेहि णिव्वेयं गच्छेज्जा ।

6. *Diṭṭhehiṃ ṇivveyaṃ gacchejjā.*

6. He should be dispassionate towards sensual objects.

७. णो लोगस्सेसणं चरे ।

7. *No logassesanaṃ care.*

7. He should refrain from worldly desires.

ANNOTATION 7. The three main worldly desires are — craving for son, wealth and longevity. A *sādhaka* should not cherish these as well as such other worldly desires.

८. जस्स णत्थि इमा नाई, अण्णा तस्स कओ सिया ?

8. *Jassa natthi imā nāī, aṇṇā tassa kao siyā?*

8. How can one who is bereft of the knowledge of this (Doctrine of *Ahimsā*), have the knowledge of other (Doctrines)?

९. दिट्ठं सुयं मयं विण्णायं, जमेयं परिकहिज्जइ ।

9. *Diṭṭhaṃ suyaṃ mayaṃ vinṇāyaṃ, jameyaṃ parikahijjai.*

9. This (Doctrine of Non-violence) which is being expounded has been perceived, heard, deliberated upon and thoroughly understood.

ANNOTATION 9. Bhagavān Mahāvīra has asserted that everyone is endowed with the faculty of independent reasoning. On the basis of this principle he said — "Search for the truth yourself."

He did not insist that the Doctrine of Non-violence should be practised because it has been enunciated by him. He

averred: "Whatever I say about the doctrine has been directly perceived by the Seers, heard from the preceptors, thrashed out by profound reasoning and thoroughly comprehended through contemplation."

The process of the development of the knowledge consists not in accepting what is propounded by the Seers through direct perception by faith alone, but in hearing, profound reasoning and thorough comprehension.

१०. समेमाणा पलेमाणा, पुणो-पुणो जातिं पक्खेति ।

10. *Samemāṇā palemāṇā, puṇo-puṇo jātiṃ pakappeṃti.*

10. Those who resort to and remain engrossed in violence suffer (the miseries of) transmigration again and again.

११. अहो य राओ य जयमाणे, वीरे सया आगयपणाणे ।

पमत्ते बहिया पास, अपमत्ते सया परक्कमेज्जासि ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

11. *Aho ya rāo ya jayamāṇe, vīre sayā āgayapaṇṇāṇe; Pamatte bahiyā pāsa, appamatte sayā parakkamejjāsi.*

— Tti bemi .

11. O *Sādhaka*! You, who are endeavouring day and night; discern that those who are stupefied are outside the sphere of the Doctrine (of Non-violence). You should, therefore, be alert and always sedulous.

—I say so.

SECTION II

बीओ उद्देशो

Bīo Uddeso

सम्मनाने अहिंसापरिक्षा-पदं

१२. जे आसवा ते परिस्सवा,
 जे परिस्सवा ते आसवा,
 जे अणासवा ते अपरिस्सवा,
 जे अपरिस्सवा ते, अणासवा—
 एए पए संबुज्झमाणे, लोयं च आणाए अभिसमेच्चा पुढो पवेइयं ।

Sammānāṇe ahimsāparikkhā-badaṃ

12. Je āsavā te parissavā,
 Je parissavā te āsavā,
 Je aṇāsavā te aparissavā,
 Je aparissavā te aṇāsavā — ee pae saṃbujjhamāṇe,
 loyam ca āṇae abhisameceā puḍho paveiyam.

The Knowledge: Critique of the Doctrine of Ahimsā

12. *Āśravas* (i. e. the causes of the influx of *karmas*) are themselves *pariśravas* (i. e. the causes of the efflux of *karmas*).

Pariśravas are themselves *āśravas*.

Anāśravas (i. e. which are not the causes of the influx of *karmas*) are themselves *aparīśravas* (i. e. which are not the causes of the efflux of *karmas*).

Aparīśravas are themselves *anāśravas*.

One who comprehends the permutations of these terms, having known the exhaustively expounded world

of (sentient beings) through the teachings, (should not become susceptible to the *āśravas*).

ANNOTATION 12. Four different permutations obtain from the terms *āśravas*, *pariśravas*, *anāśravas* and *apariśravas*. In the original text, the first and the fourth one are dealt with. The remaining two (i.e. the second and the third ones) are as follows:

Āśravas are themselves *apariśravas*.

Apariśravas are themselves *āśravas*.

Anāśravas are themselves *pariśravas*.

Pariśravas are themselves *anāśravas*.

The present aphorism can be interpreted from various points of views:-

1. *Subject* (i.e. Soul): The first permutation is common. Usually every soul is open to the influx as well as the efflux of *karmas*.

The second permutation is void, because influx is necessarily followed by efflux.

The third permutation holds good in the case of the state of the soul which is completely devoid of any vibrations. A *muni*, in such a state has no influx of *karmas*, but has only their efflux, i.e., outflow of accumulated *karmas*.

The fourth permutation concerns the liberated soul. He transcends both the influx and the efflux of *karmas*.

II. *Cause*: For an unenlightened soul, all acquirements of worldly desires are the source of *āśravas*. For an enlightened soul, on the other hand, these things themselves lead to *pariśravas*. On the other hand *arhat* (i.e. the Venerable One) or the *muni* becomes the cause of *pariśrava* for the enlightened and that of *āśrava* for the unenlightened.

It follows from the above that there are as many *āśravas* as there are *pariśravas*.

To quote —

Yathā prakarā yāvantah, saṁsārāvesā -hetavaḥ.

Tāvantas tad viparyāsād nirvāṇasukha -hetavāḥ.

i.e. there are as such and as many causes of bondage in this world as there are those of emancipation.

III Operation: The movements of an undisciplined person lead to *āśrava*, whereas those of the disciplined one lead to *pariśrava*.

The present aphorism underlines the non-absolutistic nature of objects (or Reality). We cannot explain things, events or concepts in absolute terms.

Ācārya Amitagati has mentioned this in his treatise *Yogasāra*:

*Ajñānī badhyate yatra, sevyamāne(a)kṣagocare;
Tatraiva mucyate jñānī, paśyatāścāryamidṛśam.*

i. e. just think how paradoxical it is that whereas the objects of sense organs put an ignoramus in fetters of *karmas*, they become a vehicle for the emancipation of the sages.

IV *Modus Operandi of Karma*: Those who attract the *karmas* cause their bondage;

those who cause the bondage of *karmas* attract *karmas*;
those who do not attract *karmas* do not cause their bondage;

those who do not cause the bondage of *karmas* do not attract them.

१३. आघाद नाणो इह माणवानं संसारपडिवन्नाणं संबुज्जमाणानं
विण्णानपत्तानं ।

13. *Āghāi nāṇi iha māṇavānaṃ saṃsārapaḍivannāṇaṃ
saṃbujjhamāṇāṇaṃ viṇṇānapattāṇaṃ.*

13. The sages preach the Religion to those people who (though) being carried away by the (current of) transmigration, (because of their obscure perception), are desirous of getting enlightenment and are possessed of knowledge.

१४. अट्ठा वि संता अदुवा पमत्ता ।

14. *Attā vi saṃtā aduvā pṃmattā.*

14. Those who are afflicted (with privation) as well as

infatuated (with luxury) (do not accept the way of righteousness)¹.

१५. अहासच्चमिणं ति वेमि ।

15. Ahāsaccaminam ti bemi.

15. This is the real Truth — so do I aver.

१६. नागागमो मच्चुमुहस्स अत्थि, इच्छापणीया वंकाणिकेया ।
कालगहीआ णिच्चए णिविट्ठा, पुढो-पुढो जाइं पक्कपयंति ।

16. *Nānāgamo maccumuhassa atthi, icchāpaṇīyā vaṁ-*
kaṇīkeyā.
Kālaggahīā ṇicce ṇivittā, puḍho-puḍho jāim
pakappayānti..

16. Though the Death shows its (ugly) face through diverse ways to all, some people are driven by the Desire and become tabernacle of Deceit. In spite of being held in the (jaws of) Death, they continue to be engaged in amassing riches (constantly keeping their plans to act righteously in abeyance). Such people are born (and reborn) in different genera.

१७. इहमेगेसि तत्थ-तत्थ संथवो भवति ।
अहोववाइए फासे पडिसवेदयंति ।

17. Ihamegesim tattha-tattha saṁthavo bhavati.
Ahovavāie phāse padisaṁvedayaṁti.

17. Some people, having come into contact with diverse (heretic) faiths² (profess them, which lead them to indulge in the actions causing influx of *karma*). Thereby, they suffer the miseries of the nether world (i. e. hell).

1. The alternate translation will be: Those who do not abide by the Religion are either miserable or infatuated.

2. The faiths which do not consider violence as sinful.

१८. चिदं कूरेहि कम्मोहि, चिदं परिचिदुति ।
अचिदं कूरेहि कम्मोहि, नो चिदं परिचिदुति ।

18. *Ciṭṭhaṃ kūrehiṃ kammehiṃ, ciṭṭhaṃ pariciṭṭhati.*
Acīṭṭhaṃ kūrehiṃ kammehiṃ, nō ciṭṭhaṃ pariciṭṭhati.

18. One who preoccupies himself with intensely cruel acts will be reborn in genera where intense pains are inflicted. One who does not preoccupy himself with intensely cruel acts will not be reborn in intensely painful genera.

१९. एगे वयंति अदुवा वि णाणी ?
णाणी वयंति अदुवा वि एगे ?

19. *Ege vayaṃti aduṇā vi ṇāṇī ?*
ṇāṇī vayaṃti aduṇā vi ege ?

19. Is this (doctrine) averred by other philosophers¹ or by the *Arhats*? Is this (doctrine) averred by the *Arhats* or by the other philosophers too?

1. The question whether the consequences of cruelty propounded in the preceding aphorism (no. 18) is a unanimous doctrine or not is mooted in the present aphorism. The conjunction *aduṇā* (*athavā*) makes the present sentence an interrogative one — Whether this doctrine is propounded only by the *Arhats* or others also? This query assumes two forms:

The first form of the query is:

In propounding this doctrine, do the *Arhats* follow other philosophers?

The second form of the query is:

Whether other philosophers imitate the *Arhats*?

The answer to this query is given in the succeeding aphorism.

२०. आवांती केआवांती लोयंसि समणा य माहणा य पुढो विवादं
वदन्ति—से दिट्ठं च णे, सुयं च णे, मयं च णे, विण्णायं च णे,
उड्ढं अहं तिरियं विसासु सव्वतो सुपडिलेहियं च णे—“सव्वे
पाणा सव्वे भूया सव्वे जीवा सव्वे सत्ता हंतव्वा, अज्जावेयव्वा
परिधेतव्वा, परियावेयव्वा, उद्देव्यव्वा ।
एत्थ वि जाणह नत्थित्थ दोसो ।”

20. *Āvaṃti keāvaṃti loyaṃsi samaṇā ya māhaṇā ya
puḍho vivādaṃ vadaṃti—se diṭṭhaṃ ca ñe, suyaṃ
ca ñe, mayaṃ ca ñe, vinnāyaṃ ca ñe, uddhaṃ
ahaṃ tiriyaṃ disāsu savvato supaḍilehiyaṃ ca ñe—
“savve pāṇā savve bhūyā savve jīvā savve sattā’
haṃtāvā, ajjāveyāvā, parighetāvā, pariyāve-
yāvā, uddaveyāvā.
Ettha vi jāṇaha ṇatthittha doṣo.”*

20. Some *Sramaṇas* and *Brāhmaṇas* put forth mutually
contradictory doctrines in the field (of philosophy).

Some of them contend: "The following doctrine has
been perceived, heard, reflected upon, thoroughly,
comprehended and scrutinized in all directions — up-
wards, downwards and lateral:

'All animals, living beings, organisms and senti-
ent creatures may be injured, governed, enslaved,
tortured and killed.'

Know that there is no sin in committing violence".

२१. अणारियवयणमेयं ।

21. *Anāriyavayaṇameyaṃ.*

21. This (approval of violence) is the doctrine of the ig-
noble ones.

२२. तत्थ जे ते आरिया, ते एवं वयासी—से दुदिट्ठं च भे, दुस्सुयं च
भे, दुम्मयं च भे, दुव्विण्णायं च भे, उड्ढं अहं तिरियं विसासु
सव्वतो दुप्पडिलेहियं च भे, जणं तुब्भे एवमाइक्खह, एवं भासह,
एवं परूवेह, एवं पण्णवेह—“सव्वे पाणा सव्वे भूया सव्वे जीवा
सव्वे सत्ता हंतव्वा, अज्जावेयव्वा, परिधेतव्वा, परियावेयव्वा.

उद्देयव्वा ।

एत्थ वि जाणह नत्थित्थ दोसो ।"

22. Tattha je te āriyā, te evaṃ vayasī, — se duddittham ca bhe, dussuyam ca bhe, dummayam ca bhe, duvvin-
ṇāyam ca bhe, uddham aham tiriyaṃ disūsu savvato
duppadilehiyam ca bhe, janṇam tubbhe evamāik-
khaha, evaṃ bhāsaha, evaṃ parūveha, evaṃ
pañṇaveha — "savve paṇā savve bhūyā savve jīvā
savve sattā haṃtavvā, ajjāveyavvā, parighetavvā,
pariyāveyavvā, uddaveyavvā,
Ettha vi jāṇaha natthittha doso."

22. Those who are Noble Ones assert thus: "O Protago-
nists of the doctrine of violence! Whatever you have
perceived, heard, reflected upon, thoroughly compre-
hended and scrutinized in all directions — upwards,
downwards and lateral, is fallacious, and hence, you
say, speak, assert and preach: 'All animals, living
beings, organisms and sentient creatures may be in-
jured, governed, enslaved, tortured and killed: Know
that there is no sin in committing violence.'

२३. वयं पुण एवमाइक्खामो, एवं भासामो, एवं परूवेमो, एवं पण-
वेमो— "सव्वे पाणा सव्वे भूया सव्वे जीवा सव्वे सत्ता न हंतव्वा,
ण अज्जावेयव्वा, ण परिघेतव्वा, ण परियावेयव्वा, ण उद्देयव्वा
एत्थ वि जाणह नत्थित्थ दोसो ।"

23. Vayam puna evamāikkhāmo, evaṃ bhāsāmo, evaṃ
parūvemo, evaṃ pañṇavemo — "savve paṇā savve
bhūyā savve jīvā savve sattā na haṃtavvā, na
ajjāveyavvā, na parighetavvā, na pariyāveyavvā,
na uddaveyavvā,
Ettha vi jāṇaha natthittha doso."

23. "We, on the other hand, say, speak, assert and
preach: 'All animals, living beings, organisms and
sentient creatures should not be injured, governed,
enslaved, tortured and killed.' Know that it is non-
violence which is (completely) free from sin."

२४. आरियवयणमेयं ।

24. Āriyavayaṇameyaṃ.

24. This (approval of non-violence) is the doctrine of the Noble ones.

२५. पुत्रं निकाय समयं पत्तये पुच्छिस्सामो—हंभो पावादुया ! किं भे सायं दुक्खं उदाहु असायं ?

25. Puvvaṃ nikāya samayaṃ patteyaṃ pucchissāmo—
haṃbho pāvādūyā! Kiṃ bhe sāyaṃ dukkhaṃ
udāhu asāyaṃ?

25. First, we shall ask (each philosopher) to enunciate his own doctrine and then put the following question to him: "O philosophers! Is suffering pleasing to you or painful?"

२६. समिया पडिवन्ने यावि एवं बूया—सव्वेसि पाणाणं सव्वेसि
भूयाणं सव्वेसि जीवाणं सव्वेसि सत्ताणं असायं अपरिणिव्वानं
महब्भयं दुक्खं । —ति बेमि ।

26. Samiyā paḍivanne yāvi evaṃ būyā—savvesiṃ pāṇā-
ṇaṃ savvesiṃ bhūyāṇaṃ savvesiṃ jīvāṇaṃ savve-
siṃ sattāṇaṃ asāyaṃ aparinivvāṇaṃ, mahabbhayaṃ
dukkhaṃ.

— Tti bemi.

26. "(If you say that suffering is pleasing to you, your answer is contradictory to what is self-evident. And if you, on the other hand, say that suffering is painful to you, then) your answer is valid. Then, we want to tell you that just as suffering is painful to you, in the same way it is painful, disquieting and terrifying to all animals, living beings, organisms and sentient beings."

— I say so.

SECTION III

तइओ उद्देसो

Taio Uddeso

सम्मातव-पदं

२७. उवेह एणं बहिया य लोयं, से सव्वलोगंसि जे केइ विण्णु ।
अणुवीइ पास णिक्खित्तदंढा, जे केइ सत्ता पलियं चयंति ॥

Sammātava-padam

27. Uveha enaṃ bahiyā ya loyaṃ, se savaḷogaṃsi je kei
vinnū.
Aṇwūi pāsa nikkhittadaṇḍā, je kei sattā paliyaṃ
cayamti.

Right Austerities

27. Turn your back on such philosophical tenets which do not accept (the doctrine of non-violence). By doing so one becomes (truly) learned in the field (of philosophy). Reflect and observe that only those who eschew violence are able to annihilate the *karmas*.

२८. नरा मुयच्चा धम्मविदु त्ति अंजू ।

28. Narā muyaccā dhammavidu tti aṅjū.

28. Only those who are free from bodily attachment¹ can apprehend the Religion, and only those who apprehend the Religion are ingenuous.

1. *Muyaccā* (*Mrtārca*): The word *arcā* has two meanings body and anger. One who is completely indifferent to bodily adornments or one whose passions are dead is called '*mrtārca*'.

२६. आरंभजं दुक्खमिणंति जञ्जा, एवमाहु समत्तदंसिणो ।

29. *Ārambhajam dukkhamiṇamti naccā, evamāhu*
'samattadaṃsino

29. Realizing that suffering is the result of violence, (one should forswear it). This has been propounded by those who practise *saṃatva* (i.e. equality and equanimity) and preach its doctrine.

३०. ते सव्वे पावाइया दुक्खस्स कुसला परिणममुदाहरंति ।

30. *Te savve pāvāiṃyā dukkhassa kusalā pariṇṇamudāha-*
raṃti.

30. All those wise preceptors prescribe (the path of) comprehension and forswearing of suffering (which is the result of *karmas*).

३१. इति कम्म परिणाय सव्वसो ।

31. *Iti kamma pariṇṇāya savvaso.*

31. Hence, man (desirous of emancipation) should fully comprehend and forswear the *karmas*.

३२. इह आणाकंखी पंडिए अणिहे एगमप्पाणं संपेहाए घुणे सरीरं,
कसेहि अप्पाणं, जरेहि अप्पाणं ।

32. *Iha āṇākamkhī paṇḍie apihe egamappaṇaṃ saṃpe-*
hae chuṇe sarīraṃ, kaṣehi appaṇaṃ, jarehi appaṇaṃ.

32. A sage who is devoted¹ to the Teachings (or Knowledge) should contemplate upon only the Inner Self and become completely free from attachment.

He should shake to its root the *karma*-body² and attenuate and wither away the self's (passions).

1. Cf. 5/44.

2. By 'body' is here meant *karma* body. This is corroborated by the expression — "*Dhūge kamma-sarīragaṃ*"

ANNOTATION 32. The author of the *Cūrṇi* has explained the term 'Sole contemplation of the Inner Self' in terms of

'Solitariness' and 'Separateness' as follows:

The soul indulges in actions, bears fruits, takes birth, dies and transmigrates, all in utter solitariness:

*Ekah prakurute karma, bhuṅkte ekaśca tatphalam.
Jātyeko mriyatyeko, eko yāti bhavāntaram.*

Separateness-oriented meditation means the soul is separate from the body.

The explanation of the above aphorism by the commentator (*Vṛttikāra*) is as follows:

'I' have always been solitary: 'I' belong to none else;

'I' behold no one whom I can say I belong to nor do I behold one whom I can designate as mine.

*Sadaiko(a)haṁ na me kaścit, nāhamanvasya kasyacit.
No taṁ paśyāmi yasyāhaṁ, nasau bhāvīti yo mama.*

The pith of worldliness is nothing but disaster. Who, whose and where are one's kith and kin? Who, whose and where are strangers? These kith and kin as well as strangers all go round in cycles of birth and death. At times, the kith and kin become strangers, and vice-versa. There comes a time when nobody remains as kith and kin and nobody a stranger.

*Saṁsāra evāva manarthasārah.
Kaḥ kasya ko(a)tra svajānāḥ paro vā.
Sarve bhramantaḥ svajānāḥ pare ca,
Bhavanti bhūtva na bhavanti bhūyaḥ.*

Ponder thus: 'I am all alone. Nobody was mine in the past, nor will ever be in the future. It is because of my *karmas* that I delude myself and consider others as mine. The truth is that I was alone in the past and will ever be all alone.'

(*Āyāro*, 5/59). Here the term '*Appānaṁ*' stands for the state of soul in which it is overwhelmed by *Kaṣāya* (passions).

*Vicintyametad bhavatāhameko,
Na me(a)sti kaścīd purato na paścāt.
Svakarmabhir bhrāntiriyam mamaiva,
Aham purastādahameva paścāt. .*

३३. जहा जुष्णाहं कट्टाहं, हव्ववाहो पमत्थति, एवमं अत्तसमाहिणं
अणिहे ।

33. *Jahā juṇṇaṁ kaṭṭhāṁ, havvavāho pamatthati,
evaṁ attasamāhiṇe.*

33. Just as fire quickly reduces the decayed wood to ashes, so does a *sādhaka* who is (totally) absorbed in the (inner) Self, and (completely) unattached (to all external objects) (shake to its roots, attenuate and wither away his *karma*-body).

ANNOTATION 33: In this metaphorical aphorism, two means of shaking or agitating the *karma* body are indicated:

(a) *Samādhi*: complete concentration of mind on the inner Self i. e., pure consciousness.

(b) *Anāsakti*: Complete unattachment to all external i. e. material objects including one's own body.

Indication of these two means makes it patently clear that here the term 'body' means the subtle *karma*-body, and not the gross *audārika* one. Emaciation of the latter is not in question.

A *sādhaka* emaciated himself by many long fasts, but his egotism remained as strong as ever. Wherever he went, he made a show of his long fasting and sought praise. An experienced and wiser ascetic advised him. "O brother! Wither away your sensuality, passions and egotism. There is no benefit in emaciating this gross body. We will never praise you because of your withered body. Mere withering of your gross body does not make you praiseworthy.

*Indiyāṇi kaṣāe ya, gāraṇe ya kise kuru.
No vayaṁ te paśamsāmo, kisam sāhu sarīragam.*

— *Niśītha-bhāṣya, gāthā-3758.*

Bhagavān Mahāvīra has referred to the withering away of the subtle *karmā*-body. It is of secondary importance whether the gross body is emaciated or not.

कसाय-विवेग-पदं

३४. विगिच कोहं अविकम्पमाने, इमं निरुद्धाजयं सपेहाए ।

Kasāya-vivega-padam

34. *Vigimca kohaṁ avikampamāṇe, imaṁ niruddhājayaṁ sapēhāe.*

34. Realising that man's life span is limited, remain unshaken (by passions) and eschew (the passion of) anger.

ANNOTATION 34: In the present *Sūtra*, the truth that —
"Kāmāt krodho' bhijāyate"—(*Gītā*, 2/62) i. e.

"Sensual pleasures engender anger" has been propounded.

Loss of pleasant objects and association of unpleasant ones are the main causes of the generation of anger.

३५. दुक्खं च जाण अदुवागमेस्सं ।

35. *Dukkhaṁ ca jāṇa aduvāgamessaṁ.*

35. Know (the process of) the present as well as the future miseries.

ANNOTATION 35. Anguish is caused by anger. Anger not only begets anger but also sows and fosters its seeds in the form of *saṁskāras* (i. e. impressions) which are the source of miseries in the future. The realisation of this fact helps an ascetic to forsake anger.

३६. पुढो फासाइं च फासे ।

36. *Puḍho phāsāiṁ ca phāse.*

36. An irate person suffers from various kinds of miseries and maladies.

३७. लोयं च पास विप्फंदमाणं ।

37. Loyam̐ ca pāsa vipphaṇḍamaṇaṁ

37. See the *loka* (world) on all sides vibrating

३८. जे निव्वुदा पावेहिं कम्महिं, अणिदाणा ते वियाहिया ।

38. Je ñivvudā pāvehiṁ kammehiṁ, aṇidāṇā te
viyāhiyā.

38. Those who subdue sinful actions (i. e. the agitations of violence, sexuality and passions) are called *Anidānas* (i. e. free from the causes of bondage).

३९. तम्हा तिविज्जो णो पडिसंजलिज्जासि ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

39. Tamhā tivijjo ṇo paḍisaṁjalijjāsī.

— Tti bemi.

39. Therefore, O *trividya*¹! Do not get burnt up by the flames of sensuality and passions.

— I say so.

1. Cf. 3/28.

SECTION IV

चउत्थो उद्देसो

Cauttho Uddeso

सम्माचरित्त-पदं

४०. आवीलए पवीलए निप्पीलए जहिता पुव्वसंजोगं, हिच्चा उवसमं ।

*Sammācaritta badarh*40. Āvilāe pavīlāe nippīlāe jahittā puvvasamjogam,
hiccā uvasamam.*Right Ascetic Discipline*

40. In the first place the *muni* should relinquish the relations (obtaining from objects, animate and inanimate); he should then subdue his mind and senses; and finally, he should resort to mortification (of flesh) in progressively increasing intensity.

ANNOTATION 40. There are two primary conditions for practice of asceticism.

- (1) Relinquishing relationship.
- (2) Subjugation of mind and senses.

After this, the *sādhaka* passes through three stages of *sādhana*.

(a) The first stage begins with initiation and endures till the completion of studies. During this stage he practises meditation to a limited extent and undertakes the austerities essential for scriptural studies.

(b) The second stage comprises of teaching the disciples and propagating the creed. During this stage he practises

deeper and longer meditation and also higher austerity (e.g. fasting for many days).

(c) The third stage pertains to forsaking of bodily attachments. Having accomplished his own amelioration as well as that of the Religious Order, the *muni* engages himself in the preparation of the total forsaking of bodily attachments so as to attain the ultimate equanimity during the period of fast-unto-death. During this stage he practises meditations and austerities of still longer duration (i.e. fasting for a fortnight, a month or so on and so forth).

Progressive increase in the intensity of mortification of flesh is prescribed in proportion to the propriety and capability of undertaking practice of meditation and austerities. The intensity of mortification of *karma*-body will also correspond to it.

These are also the three stages of the dissociation of the soul from the body.

४१. तम्हा अविमणे वीरे सारए समिए सहिते सया जए ।

41. *Tamhā avimaṇe vīre sārāe samie sahite sayā jae.*

41. (The *karmas* of one whose mind and senses have been subdued get annihilated quickly). Hence, a blissful¹, heroic and wise *muni*², engaged in what is Right, and

1. One, whose mind is free from unhappiness, fear and sorrow, is called '*Avimaṇe*' (i.e. blissful).
2. The Sanskrit equivalents of the word '*Sārāe*' could be '*Svarata*', '*Samrāta*', '*Sāraka*', and '*Sārada*'.

The authors of the *Cūrṇī* and the *Vṛtti* have annotated the word *Svarata*. *Svarata* is one who is engrossed in austerity, righteousness, detachment, vigilance, knowledge, perception and asceticism, and disciplined deportment and self-control.

Dr. Herman Jacobi has translated this term as *Sāraka* (i.e. a person of pith).

In the *Sūtra-kṛtāṅga*, we find that the word *viśārada* has been used in three places (1/3/50, 1/13/13, 1/14/17). In view of this, the form *sārada* seems to be proper — one who is expert at grasping gist is *viśārada* (i.e. wise one).

equipped with (knowledge, spiritual experience and ascetic discipline should constantly subdue (his mind and senses).

४२. दुरणुचरो मग्गो वीराणं अणियट्टगामीणं ।

42. Duranucaro maggo vīraṇaṃ aṇiyattagāmiṇaṃ.

42. The path of the heroic *muni*s who tread the road of life-long asceticism is difficult.

ANNOTATION 42. Asceticism as prescribed by Bhagavān Mahāvīra is to be observed for the whole life. The perpetual renunciation of attractive objects is not a bed of roses. That is why, it has been called 'duranucara' (i.e. an uphill task).

४३. विगिञ्च मंस-सोणियं ।

43. Vigimca maṃsa-soniyam.

43. Abandon (amassing) flesh and blood (i.e. physical vigour).

ANNOTATION 43. One of the causes of engendering the sex impulses is amassing physical vigour (flesh and blood). Hence, a *muni* should refrain from this. But the question here arises: Why should he do so? Why should he not build up muscular strength which is necessary for a healthy body which, in its turn, is essential for practising religion? Then why should it be deliberately weakened?

The answer is attenuation of physical vigour, however, does not imply extreme emaciation, but, in reality, it means controlling the physical strength to such an extent that it does not stimulate sensuality.

Dieting (avoiding rich articles of food) does not produce excess of blood which in its turn, does not allow accumulation of flesh, fat, bone, marrow, and semen respectively in the body. Dieting, therefore, automatically constitutes the *sadhanā* of mortification of flesh (vide, aphorism 40).

૪૪. એસ પુરિસે દવિએ વીરે, આયાળિજ્જે વિયાહિએ ।

જે ધુળાઇ સમુસ્સયં, વસિત્તા બંમચેરંસિ ॥

44. *Esa purise dāvie vīre, āyāñijje viyāhie,
Je dhuñāi samussayam, vaśittā bambhacerañsi.*

44. He (who abandons amassing flesh and blood) is designated as one who is free from attachment and aversion, heroic and model (of sterling character), for others. Observing continence¹, he withers away his (gross) body as well as *karma*-body.

૪૫. નેત્તેહ પલિછિન્નેહિ, અપ્યાણસોય-ગઢિએ બાલે ।

અવ્વોચ્છિન્નબંધણે, અણભિક્કંતસંજોએ,

તમંસિ અવિજાણઓ આણાએ લંભો નાત્થિ ત્તિ બેમિ ।

45. *Nettehim palichimnehim, āyāpasoya-gaḍhie bāle.
Avvocchiññabandhaṇe, aṇabhikkantaññajōe,
Tamañsi avijāṇaō āṇāe lañbho naṭṭhi tti bemi.*

45. While practising subjugation of the senses, a *sādhaka*, who is easily (assailed by delusion), who gets bogged down in sensuality and who cannot cut off the family-ties and monetary fetters (on being overwhelmed by likes and dislikes), getting lost in the (darkness of attachment), loses sight (of the evil consequences of self-indulgence). Such a *sādhaka* cannot avail himself of the benefit of the Teachings. — I say so.

ANNOTATION 45. Knowledge (i.e. *āñā* or *ājñā*) can be interpreted in two ways:

(a) Scriptural Knowledge.

(b) Didactic Knowledge.

1. The word '*Brahmacarya*' (continence) envisages three meanings:

(a) *Acāra*— Asceticism.

(b) Chastity i.e. abstinence from sexual activity of any sort.

(c) Staying within the monastic order.

Here, however, it has been used in the sense of asceticism. Chastity is, as a matter of fact, a part and parcel of asceticism.

The gist of both is *ācāra* i. e. asceticism, and the kernal of asceticism is dissolution of *karmas* and finally, salvation.

A *sādhaka* salivating for sensual pleasures cannot, even though he may be conversant with the scriptures, conduct himself with propriety, or dissipate *karmas*, i. e. make any advancement in the direction of salvation.

४६. जस्स नत्थि पुरा पच्छा, मज्झे तस्स कओ सिया ?

46. *Jassa natthi purā pacchā, majjhe tassa kaṃ siyā?*

46. How can that which has no beginning and no end, have a middle?

ANNOTATION 46. Until the impress of erotic desires is completely obliterated, it keeps rearing up its ugly head even in the midst of ascetic practice. Consequently, even a self-subdued *sādhaka* sometimes succumbs to the assault of sensuality. But, when through severe perseverance in *sādhana*, a *sādhaka* completely eradicates the id-impulses, they are once and for all extinguished. They do not, then, occur, either in the beginning or in the end or in the middle — in fact, never. In the event of non-existence of the past impressions, one cannot conceive the future. And in the absence of these two, one cannot think of the present.

४७. से हु पण्णाणमते बुद्धे आरंभोवरए ।

47. *Se hu paṇṇāṇamaṃte buddhe āraṃbhovarae.*

47. He alone (who has completely obliterated the impress of erotic impulses) becomes transcendently wise and enlightened, and forsakes violence.

४८. सम्ममेयंति पासह ।

48. *Sammameyaṃti pāsaha.*

48. (Only on complete obliteration of sensuality, can one forsake violence) — this is the Truth. Realise it.

४९. जेण बंधं बहं घोरं, परिताबं च दाहणं ।

49. *Jeṇa baṇḍhaṃ vahaṃ ghoraṃ, pavitāvaṃ ca dāruṇaṃ.*

49. (Succumbing to erotic desires), one resorts to binding (others), gruesome beating and awful torture.

५०. पलिच्छिदिय बाहिरगं च सोयं, निष्कम्मवत्सी इह मच्चिएहि ।

50. *Palichhīdiya bāhiragaṃ ca soyaṃ, nikkammaḍaṃsī iha macciehiṃ.*

50. After extirpating all outwardly oriented tendencies of the senses, realize the Immortal (*niṣkarma*) in this mortal world.

ANNOTATION 50. One, the tendencies of whose senses are oriented towards fleeting sensual objects, cannot realize the Immortal. In order to attain this, it is imperative that the flow of senses is made inward. One whose senses are concentrated on the realisation of the Immortal himself becomes Immortal.

The word '*nikkamma*' (Skt. *niṣkarma*) can be interpreted in five different senses:

- (1) eternity,
- (2) immortal,
- (3) salvation,
- (4) stoppage of the influx of *karma* and,
- (5) the Soul.

One, who is, inclined towards *karma*, is bound by *karmas*; while one who visualizes *niṣkarma* attains *niskarma*. Visualisation of *niskarma* is an important principle of the practice of Yoga.

This can be achieved by concentrating all the tendencies of the mind on it. During such concentration, one should perceive nothing else but the soul or the means of self-realisation.

५१. कम्मणा सफलं दट्ठं, तमो निज्जाइ वेयवी ।

51. *Kammaṇa saphalaṃ daṭṭhaṃ, taṃ nijjāi veyavī.*

51. Realising the retributive nature of *karmas*, a wise man refrains from accumulating them.

५२. जे खलु भो ! वीरा समिता सहिता सदा जया संघडदंसिणो
आतोवरया, अहा-तहा लोगमुवेहमाणा, पाईणं पडीणं दाहिणं
उदीणं इति सच्चंसि परिचिट्ठिमु, साहिस्सामो णाणं वीराणं
समिताणं सहिताणं सदा जयाणं संघडदंसिणं आतोवरयाणं अहा-
तहा लोगमुवेहमाणाणं ।

52. Je khalu bho ! Virā samitā sahītā sadā jayā saṅghad-
adaṃsino ātovarayā, ahā-tahā logamuvehamāṇā,
pāiṇaṃ paḍiṇaṃ dāhiṇaṃ udīṇaṃ iti saccaṃsī pari-
citthimsu, sāhissāmo, ṇāṇaṃ virāṇaṃ samitāṇaṃ
sahitāṇaṃ sadā jayāṇaṃ saṅghadadaṃsiṇaṃ
ātovarayāṇaṃ ahā-tahā logamuvehamāṇāṇaṃ.

52. O Noble Ones! We shall now elucidate the Right Knowledge possessed by the ascetic who are heroic, engaged in what is Right, equipped with (knowledge, perception and asceticism), ever self-subdued, wide awake, self-disciplined, observant of Reality in its right perspective, and who are steadfast in the Truth in all directions — West, East, South and North.

५३. किमत्थि उवाधी पासगस्स ण विज्जति ?
णत्थि ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

53. Kimatthi uvādhī pāsagassa ṇa vijjati?
Natthi.

— Tti bemi.

53. Does a seer (of Truth) ever has any extraneous imposi-
sition?
No, (he has) none.

— I say so.

CHAPTER V

THE ESSENCE IN THE WORLD

पंचमं अज्झयणं
लोगसारो

PAṂCAMAṂ AJJHAYANAM

LOGASĀRO

SECTION I

पदमो उद्देशो

Padhamo Uddeso

काम-पदं

१. आवन्ती केआवन्ती लोयसि विप्परामुसन्ति, अट्ठाए अणट्ठाए वा,
एएसु चेव विप्परामुसन्ति ।

Kāma -padaṃ

1. Āvaṃtī keāvaṃtī loyaṃsi vipparāmusamti, aṭṭhāe
aṇaṭṭhāe vā,eesu ceva vipparāmusamti.

Lust

1. In this world, those who kill either with motive or without it, would not spare any being out of the six systems of beings.

ANNOTATION 1. There are three motives for violence viz. sex, money and creed. Any preoccupation for the fulfilment of a purpose either for oneself or for others, or for both, is deemed motive (*aṭṭhāe*) and without a purpose is unmotivated (*aṇaṭṭhāe*).

"Ātaparaubhaya hetuṃ aṭṭhā,sesaṃ aṇaṭṭhāe. " (—Cūrṇi).

२. गुरु से कामा ।

2. Gurū se kāmā.

2. Their desires know no bounds.

ANNOTATION 2. It is not easy to circumscribe Desire. Therefore, the term *guru* (i. e. colossal) has been attributed to it.

३. तओ से मारस्स अंतो, जओ से मारस्स अंतो, तओ से दूरे ।

3. Tao se māraṣṣa aṃto, jao se māraṣṣa aṃto, tao se dūre.

3. One who succumbs to desire is within the reach of *māra* (i. e. Death), and because he is within the reach of Death, he is further removed from (the Immortal (i. e. *Nirvāṇa*)).

ANNOTATION 3. Being impelled by the desire for happiness one indulges in sensual pleasures. This results in many physical and mental complications. Consequently he goes farther and farther away from happiness. Thus the very purpose is defeated.

४. णेव से अंतो, णेव से दूरे ।

4. Neva se aṃto, neva se dūre.

4. One who has forsaken the desires is neither within reach of Death nor outside it — he, in fact, transcends Death¹.

५. से पासति फुसियमिव, कुसग्गे पणुन्नं णिवतितं वातेरितं ।
एवं बालस्स जीवियं, मंदस्स अविजाणओ ।

5. *Se pāsati phusiyaṃiva, kusagge paṇunnaṃ ṇivatitaṃ vāteritaṃ.*

Evam bālassa jīviyaṃ, maṃdassa avijāṇao.

5. He (i. e. the wise man) looks upon life as a mere dew drop which quivers upon the tip of the *kuśā* grass

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism can be done as follows:

He (who renounces the external means of sensual pleasures, but does not forsake sensuality) is neither near to (asceticism in reality) nor far from (it in appearance).

(a sort of pointed grass) (destined only) to be whisked off (or blown away) by the breeze (at any moment).

The life of an unwise, imprudent and ignorant person is also as transient (as the said dew drop). (But delusion prevents him from comprehending this transient nature of life).

६. कूराणि कम्माणि बाले पकुव्वमाणे, तेण दुक्खेण मूढे विप्परिया-
सुवेइ ।

6. Kūrāṇi kammāṇi bāle pakuvvamāṇe, teṇa dukkheṇa mūḍhe vippariyāsuvei.

6. Thus an ignorant man indulging in atrocities (for the sake of fulfilment of desires) (begets grief). Benumbed by griefs, he becomes a victim of a paradox (i. e. he desires pleasures but is rewarded with sufferings).

७. मोहेण गम्भं मरणाति एति ।

7. Mohena gabhhaṁ maraṇāti eti.

7. Owing to delusion, he (again and again) passes through cycles of birth and death.

८. एत्थ मोहे पुणो-पुणो ।

8. Ettha mohe puṇo-puṇo.

8. In this (unbroken chain of births and deaths), delusion keeps cropping up again and again¹.

९. संसयं परिजाणतो, संसारे परिण्णाते भवति,
संसयं अपरिजाणतो, संसारे अपरिण्णाते भवति ।

9. Saṁsayam pari jānato, saṁsāre pariṇṇāte bhavati,
Saṁsayam aparī jānato, saṁsāre aparīṇṇāte bhavati.

1. Cf. 3/83.

9. One, who becomes inquisitive, discovers (the true nature of) the phenomenon of transmigration, i.e. knows the knowable and relinquishes the reprehensible.

One who is not inquisitive cannot discover (the true nature) of the phenomenon of transmigration.

ANNOTATION 9. Inquisitiveness is the starting point of philosophy. In the present *sūtra*, this very truth has been expounded. One who does not speculate — does not become inquisitive — cannot realise the Truth. Even Gautama, the chief disciple of Bhagavān Mahāvīra, often had queries, and he used to get the solution by inquiring of Bhagavān Mahāvīra.

"*Samśayātma vinasīyati* (i.e. a person smitten by equivocation meets with doom.) — In this famous expression the word *saṁśaya* has been taken to mean *saṁdeha* (i.e. equivocation). The same truth has also been expressed in the aphorism 5/73 of the present text, viz. "A person afflicted with incertitude cannot attain *samādhi* (i.e. absolute equipoise).

"*Nā saṁśayamanāruhya naro bhadraṇi paśyati*".

"(i.e. unless one resorts to inquisitiveness, one cannot attain beatitude). This half couplet echoes the gist of the present aphorism.

The word *saṁsāra* signifies the phenomenon of birth and death (or transmigration). Unless one wonders whether it leads to bliss or misery, there will be no end to it. To be inquisitive about it is equivalent to uprooting it.

१०. जे छेए से सागारियं न सेवए ।

10. Je chee se sāgāriyam̐ na sevae.

10. One who is wise (i.e. anticipates the repercussions of delusion) does not indulge in sex.

११. कट्टु एवम् अविजाणओ, बितिया मंदस्स बालया ।

11. *Kattu evaṃ avijāṇao, bitiyā maṇḍassa bālayā.*

11. (An unwise one who indulges in sex), but (on questioning denies it saying), "I do not know", is doubly stupid.

१२. लद्धा हुरत्था पडिलेहाए आगमिस्सा आणविज्जा अणसेवणयाए
त्ति बेमि ।

12. *Laddhā huratthā paḍilehāe āgamittā āṇavijjā aṇāsev-aṇayāe, tti bemi.*

12. After having thoroughly analysed the available sensual pleasures, the (preceptor) should admonish his disciple to refrain from indulging in them — i.e. he should expose their adverse consequences to him. I say so.

१३. पासह एगे रुव्वेसु गिद्धे परिणिज्जमाणे ।

13. *Pāsaha ege rūvesu giddhe pariṇijjamāṇe.*

13. Behold! Those who are attached to the body are being enamoured of (sensuality).

१४. एत्थ फासे पुणो-पुणो ।

14. *Ettha phāse puṇo-puṇo*

14. (Swept away) by this (current), they suffer the misery over and over again.

१५. आवन्ती केआवन्ती लोयंसि आरम्भजीवी, एएसु चेव आरम्भजीवी ।

15. *Āvaṃtī keāvaṃtī loyaṃsi āraṃbhajīvī, eesu ceva āraṃbhajīvī.*

15. In this world, all those who indulge in violence¹ for survival, do so (because of attachment) to these (sensual pleasures).

1. The word *āraṃbha* may be interpreted in two ways: (i) causing violence, and (ii) activity.

१६. एत्थ वि बाले परिपच्चमाणे रमति पावेहिं कम्मेहिं, 'असरणे सरणं'ति मण्णमाणे ।

16. Ettha vi bāle paripaccamāne ramati pāvehiṃ kammehiṃ, 'asaraṇe saraṇaṃ'ti maṇṇamāṇe.

16. An ignorant one in spite of his ascetic life, writhing in unsatiated sexual desires, wallows in sinful activities, mistaking insecurity to be security.

१७. इहमेगेसि एगचरिया भवति—से बहुकोहे बहुमाणे बहुमाए बहुलोहे बहुरए बहुनडे बहुसडे बहुसंकप्पे, भासवसक्की पलिउच्छन्ने, उट्ठियवायं पण्यमाणे "मा मे केइ अदक्खू" अण्णाण-पमाय-दोसेणं, सययं मूढे धम्मं नाभिजाणइ ।

17. Ihamegesim egacariyā bhavati—se bahukohe bahumāne bahumāe bahulohe bahurae bahunade bahusadhe bahusamkappe āsavasakkī paliucchanne, utthiyavāyaṃ pavayamāṇe "Mā me kei adakkhu" aṇṇāṇa-pamāya-dose-ṇaṃ, sayayaṃ mudhe dhammaṃ nābhijāṇai.

17. One leading a solitary ascetic life, being constantly stupefied by delusion¹ and infatuation, (despite his solitariness), does not know the Religion, because he is very wrathful, very conceited, very deceitful, very greedy and deeply attached; is changing faces like an actor, indulging in various kinds of rogueries, and much capricious; such a person adheres to the causes of the influx of *karma* (such as violence) and consequently is corrupted² by the *karma* particles, and is

1. The term *Aṇṇāṇe* (*Ajñāna*) is indicative of the belief-deluding (*darśana mohaniyā*) *karma* and *pramāda* that of conduct-deluding (*chāritra mohaniyā*) *karma*.

2. *Paliucchanne*: The author of the *Cūrṇi* has interpreted the term *Paliya* as *Pralīna*: as he writes.

"*Pralīnamucyate karma bhyśam līnaṃ yadātmani.*"

"The author of the *Vṛtti*, however, translates it as *Palita*.

bragging, "We have arisen (to act religiously)" and (is indulging in sinful activities surreptitiously with such an apprehension) as "Let no one see me".

१८. अट्टा पया माणव ! कम्मकोविया जे अणुवरया, अविज्जाए
पलिसोक्खमाहु, अवट्ठं अणुपरियट्ठंति ।

—सि बेमि ।

18. *Attā payā mānava ! kammakoviya je anuvaraya, avi-
jjāe palimokkhamāhu, avattam anupariyattamti.*

— Tti bemi.

18. O Mankind! All those who are writhing in unsatiated sensuality, who are adept in (worldly) activities, who have not ceased from (the cause of the influx of *karma*) and who profess salvation through *avidyā* (i. e. absence of Right Perception), keep rotating in the vortex of the *saṃsāra*.

— I say so.

ANNOTATION 18. The ultimate emancipation can be attained only through: Right Perception and Right Conduct (asceticism).

"*Āhaṃsu vījācaraṇam pamokkham*" (— *Sūyagado*, 1/12/11).

On the other hand, *avidyā* (i. e. deluded perception) can never lead one to emancipation. Those preceptors, who prescribe *avidyā* as a means of emancipation, are swept away by the current of *saṃsāra* (birth-death-cycles), because they, in fact, prescribe the wrong path as the right one to emancipation.

SECTION II

बीओ उद्देसो

Bio Uddeso

अप्पमादमग्ग-पदं

१९. आवन्ती केआवन्ती लोयंसि अणारंभजीवी, एतेसु चेव मणारंभ-
जीवी ।

Appamāda magga -padaṃ

19. Āvaṃtī keāvaṃtī loyaṃsi aṇāraṃbhajīvī, etesu ceva
maṇāraṃbhajīvī.

The Path of Vigilance

19. All those, in this world, who lead a non-violent way
of life, (are able to) do so only (because they are
completely unattached) to these (sensual pleasures).

२०. एत्थोवरए तं भोसमाणे 'अयं संधी' ति अदक्खु ।

20. Etthovarāe taṃ jhosamāṇe 'ayaṃ saṃdhī' ti adakkhu.

20. The muni, initiated in this (order of the *Arhats*), by
disciplining his body to be motionless, and identi-
fying the entry (or the influx) of the *karma* particles
(i.e. the *āśrava*), perceives it (in meditation in
order to remain vigilant).

२१. जे इमस्स विग्गहस्स अयं खणेंत्ति मन्नेसी ।

21. Je imassa viggahassa ayaṃ khaṇetti manneṣī.

21. '(At the) present moment, this is the state of the
(gross) body', - thus one who discovers (i.e. men-

tally perceives in meditation the state of the body every moment), (remains ever vigilant).

ANNOTATIONS 20-21. The *Sādhana* propounded by Bhagavān Mahāvīra essentially consists in 'remaining vigilant moment after moment'. Out of the various techniques prescribed for remaining vigilant, the prime one is to perceive in meditation with the mind's eye the phenomena and sensations taking place in one's own body. A *sādhaka* who concentrates his perception on the sensations of pain and pleasure ever present in the gross body, — i. e. one who discovers the state of the body every moment — remains vigilant.

This meditational technique of concentration of perception of the body leads one to become introvert. Thus the gross body serves as a medium of turning the outwardly directed flow of consciousness inward.

The two subtle bodies — the *taijas* (i. e. the electrical body) and *karma*-body — exist in the interior of the gross one and the soul is further in the interior of these two. One who practises the concentration of the perception of the phenomena and sensations of one's gross body, gradually succeeds in perceiving the subtle bodies. By further practice of this technique of meditation and training the mind for such perception, one begins to realize the current of consciousness flowing in the gross body. As the *sādhaka* proceeds progressively from perception of the gross to that of the subtle, the intensity of his vigilance increases.

२२. एस मग्गे आरिण्हं पवेदिते ।

22. Esa magge āriehiṃ pavedite.

22. This Path (of vigilance) has been shown by the *Tīrthaṅkaras*.

२३. उत्थिए नो पमायए ।

23. Utthie no pamāyae.

23. One should not cease to be vigilant after having risen up (for the *sādhana* of vigilance).

२४. जाणित्तु दुक्खं पत्तेयं सायं ।

24. *Jāṇittu dukkham patteyaṃ sāyaṃ.*

24. Happiness and unhappiness are (purely individual experiences (— knowing this fact one should not cease to be vigilant).

२५. पुढो छंदा इह माणवा, पुढो दुक्खं पवेदितं ।

25. *Puḍho chaṇḍā iha māṇavā, puḍho dukkham paveditaṃ.*

25. People in this world have diverse desires. Their miseries are also diverse.

२६. से अविहिंसमाणे अणवयमाणे, पुट्ठो फासे विप्पणोल्लए ।

26. *Se avihimsamāṇe aṇavayamāṇe, puṭṭho phāse vippan-
ollae.*

26. One (who knows that experience of pleasure and pain is purely individual) should not indulge in violence (or) deny (the existence of micro-organisms)¹. One should forbear the hardships that befall him (in the path of this *sādhana*) with equipoise.

२७. एस समिया-परियाए वियाहिते ।

27. *Esa sainiyā-pariyāe viyāhite.*

27. He (i. e. a *sādhaka* who observes non-violence and forbearance) is described as one who has perfectly comprehended² the Truth³.

1. Vide 1/38, 39, 66.

2. The author of the *Vṛtti* interprets the term "*samiyā pariyāye*" in two ways:

(a) One who practises the right form of asceticism.

(b) One who practises the tranquil form of asceticism.

3. The alternate translation of this aphorism may be done like this: He (i. e. a *sādhaka* who observes non-violence and forbearance) is described as one who has fully attained the Equanimity.

२८. जे असत्ता पावेहिं कम्महेहि, उदाहु ते आयंका फुसंति ।

इति उदाहु वीरे "ते फासे पुट्ठो हियासए" ।

28. Je asattā pāvehiṃ kammehiṃ, udāhu te āyaṃkā phu-samti.

Iti udāhu vīre "te phāse puttho hiyāsae".

28. Even such *munis* as are not addicted to vices may at times get afflicted with fatal diseases. In this regard, Bhagavān Mahāvīra instructed his disciples to bear those fatal diseases, if they were afflicted by them.

२९. से पुव्वं पेयं पच्छा पेयं भेउर-धम्मं, विद्धंसण-धम्मं, अधुवं,
अणितियं, असासयं, चयावचइयं, विपरिणाम-धम्मं, पासह एयं
रुवं ।

29. Se puvvaṃ peyaṃ pacchā peyaṃ bheura-dhammaṃ, viddhaṃsaṇa-dhammaṃ, adhuvaṃ, aṇitayaṃ, asā-sayaṃ, caṇṇavacaiyaṃ, viparināma-dhammaṃ, pāsaha-eyaṃ rūvaṃ.

29. Perceive this body. Sooner or later a day will come when it will have to be given up. Fragility and decay characterise it. It is transient, mortal and mutable. Anabolism and catabolism take place in it. It passes through different stages (of development and deterioration).

ANNOTATIONS 28, 29. Once upon a time some *munis* went to Bhagavān Mahāvīra and said rather inquisitively, "O Bhagavān Why is it that even temperate and continent ascetics are susceptible to disease?"

The Bhagavān said, "O Noble Ones! You should try to know the root causes of both continence and disease."

The disciples asked, "What are they, O Bhagavān?"

"The cause of continence is the dissolution of "*cāritra-moha-karma*" (i. e. the *karma*, which pollutes Right Conduct through delusion), and that of disease is the rise of "*vedaniya karma*" (i. e. the *karma* which brings pain in its wake). Thus, the causes of the two are different. There-

fore, a continent *sādhaka* may suffer from some diseases; even a *kevalī* (omniscient one, i. e. one who has reached the pinnacle of continence) can be so afflicted."

"O Venerable One! What should one do when a disease rears up its ugly head?"

"One should bear it with fortitude."

In this connection, Bhagavān Mahāvīra exhorted them to bear in mind the *sūtra* which assists one in overcoming such difficulties. This is contained in the aphorism 29.

Balanced diet would build up the body, whereas unbalanced one would result in its decay.

Interpreted in a different way, this means that up to the age of forty, the body develops; later on decay sets in.

३०. संधि समुपेहमाणस्स एगायतण-रयस्स इह विप्पमुक्कस्स, णत्थि मग्गे विरयस्स त्ति बेमि ।

30. Saṁdhiṁ samuppehamānassa egāyatana-rayassa iha vippamukkassa, naṭṭhi magge virayassa tti bemi.

30. One who perceives the entry (of the *karma* particles), who is centred in (the state of perfect equanimity), who is free from the worldly attachment to (the body etc.), and who has ceased from violence, is not subject to the path of (misery). I say so.

ANNOTATION 30. Birth, aging, disease and death — this quartet forms a path leading to misery. One who has ceased from violence blocks it.

परिगह-पदं

३१. आवंती केआवंती लोगंसि परिगहावंती—से अप्पं वा, बहुं वा, अणुं वा, थूलं वा, चित्तमंतं वा, अचित्तमंतं वा, एतेसु चेव परिगहावंती ।

Pariggaha-padam

31. Āvaṁtī keāvaṁtī logamsi pariggahāvaṁtī — se appaṁ va, bhaṁ va, anuṁ vā, thūlaṁ vā cittaṁantaṁ vā, acittaṁantaṁ vā, etesu ceva pariggahāvaṁtī.

Acquisitiveness

31. All those, in this world, who are prone to possession of things, be they few or many, subtle or gross, sentient or insentient, try to acquire and accumulate them. They are prone to possession (on account of their attachment to) these (worldly objects).

३२. एतदेवेगेसि महब्भयं भवति, लोगवित्तं च ण उवेहाए ।

32. Etadevegesim mahabbhayam bhavati, logavittam ca nam uvehāe.

32. This very acquisitiveness spells disaster for those who are attached to them. See the state of the world!

ANNOTATION 32. Just as men of the world are always worried about the safety of their possessions, so does *sāṇhaka* who is constantly attached to worldly objects.

३३. एए संगे अविजानतो ।

33. Ee saṅge avijānato.

33. One who is ignorant of the attachments produced by possession (invites great agonies).

३४. से सुपडिबुद्धं सूवणीयं ति जच्चा, पुरिसा ! परमचक्खू !
विपरक्कमा ।

34. Se supaḍibuddham sūvaṇīyam ti jaccā, purisā! paramcakkhū! viparakkamā.

34. (That possessiveness is the cause of great agonies) is well-observed and well-exemplified by the seers (possessed of extra-sensory perception). Therefore, O Argus-eyed one! Exert yourself (to keep possessiveness in check).

३५. एतेसु चेव बंभचेरं ति बेमि ।

35. Etesu ceva bambhaceraṁ ti bemi.

35. Only those who keep possessiveness in check, are self-disciplined. So do I say.

ANNOTATION 35. The word *brahmacarya* can be interpreted in three ways:

- (a) Control of sex organs,
- (b) Living in a religious order, and
- (c) Self-discipline.

Body is also a kind of possession. One who is attached to the body cannot control his sex organs.

One who is attached to the body and the worldly objects can neither live in a religious order nor can he follow the rules of ascetic life including non-violence.

All the three meanings stated above are applicable here, but the third meaning is more relevant.

३६. से सुयं च मे अज्जत्थियं च मे, "बंध-पमोक्खो तुज्ज अज्जत्थेव" ।

36. *Se suyam ca me ajjhatthiyam ca me, "baṇḍha-pamo kkhho tujja ajjhattheva"*.

36. I have heard and realized that bondage and salvation are both within your Self.

३७. एत्थ विरते अणगारे, दीहरायं तितिक्खए ।
पमत्ते बहिया पास, अप्पमत्तो परिव्वए ।

37. *Ettha virate anagāre. diharāyaṃ titikkhae. Pamatte bahiyā pāsa, appamatto parivvāe.*

37. Having forsaken acquisitiveness, a monk should all his life forbear the hardships, (attendant upon non-possession).

See! Those who are stupefied, are far away from asceticism. Therefore, lead a life of self-discipline with vigilance.

३८. एयं मोणं सम्मं अणुवासिज्जसि ।

— ति बेमि ।

38. Eyaṃ moṇaṃ sammaṃ aṇuvāsijjāsī.

— Tti bemi.

38. Practise aright this knowledge (which is the embodiment of cessation from violence and possessiveness).

— I say so.

SECTION III

तइओ उद्देसो

Taio Uddeso

अपरिगह-कामनिव्वेयण-पदं

३९. आवंती केआवंती लोयंसि अपरिगहावंती, एएसु चेव अपरिग-
हावंती ।

Apariggaha -kā manivveyana -padaṃ

39. Āvaṃtī keāvaṃtī loyaṃsi apariggahāvaṃtī, eesu ceva
apariggahāvaṃtī.

Non-acquisitiveness and Detachment from Sensual Pleasures

39. All those, in this world, who are free from acquisitiveness, are so only because they do not have (attachment to) these (worldly objects nor do they accumulate them).

४०. सोच्छा वई मेहावी, पंडियाणं णिसामिया ।

समियाए धम्मो, आरिएहि पवेदिते ।

40. Soccā vai mehāvī, paṇḍiyanāṃ ṇisāmiyā.
Samiyāe dhamme, āriehiṃ pavedite.

40. "The Tīrthaṅkaras have asserted (that) *dharma* (i. e. righteousness) subsists in equanimity." — This sermon of the preceptors should be heard and absorbed by the wise *sādhaka*.

४१. जहेत्थ मए संधी झोसिए, एवमणत्थ संधी दुज्झोसिए भवति,
तम्हा वेमि — णो णिहेज्ज बीरियं ।

41. Jahettha mae saṁdhi jhosie, evamappattha saṁdhi dujjhosie bhavati, tamhā bemi — *no nīhejja vīriyaṁ*.
41. (Addressing a religious assembly, Bhagavān Mahāvīra proclaimed —) "The harmonization in the practice of Right Knowledge, Right Perception and Right Conduct brought about by me in my *sāadhanā*, is rare to find elsewhere. That is why, I assert that (you should attain the integration of the triad, and, not let your powers lie dormant."

ANNOTATION 41. In the days of Bhagavān Mahāvīra, different philosophers emphasised separately one of the three paths viz; Knowledge, Devotion and Action for the attainment of salvation.

According to Bhagavān Mahāvīra, merely one path was inadequate for the attainment of salvation. On the contrary, a harmonious blending of the three was essential for it. He had practised severe austerities in conjunction with the pursuit of knowledge and perception during the period of *sāadhanā*, because austerities are an integral part of conduct. Buddha, however, discarded (mortifying) penances. This might have been discussed among the disciples of Bhagavān Mahāvīra. It could well be that some of his pupils also questioned the need of those austerities. It looks as though under those circumstances Bhagavān Mahāvīra laid down this proposition.

Bhagavān Mahāvīra said that he had practised severe austerities far away from the population and that he had experienced that it was not in vain, but was very useful in the *sāadhanā*. He further said, "I tell you my own personal experience. Use your energy as much as you can in practising austerities together with the pursuit of Knowledge and Perception."

૪૨. જે પુન્નુટ્ટાઈ, જો પચ્છા-ગિવાઈ ।
 જે પુન્નુટ્ટાઈ, પચ્છા-ગિવાઈ ।
 જે જો પુન્નુટ્ટાઈ, જો પચ્છા-ગિવાઈ ।

42. Je puvvutthāī, ño pacchā-ñivāī.
 Je puvvutthāī, pacchā-ñivāī.
 Je ño puvvutthāī, ño pacchā-ñivāī.

42. Some persons rise up and continue awakened life-long
 — they never fall down.

Some persons do rise up, but fall down afterwards.
 Some persons neither rise up at all nor fall down afterwards.

ANNOTATION 42. There are two possible behavioural patterns of those who have renounced the world. Some *sādhakas* keep up the same zealous leonine spirit with which they renounce, while others, although renouncing with leonine spirit, practise it with a craven cowardly one.

For example, Dhanya and Śālibhadra were initiated by Bhagavān Mahāvīra. They passed their ascetic life in spiritual studies, meditation and practising austerities, and finally attained death through 'fast unto death' together with the observance of perfect equanimity. This is an example of the person rising up and remaining awakened life-long.

On the other hand, example of the second category is found in the lives of Puṇḍarīka and Kuṇḍarīka. They were brothers. Kuṇḍarīka got initiated into ascetic life. Later on, when he became ill, king Puṇḍarīka arranged for his medical treatment. Kuṇḍarīka recovered, but at the same time, he became lax in the observance of the monastic conduct. He abandoned the ascetic life and returned to the worldly life. This is an illustration of the person rising up and then falling down.

The third category is that of a person who never renounces the worldly life.

४३. सेवि तारिसे सिया, जे परिणाय लोगमनुस्सिओ ।

43. *Sevi tāriṣṣae siyā, je pariṇāya logamaṇussio.*

43. A monk who, after renouncing (the worldly life), — again takes recourse to it, is as good (as a person leading the worldly life).

४४. एयं निदाय सुणिषा पवेदितं—इह आणाकंखी पंडिए अणिहे,
पुव्वाररायं जयमाणे, सया सीलं सपेहाए,
सुणिषा भवे अकामे अहंसे ।

44. *Eyaṃ niyāya muṇiṇā paveditaṃ — Iha āṇākaṃkhī paṇ-
ḍie aṇihe, puvaṇṇavararāyaṃ jayamaṇe, sayā silaṃ
saṃpehāe, suṇiyā bhava akāme ahaṃse.*

44. Knowing these (i. e. the causes of rising up and fall-
ing down from the *sādhana*), the Bhagavān enjoined,
"A wise *muni* should remain devoted to the Instruc-
tion, and not get attached (to the mundane posses-
sions), he should keep himself occupied with the study
of sacred books, and meditation in the first and the
last quarters of the night, he should abide by the mo-
nastic ethics, and get himself emancipated from lust
and wrath, after listening intently to (the Truth, which
is the essence in the world).

ANNOTATION 44. In the present aphorism, seven steps
leading to steadiness in ascetic life have been propounded:

I. *Devotion to the Instruction*: The word *Ājñā* (Instruc-
tion) can be interpreted in two ways — (a) Scriptural
Knowledge, and (b) Sermons.

II. *Cessation from attachment*.

III. *Diligent efforts in the first and the last quarters of
night*: There are two traditions prevalent about the
way in which a night should be passed —

(a) To sleep in the third quarter of night remaining
awake in the remaining three;

(b) To remain awake in the first and the last quarters
of the night and to sleep in the intermediate two
quarters.

By *jayamaṇe* (*yatamaṇaḥ*) is meant "to be diligent by re-
maining vigilant through concentration on studies and medi-
tation while awake".

IV. Practice of ethical code: By *śīla* is meant — "following the five great vows; subjugation of the senses; staidness of mind, body and speech; conquest of passions — anger, conceit, deceit, and greed". The constant observance of *śīla* is *śīla-saṃpēhā* (*śīla-saṃprekṣā*) (i.e. the practice of the ethical code).

V. *Listening to and comprehending the Truth* i.e. Knowledge, Perception and Self-discipline which is the essence in the world.

VI. *Forsaking desire.*

VII. *Forswearing anger.*

४५. इमेणं चेव जुज्झाहि, किं ते जुज्जेण बज्जओ ?

45. *Imeṇaṃ ceva jujjhāhi, kiṃ te jujjheṇa bajjhaō?*

45. Battle with this (enemy i.e., the *karma* body); what will accrue from warring with others?

४६. जुद्धारिहं खलु दुल्लहं ।

46. *Juddhārihaṃ khalu dullahaṃ.*

46. (The enemy) which is to be fought with is difficult to find.

ANNOTATIONS 45-46. Once upon a time, some *munis* approached Bhagavān Mahāvīra and said, "O Bhagavān! You had admonished us to utilise as much spiritual energy as is possible in attaining knowledge and perception, and in the observance of various austerities, and also you had warned us against laxity in our efforts. Accordingly, we made all possible efforts to sheer off the complexes born out of *karma*, but still we have not succeeded in completely obliterating them. We request you to give us some more guidance."

Knowing their difficulty, the Bhagavān said, "Would you be able to exert yourself more?"

Humbly answered the disciples, "We are capable of exerting ourselves to any extent. In common parlance, we can crack the hardest nut; and in philosophical terms, we can even abandon the body."

The Venerable One said, "The most significant way to tone down the *karma-saṃskāras* is the battle against the *karma* body which is constantly tormenting you through various kinds of impulses. Fight with the *karma* body. Do not let it overwhelm you. And also resist this physical body which yearns for sensual pleasures by subduing the senses and the mind."

The Bhagavān thus exhorted the disciples to fight an internal battle. Explaining the strategy of the battle in question, the Bhagavān further said, "Continue battling along before the old age sets in, diseases attack and the senses become numb. Youth is the right time for sounding the bugle for it. The *karma-saṃskāra* as a matter of fact, is the real enemy.

४७. जहेत्य कुसलेहि परिण्णा-विवेगे भासिए ।

47. Jahettha kusalehiṃ pariṇṇā-vivege bhāsīe.

47. (To win) this (internal battle), Bhagavān Mahāvīra prescribed discernment and forswearing (as weapons).

ANNOTATION 47. Battling within the Self is the same as battling against the *karma* body and annihilating it. There are two primary weapons used in this battle viz. discernment and forswearing i.e. first comprehend and then discard.

Forswearing is of many kinds, e.g. forswearing of possession i.e. realization of separateness of the Self from possessions such as money, family etc.

Forswearing of the body i.e. realization of separateness of the Self from the body.

Forswearing of wrong notions i.e. realization of non-acquisitiveness etc.,

Forswearing of the *karma*-body i.e. realization of separateness of the Self from the *karma*-body.

४८. चुए हु बाले गब्भाइसु रज्जइ ।

48. Cūe hu bāle gabbhāisu rajjai.

48. A *sādhaka* who (after having risen up) falls down, gets entangled in the (cycle¹ of miseries) emanating from conception in womb etc.

४९. अस्मिं चेयं पव्वुच्चति, रुवंसि वा छणंसि वा ।

49. *Assim ceyam pavvuccati, rūvaṃsi vā chaṇaṃsi vā.*

49. Here (i.e. in the Discipline of the *Arhat*), it has been laid down emphatically that a *sādhaka* who wallows in sensual objects and violence in spite of having risen up, falls down).

ANNOTATION 49. In this *sūtra*, the term *rūvā* (*rūpa*) denotes perceivable i.e. sensual objects and body; and the word *chaṇa* (*kṣaṇa*) stands for 'violence' and other evils such as mendacity, larceny, incontinence and possessiveness.

५०. से हु एगे संविद्धपाहे मुणी, अण्णहा लोगमुवेहमाणे ।

50. Se hu ege saṃviddhapahe muṇi, aṇṇahā logamuvehamāṇe.

50. Only that *muṇi* remains steady in his mission who perceives worlds (of sensual objects and violence) in a different perspective (i.e. other than that of the laymen).

ANNOTATION 50. For one who is addicted to sensual objects and violence, the forms of the sensual objects are the be-all and the end-all of life and violence is the panacea of all ills. But one whose attitude is changed does not remain attached to the sensual objects and violence. He, then, takes worldly objects for transitory things, and considers them to have painful consequences, and violence as the root cause of all problems. He realizes that all problems and miseries in this world (are engendered mainly by violence).

1. Cf. 3/83.

५१. इति कम्मं परिणाय, सब्बसो से ण हिंसति । संजमति णो पगम्भति ।

51. *Iti kammaṃ parinnāya, savvaso se ṇa himsati. Saṃ-jamati ṇo pagabbhāti.*

51. Having thus known the true nature and causes of *karma*, the *muni* does not cause violence to anyone. He keeps (his senses) under complete restraint and does not let (them) become wanton.

५२. उवेहमाणो पत्तेयं सायं ।

52. *Uvehamāṇo patteyaṃ sāyaṃ.*

52. Considering that happiness is individually experienced (or every living being is desirous of happiness), one should not perpetrate violence.

५३. वण्णाएसी णारभे कंचणं सब्बलोए ।

53. *Vaṇṇāesī ṇārabhe kaṇcaṇaṃ savvaloe.*

53. A *muni* should not do anything anywhere, out of the desire for fame¹.

५४. एगप्पमुहे विदिसप्पइण्णे, निव्विन्नचारी अरए पयासु ।

54. *Egappa muhe vidisappaṇṇe, nivvinnacārī araē payāsu.*

54. A *muni* should (advance) in the direction of his goal; he should transcend all the wrong directions (i. e. what is opposite to the way of knowledge i. e. self-

1. The contextual meanings of the term '*varṇa*' are: (a) fame and (b) form. In the context of form, the present *sūtra* can be translated thus: A *muni* should not indulge in any such action as may be conducive to the augmentation of self-beautification (i. e. he should not use any cosmetic etc. for this purpose).

The alternate translation of this aphorism can be done thus: A *muni* should not do anything anywhere with the desire to enjoy sense-objects.

realization, self-perception, and self-discipline); he should not get enamoured of women.

ANNOTATION 54. Only a *muni* who keeps his eyes fixed on the Aim, can circumvent all the barriers.

The pledges for transcending the antagonizing forces are as follows:

"I give up ignorance; I adhere to knowledge (i. e. self-knowledge).

"I give up false belief; I adhere to the right belief."

"I give up incontinence; I embrace self-discipline."

Both attachment and sensuality lead one astray. One who transcends the antagonizing forces becomes free from this estrangement.

५५. से वसुमं सब्ब-समन्नागय-पण्णाणेणं अप्पाणेणं अकरणिज्जं पावं कम्मं ।

55. Se vasumam savva-samannāgaya-paṇṇāṇeṇaṃ appā-
ṇeṇaṃ akaraṇijjaṃ pāvaṃ kammaṃ.

55. For a *sādhaka* who is possessed of the wealth (of enlightenment) any sinful action (such as violence and self-indulgence) is to be abhorred by conscience, (guided) by intellect, fully illumined with Truth¹.

५६. तं णो अन्नेसि ।

56. Taṃ no annesiṃ.

56. (Therefore), the *sādhaka* should not pursue it (i. e. sinful action).

५७. अं सम्मं ति पासहा, तं मोणं ति पासहा ।

अं मोणं ति पासहा, तं सम्मं ति पासहा ।

57. Jaṃ sammaṃ ti pāsahā, taṃ moṇaṃ ti pāsahā;
Jaṃ moṇaṃ ti pāsahā, taṃ sammaṃ ti pāsahā.

1. Cf. 1/174.

57. See! What is right (conduct) is (right) knowledge¹ and what is (right) knowledge is right (conduct).

ANNOTATION 57. From the pragmatic point of view, knowledge and conduct are distinct from each other. But from the point of view of ultimate truth, they are not poles apart. The culmination of Right Knowledge and Spiritual Experience is Right Conduct (i.e. self-discipline or asceticism). The aim of the aphorism is to underline the fact that self-discipline is the sum and substance of Right Knowledge. How can knowledge which is not conducive to self-discipline remain Right and Proper unto the last? The purport of the author here is to elucidate the unity of Right Knowledge and Right Conduct. According to him, Right Knowledge implies existence of Right Conduct, and vice-versa. We can infer the existence of one from the other.

Another Sanskrit equivalent of the word *samma* can be 'sāmya' (besides *samyak*). This interpretation which means equanimity is very relevant here. If we choose this interpretation the present *sūtra* can be translated thus:

See! What is equanimity is asceticism; and what is asceticism is equanimity.

५८. ण इमं सक्कं सिद्धिलेहिं अदिज्जमाणेहिं गुणासाएहिं वंसमायारेहिं
पमत्तेहिं गारमावसत्तेहिं ।

58. Na imam sakkam siḍḍhilehiṃ addiḍḍjamāṇehiṃ guṇāsā-
ehiṃ vaṃkasamāyārehiṃ pamatthehiṃ gāramāvasat-
tehiṃ.

58. The practice of this (knowledge) is not feasible for them who are unsteady, drenched in affection, lustful, of deceitful conduct, stupefied (with passions), and householders.

५९. मुण्णि मोणं समायाए, धुमे कम्म-सरीरणं ।

59. Muṇi moṇaṃ samāyāe, dhume kamma-sarīraṇaṃ.

1. Cf. 2/103.

59. After gaining knowledge¹, the *muni* should shake to its root his *karma*-body (to cast off his *karma*).

६०. पतं लूहं सेवन्ति, वीरा समस्तदन्तिषो ।

60. *Paṁtaṁ lūhaṁ sevānti, vīrā samattadaṁsiṇo.*

60. The courageous one practising equanimity should take tasteless and coarse food.

६१. एस ओहंतरे मुनी, तिण्णे मुत्ते विरए वियाहिए ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

61. *Esa ohaṁtare muṇi, tiṇṇe mutte virāe viyāhie.*

— Tti bemi

61. Such a *muni* who has crossed the ocean of life and death is called successful, liberated, and devoid of passions.

— I say so.

1. See, 2/103.

SECTION IV

चउत्थो उद्देसो

Cauttho Uddeso

अवियत्तस्स एगल्लविहार-पदं

६२. गामाणुगामं दूइज्जमाणस्स दुज्जातं दुप्परक्कतं भवति अवियत्तस्स
भिक्षुणो ।

Aviyattassa egallavihāra-padam

62. Gāmāṇugāmaṃ dūjjamāṇassa dujjātaṃ dupparakkam-
taṃ bhavati *aviyattassa bhikkhuṇo*.

*Practice of Asceticism in Solitariness by an
Immature Ascetic*

62. A monk who, in an immature state, moves about from village to village (in solitariness), gets overwhelmed by hardships. (By doing so,) he embarks upon undesirable adventure.

ANNOTATION 62. One of the disciples asked the preceptor. "O Preceptor! What does the word *avyakta* (i. e. immature) connote?"

The preceptor replied, "Some persons are immature both in knowledge and age; some persons are immature in knowledge but mature in age; Some persons are mature in knowledge and immature in age; and some persons are mature both in knowledge and age."

Those who are above the age of sixteen are mature with respect to age, and those who have learned upto the third part (viz. *Ācāra-vas'u*) of the Ninth Book of the Fourteen Pūrvas, are mature with respect to knowledge. The *muni*

who is mature both in knowledge and age can move about on purpose practising asceticism in solitariness.

६३. वयसा वि एगे बुइया कुप्पन्ति माणवा ।

63. Vayasā vi ege buiyā kuppamti māpavā.

63. (Immature) persons are easily susceptible to anger produced by (the merest adverse) remarks.

ANNOTATION 63. Once upon a time, an immature ascetic was going somewhere. Seeing him, someone said to another person, "Who is this fellow?"

The other person remarked, rather disparagingly, "Why, of course, the *śūdra* (i. e. the lowly born person).

The immature *sādhū* on hearing this got irate.

An immature person may be roused to temper by the merest touch. Once a porter carrying luggage on his head bumped into an immature monk. The latter got furious and said, "Are you blind? Can't you see properly?"

The porter also got infuriated and they came to blows.

There was another immature *sādhū*, who acted negligently. The teacher gave him a bit of his mind, whereupon he asked "What on earth have I done? Why did you insult me in the presence of all these *sādhūs*? Do not other *sādhūs* ever indulge in such negligent behaviour?" And he went on grumbling. He could not notice his own negligence due to his intense wrath.

Such immature persons cannot develop *sādhanā* by moving about solitarily.

६४. उन्नयमाणे य नरे, महता मोहेण मुग्गति ।

64. Unnayamāṇe ya nare, mahatā mohēṇa mujjhati.

64. An immature one becomes stupefied with intense delusion on being praised.

६५. संबाहा बहवे भुज्जो-भुज्जो दुरतिककमा अजाणतो अपासतो ।

65. Saṃbāhā bahave bhujjo-bhujjo duratikkamā ajāṇato apāsato.

65. One who lacks in Knowledge and Perception, (i.e. who is immature) cannot cross over numerous hurdles repeatedly coming in his way.

ANNOTATION 65. Only he can solve all problems who is mature enough to know how to forbear hardships and what good accrues from forbearing them.

६६. एयं ते मा होउ ।

66. *Eyaṁ te mā hou.*

66. (O Ascetic)! The thought (of moving about in solitariness in an immature stage) should not even cross your mind.

६७. एयं कुसलस्त दंसणं ।

67. *Eyaṁ kusalassa daṁsaṇaṁ.*

67. This is the view of Bhagavān Mahāvīra (i.e. these demerits in the practice of asceticism in solitariness by an immature *sādhaka* have been envisaged by him).

६८. तद्धिद्वीए तम्मोत्तीए तप्पुरक्कारे तस्सण्णी तन्निवेसणे ।

68. *Tadditthīe tammottīe tappurakkāre tassañṇī tannivesaṇe.*

68. Fixing his mind on it (i.e. Mahāvīra's¹ view), concentrating on it, giving it prominence, becoming completely absorbed in its memory, and throwing himself heart and soul in its (practice), one should follow it.

-
1. The author of the *Cūṛṇi* explains aphorism 68 in the context of 'preceptor' and aphorism 69 in that of 'manner of moving' (*īryā*), whereas the author of the *Vṛtti* explains them both in the former context, except the phrase "*Pāsīya pāṇe gacchejjā*." However, both the commentators agree that aphorism 69 is the source of the 3rd chapter called (*īryā* of the *Āyāra-cūlā*). The author of the *Cūṛṇi* has mentioned in the preface of *Āyāra-cūlā* that the chapter entitled *īryā* has been developed from aphorisms 62, 68, 69, 70 of the present chapter. On the basis of this

इरिया-पदं

६६. जयविहारी चित्तनिवाती पंथनिज्जाती पलीवाहरे, पासिया
पाणे गच्छेज्जा ।

Iriyā-padam

69. *Jayamvihārī cittaṇivātī paṁthanijjhātī paḷivāhare,*
pāsiya paṇe gacchejjā.

Manner of Moving (for an Ascetic)

69. A *muni*, when moving about, should carefully concentrate his mind on his movements, and fix his eyes on the path (he is treading). On noticing living beings (insects, creatures), he should draw back his legs, and move on observing and carefully avoiding the living beings coming across his path.

७०. से अभिक्कममाणे पडिक्कममाणे संकुचेमाणे पसारमाणे
विणियट्टमाणे संपलिमज्जमाणे ।

70. *Se abhikkamamāṇe paḍikkamamāṇe saṁkucemāṇe*
paṣāremāṇe viṇiyaṭṭamāṇe saṁpalimajjamāṇe.

70. Those living beings¹ may either be coming towards him or going away, contracting or expanding (their limbs) or lying still or crawling in dust.

कम्मणो बंध-विवेग-पदं

७१. एगया गुणसमियस्स रीयतो कायसंफासमणूचिण्णा एगतिया
पाणा उदायति ।

information and also the verse - *Tamnutti tappurakkāre wautte*," of the *Uttarādhyayana Sūtra* (24/8), both these aphorisms (viz. 68, 69) may be interpreted in terms of *iriyā*, but we have translated aph. 68 in the context of *Kusala* (i. e., Bhagavān Mahāvira) (see Aphorism 67) on the basis of the explanation of the *Cūrṇi* cf. 5/109.

1. This aphorism has been translated here by considering the words *abhikkamamāṇe* etc. to be the adjectives of *pāṇe* and in the accusative plural.

Kammaṇo baṃḍha-vivega-padam

71. Egayā guṇasamiyassa rīyato kāyasamphāsamaṇuciṇṇā egatiyā pāṇā uddāyaṃti.

Bondage and Riddance of Karma Particles

71. It may so happen that some living beings get injured or (even) killed by coming in touch with the body of a (perfectly) vigilant *muni* (i. e. an *appramatta muni*, having attained a *gṛasthāna* (i. e. a stage of spiritual development) from seventh to thirteenth) while doing some activity.

७२. इहलोग-वेयण-वेज्जावडियं ।

72. Ihaloga-veyaṇa-vejḡāvaḡiyam.

72. (If any living being gets injured or killed inadvertently by the touch of the body of any *pramatta muni*, (not perfectly vigilant and occupant of the sixth *gṛasthāna*) who, however, otherwise is carrying on his operations in accordance with the Right Deportment), the *muni* incurs bondage of (only that *karma*, which comes to rise in his present life.

ANNOTATIONS 71-72. The bondage of *karma* particles incurred due to killing of living beings is not always identical. It depends upon the intensity of passions and one's mental state.

If a living being is killed by coming in contact with the body, —

(a) in the case of a *muni* who has attained the highest form of *samādhi* (i. e. profound meditation) or the *śaileṣī* stage (whose mind is rendered as staid, calm and immobile as a mountain), no *karma*-bondage is incurred;

(b) in the case of a *vītarāga muni* (i. e. one who is completely free from passions or attachment and aversion), but who has not withdrawn from the activities of mind, speech and body, the *karma*-bondage endures for two *samayas* (i. e. two time-points) only;

(c) in the case of an (*avītarāga*) *apramatta muni* (i. e. vigilant but not completely free from passions), the *karma*-bondage endures for minimum *antar-muhūrta* (i. e. less than 48 minutes) and maximum 8 *muhūrtaś* (i. e. 6 hours 24 minutes) ;

(d) in the case of a *muni* who is not perfectly vigilant (*pramatta*) but is acting in accordance with the Right Deportment, the duration of the *karma*-bondage incurred is minimum *antar-muhūrta* and maximum eight years. He gets rid of it by experiencing it in the present life.

७३. जं आउट्टिकयं कम्मं, तं परिण्णाए विवेगमेति ।

73. Jāṃ āuttikayaṃ kammaṃ, taṃ pariṇṇāe vivegameti.

73. The karma-particles incurred by (the *pramatta muni* occupying the sixth *gumasthāna*), who is carrying on his operation out of accord with the Right Deportment, can be disposed of through expiation¹.

७४. एवं से अप्पमाएणं, विवेगं कट्ठति वेयवी ।

74. Evaṃ se appamāṇaṃ, vivegaṃ kittati veyavī.

74. The dissolution (of *karma* bondage which is caused by *pramāda* (i. e. non-vigilance), is effected through *apramāda* (i. e. vigilance); the composer of the *sūtra* (canonical text) has so propounded.

बंभचेर-पदं

७५. से पभूयदंसी पभूयपरिण्णाणे उवसंते समिए सहिते सया जए
दट्ठुं विप्पडिवेदेति अप्पाणं—

Bambhacera -padaṃ

75. Se pabhūyadaṃsī pabhūyapariṇṇāṇe uvasante samie sahite sayā jae dātthum vippaḍivedeti appāṇaṃ —

1. Expiation is of 10 kinds: out of which *tapa* (i. e. penance) and *cheda* (i. e. reduction of rank as penalty) are prescribed for dissolving the above sort of *karma* bondage.

Practice of Celibacy

75. A *muni* who has deep insight and extensive knowledge, who has subdued his passions, who is engaged in right activity, and is equipped (with Knowledge, Spiritual Experience and Self-discipline) and is ever subjugating his senses, reflects on seeing (a woman bent up on seducing him) —

७६. किमेस जणो करिस्सति ?

76. Kimesa jano karissati?

76. "What can this person (i. e. woman) do unto me?

७७. एस से परमारामो, जाओ लोगम्मि इत्थीओ ।

77. *Esa se paramārāmo, jāo logammi itthiō.*

77. "Even though in this world, women are the sources of utmost pleasure, (what happiness, can they give to me? For, I am already happy by myself)."

ANNOTATIONS 76-77. These aphorisms are comparable to the following verse of Ācārya Kundakunda:

*Timiraharā jāi diṭṭhī, janassa dīveṇa natthi kadavvam/
Tadha sokkham sayamadda, visaya kim tattha kuṇvamti//¹*

"Of what use is a lamp to a person whose eyes have the power to destroy the darkness? What purpose can external objects of delight serve when the Self itself is (a treasure of) happiness?"

७८. मुनिणा हु एतं पवेदितं, उब्बाहिज्जमाणे गामधम्ममेहि—

78. Muṇiṇā hu etaṃ paveditaṃ, ubbāhijjamāṇe gāma-dhammehiṃ —

78. Bhagavān Mahāvīra has prescribed this (in the following aphorisms) to the *muni* tormented by sex —

७९. अवि निब्बलासए ।

1. *Pravacanasāra*, 67.

77. Avi piḅbalāṣae.

79. He should eat food which is not rich.

ANNOTATION 79. By taking food rich in calories, the physical vigour tends to increase, and there are more chances of sexual arousal. Decaloried food, on the other hand, reduces physical vigour and consequently the passions also get weakened in a less vigorous body. That is why decaloried food has been prescribed as the first per-requisite for toning down the sexual passions.

८०. अवि ओमोयरियं कुज्जा ।

80. *Avi omoyariyaṃ kujjā.*

80. He should take light diet.

ANNOTATION 80. The passions of a person taking heavy diet are more likely to get strong, while light diet helps in pacifying lust.

८१. अवि उद्धमंठाणं ठाइज्जा ।

81. *Avi uddhamṭhāṇaṃ ṭhāijjā.*

81. He should perform *kāyotsarga* (i. e. relaxation and renunciation of bodily activities) by practising *ūrdh-vasthāna* (i. e. adopting the posture in which legs are kept upward and head downwards).

ANNOTATION 81. *Ūrdhvasthāna* must be practised at night; it could also be practised in day-time if there was need to do so. In accordance with one's requirements, one should practice it for one, two, three or four *praharas* (1/4th of a day or night). It is a very effective means to curb sexual passions.

The word *urdhvasthāna* denotes the *mudrā* (posture) indicated by word *Uddhamṃjāṇū, ahoṣire'* in the *Bhagawati Sūtra* (1/9). The same *mudra* is discussed in the *Hathayoga Pradīpikā* by '*urdhvanābhiraḍḥastāluḥ*' (3/79) and '*Adhaḥ-śiraśchordhwapādaḥ*' (3/81).

The *ūrdhvasthāna mudrā* signifies mainly the *sarvāṅgā-sana* and secondarily the *śīrṣāsana*, *vrkṣāsana*, etc. These Yoga postures or *āsanas* help mollify the centres of id-impulses; the mollification of these centres, in turn, causes passions to pacify.

८२. अवि गामाणुगामं दूइज्जेज्जा ।

82. *Avi gāmāṇugāmam dūijjejjā.*

82. He should undertake journeys on foot from village to village.

ANNOTATION 82. Passions are more likely to get intensified in conditions of ease and comfort. Undertaking journeys on foot involves intense efforts and endurance of hardships. Hence, it is in itself a means to get oneself free from sexual passions through its sublimation.

By trekking one automatically practices the *ga mana yoga* (i.e. the activity involving walking) and gets easily rid of the fetters of affection which one acquires through continuous acquaintance with one place and its inhabitants.

८३. अवि आहारं वोच्छिदेज्जा ।

83. *Avi āhāraṁ vocchimdejja.*

83. He should undertake fasting.

ANNOTATION 83. From fasting for a day to fasting for a longer period is prescribed and even fasting unto death is permissible for the subdual of sexual passions.

८४. अवि चए इत्थीसु मणं ।

84. *Avi cae itthīsu maṇam.*

84. He should give up thinking about the opposite sex.

ANNOTATION 84. It is surroundings that stimulate sexual passions, but it is the thought-process which fans them all the more.

That is why, the passions are said to be born out of

thought-process —

"*Kāma jānāmi te mūlaṃ, saṃkalpāt kila jāyase/
Saṃkalpaṃ na kariṣyāmi, tena me na bhaviṣyasi//* "

— "O Cupid! I know you are born out of thought-processes. I shall not indulge in them. Consequently, you shall not be born in my mind."

Six means of sublimating passions have been advocated in the aphorisms 79 to 84. Out of these, the first three are related to diet, and the remaining viz. the *ūrdhva-sthāna*, undertaking journeys on foot, and ceasing from thoughts about sex are respectively related to physical exercise, hard work and mental equilibrium. Out of these means, that which suits him the most should be practised by a *sādhaka*.

According to the author of the *Cūrṇi*, this therapy for the malady of passions is prescribed for a less intelligent *muni*. But a scholarly *muni* should be cured of this malady by keeping himself busy in scriptural studies and their assimilation.

८५. पुण्यं वंश पच्छा फासा, पुण्यं फासा पच्छा वंश ।

85. *Puṇyaṃ daṇḍā pacchā phāsa, puṇyaṃ phāsa pacchā daṇḍā*

85. (In some cases) suffering precedes (sensual) pleasure, (whereas in some other) pleasure precedes suffering.

ANNOTATION 85. Sensual pleasures are always accompanied by suffering, be it before them or after them. They never go unpunished. People who indulge in them have to suffer.

८६. इच्छेते कलहासंगकरा भवन्ति । पडिलेहाए आगमेता आणवेज्जा
अणसेवणाए त्ति बेमि ।

86. *Iccete kalahāsaṅgakarā bhavaṃti. Paḍilehāe āgamettā āṇavejjā aṇasevaṇāe tti bemi.*

86. These sensual pleasures result in quarrel and attachment. Bearing in mind the Instructions of the

Āgamas (scriptures), (the Preceptor) should instruct his disciple to refrain from sensual pleasures by apprising him of their pernicious consequences. I say so.

८७. से णो काहिए णो पासणिए णो संपसारए णो ममाए णो कय-
किरिए बहुत्ते अज्झप्प-संवुडे परिवज्जए सदा पाव ।

87. Se ño kāhie ño pāsaṇie ño saṃpasārae ño mamāe ño kayakirie vaigutte ajjhappa-saṃvuḍe parivajjāe sadā pāvaṃ.

87. A *sādhaka* practising celibacy ought not to indulge in sexy talks, nor cast amorous glances at opposite sex, nor mutually communicate lusty ideas, nor develop feelings of attachment, nor resort to external beautification; he should observe silence, keep his mind under absolute restraint and always abstain from sin.

८८. एतं मोणं समणुवासिज्जासि ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

88. Etaṃ moṇaṃ samaṇuvāsijjāsi.

— Tti bemi.

88. Follow meticulously this knowledge (prescribed as abstinence from incontinence).

— I say so.

SECTION V

पंचमो उद्देशो

Pañcamo Uddeso

आयरिय-पदं

८९. से बेमि—तं जहा,
 अवि हरए पडिपुण्णे, चिट्ठइ समंसि भोमे ।
 उवसंतरए सारक्खमाणे, से चिट्ठति सोयमज्झगए ।

Āyariya-padam

89. Se bemi — tam jahā,
 avi harae paḍipunṇe ciṭṭhai samamsi bhome;
 uvasamtarae sārakkhamāṇe, se ciṭṭhati soyamajjha-
 gae.

Preceptor

89. I say —
 There is a lake full (of lotuses); which is situated on
 an even plane, is absolutely limpid, conserves (am-
 phibian life) and is the confluence of various streams.

ANNOTATION 89. Lakes are of four kinds;

- (1) One in which no stream flows but from which a channel emerges.
- (2) The converse of No. 1.
- (3) One in which a stream flows as well as a channel emerges.
- (4) The opposite of No. 3.

The metaphor of the lake refers to the Preceptor (*ācārya*). The preceptor possesses such traits as befitting an *ācārya*; he is a person standing on the ground of equanimity; he has subdued the passions; he conserves (i. e. does not kill) all living beings; he is surrounded on all sides by the streams of scriptural knowledge; like the lake of the third kind, not only does he imbibe knowledge, but also imparts it.

६०. से पास सब्बतो गुत्ते, पास लोए महेसिणो,
जे य पण्णाणमंता पबुद्धा आरंभोवरया ।

90. *Se pāsa savvato gutte, pāsa loe mahesīno,*
Je ya paṇṇāṇamāntā pabuddhā āraṁbhovarayā.

90. See! The preceptors are great seers, are perfectly subdued (in mind, speech and deed), who are erudite scholars and enlightened and abstain from (sinful) actions.

ANNOTATION 90. According to the *Cūrṇi, prajñāvēṇ* (i. e. wise person) is he who possesses the knowledge of fourteen *Pūrvās* (the Earlier Sacred Books) and a *prabuddha* (i. e. enlightened) person is he who is endowed with the clairvoyant and telepathic cognitions. A scholarly *monī*, possessing profound knowledge of the canonical texts extant can also be considered as *prabuddha*.

६१. सम्ममेयंति पासह ।

91. *Sammameyaṁti pāsaha.*

91. All this is true. See it.

ANNOTATION 91. The term *pāsaha* (Skt. *Paśyata*) signifies independent perception or conception. The author of the canonical texts professes. "Do not accept anything, just because I have said so. But use your sharp and unbiased intellect to examine this."

६२. कालस्स कंखाए परिव्वयंति त्ति वेमि ।

92. Kālassa kaṁkhāe parivvayaṁti tti bemi.

92. They (i. e. the preceptors) lead a life of self-discipline unto their last breath¹. I say so.

सद्धा-पदं

६३. वितिगिच्छ-समावन्नेणं अप्पाणेणं णो लभति समाधिं ।

Saddhā padam

93. Vitigiccha-samāvannenaṁ appāṇenaṁ no labhati samādhim.

Faith

93. A soul afflicted with doubt, does not attain to *samādhi* (i. e. perfect equipoise).

ANNOTATION 93. Topics worthy of comprehension are of three kinds:

- (1) Those which can be comprehended easily.
- (2) Those which can be known with difficulty.
- (3) Those which cannot be explored.

Doubt or disbelief can rise in the case of the topics of the second kind.

The term *samādhī* also denotes concentration or staidness of mind or Right Spiritual Experience.

६४. सिया वेगे अणुगच्छन्ति, असिया वेगे अणुगच्छन्ति,
अणुगच्छमाणेहि अणुगच्छमाणे कहं ण निव्विज्जे ?

-
1. The alternate translation of this aphorism can be made as follows:

They, waiting for death, lead a life of self-discipline (i. e. they neither have a desire for, nor have the fear from death).

94. Siyā vege aṇugacchaṃti, asiyā vege aṇugacchaṃti, Aṇugacchamāṇehiṃ aṇaṇugacchamāṇe kahaṃ ṇa ṇiv-vijje?
94. Some *sādhakas* follow (the path of *sādhanā*) by taking guidance from (the preceptor), while some do so without it. (But) how can a *sādhaka* who does not follow (the path of *sādhanā*), living amongst those who follow (the path of *sādhanā*), remain free from despondency (towards the practice of self-discipline)¹?

ANNOTATION 94. The state of mind of a *sādhaka* which flows from despondency is described in the following two categories of hardships viz. *prajñā pariśaha* and *ajñāna-pariśaha* discussed in the *Uttarādhyayana Sūtra* (2/40-43):

"A monk should never succumb to the onslaught of despondency due to ignorance by thinking thus: It is undoubtedly myself who, in the past, had indulged in actions which did engender ignorance as their consequence: it is on account of them that I know nothing, (not even how to answer) any question put to me by anyone. (40)

-
1. The authors of the *Cūṛṇi* and the *Yṛtti* have interpreted the words *siyā* and *asiyā* as *siṭā* and *asiṭā* i. e. "householders" and "ascetic" respectively. We have, however, interpreted them as *śritā* and *aśritā* in our translation. The alternate translations of the aphorism can be done as follows:
1. Some *munis* follow (the *ācārya*), while some householders also do so, (but) how can one who does not follow (the path of *sādhanā*), living among those who follow, remain free from despondency (towards the practice of self-discipline).
 2. (When the *ācārya* elucidates a subtle philosophical point), those who have (doubt) for such explanation, comprehend it and those who are free (from doubts) also comprehend it. (But) how can one who does not comprehend it, living among those who comprehend it, remain free from despondency (towards the practice of self-discipline).

"The *karma*, which as its consequence engenders ignorance, and which even if accumulated in the past, starts giving its fruits on rising." — Knowing thus the consequences of the *karma*, a *muni* should console his own soul. (41)

"I abstained from sexual intercourse and curbed my senses and mind — all this has been in vain. For I do not know directly or positively whether righteousness is beneficial or detrimental. (42).

"I practise austerities and religious observance. I have also undertaken special course of *sādhanā*. In spite of following such (higher) code of *sādhanā*, I have failed to obliterate the veils of *karma* obscuring knowledge." (43) — *Muni* should never think in such terms."

Also such a state of mind is comparable with the first *dukkha-śayyā* (i. e. living in gloom) described in the *Sthānāṅga Sūtra* (4/450).

The next aphorism is meant to boost up the faith of a *sādhaka* and dispel his gloom.

६५. तमेव सच्चं नीसकं, जं जिणेहि पवेइयं ।

95. *Tameva saccaṃ nīsaṅkaṃ, jaṃ jīṇehiṃ paveiyam.*

95. Only that, which has been propounded by the *Tīrthāṅkaras* is true and free from doubt.

मज्झिम-निकाय-पत्रं

६६. सद्धिस्स णं समणुणस्स संपव्वयमाणस्स—

समियंति मण्णमाणस्स एगया समिया होइ ।

समियंति मण्णमाणस्स एगया असमिया होइ ।

असमियंति मण्णमाणस्स एगया समिया होइ ।

असमियंति मण्णमाणस्स एगया असमिया होइ ।

समियंति मण्णमाणस्स समिया वा, असमिया वा, समिया होइ

उवेहाए ।

असमियंति मण्णमाणस्स समिया वा, असमिया वा, असमिया होइ उवेहाए ।

Majjhāttha-padam

96. Saddhissa ñaṃ samaṇunnassa, saṃpavvayamāṇassa —
 Samiyaṃti maṇṇamāṇassa egayā samiyā hoi.
 Samiyaṃti maṇṇamāṇassa egayā asamiyā hoi.
 Asamiyaṃti maṇṇamāṇassa egayā samiyā hoi.
 Asamiyaṃti maṇṇamāṇassa egayā asamiyā hoi.
 Samiyaṃti maṇṇamāṇassa samiyā vā, asamiyā vā,
 samiyā hoi uvehāe.
 Asamiyaṃti maṇṇamāṇassa samiyā vā, asamiyā vā,
 asamiyā hoi uvehāe.

Unbiased Attitude

96. One who is possessed of faith and observes the right conduct¹ and right form of asceticism —

considers a course of action to be right and, it, in fact, is right;

considers a course of action to be right, but, it, in fact, is not right;

considers a course of action to be false, but, it, in fact, is right;

considers a course of action to be false, but, it, in fact, is also false.

Whether a particular course of action is right or false, it is considered to be right (and proper) on account of the unbiased attitude (i. e. freedom, from attachment and aversion) of the person who considers it to be right. Similarly, whether or not a particular course of action is right or false, it is considered to be false (or improper) on account of the unbiased attitude of the person who considers it to be false.

ANNOTATION 96. All *munis* do not possess the faculty of direct perception; and their knowledge and way of thinking

1. *Samaṇaṇṇa* — one whose *anujñā* i. e. qualification is proper.

may also differ. A person devoid of direct (or Transcendental) Perception can judge a particular course of action only through exercising his own unbiased discretion, but he cannot judge if that course of action is actually right or not. Therefore, the canonist has asserted here that, for one whose conscience is pure and whose discernment is unprejudiced, a particular course of action is right, if it is felt so empirically. In the same way, anything propounded to be improper by him is improper, whether it is in reality improper or not.

Thus a *śramaṇa* who practises any course of action in an unbiased way, is aptly called as the Truth-seeker. This very fact has been mentioned in the present *sūtra*. It is perfectly consistent with the description of the five *vya-vahāras* (Cf. *Sthānāṅga Sūtra*, 5/124).

६७. उवेहमाणो अणुवेहमाणं ब्रूया “उवेहाहि समियाए ।”

97. Uvehamāṇo aṇuvehamāṇaṁ brūyā "Uvehāhi samiyāe. "

97. One, having an unbiased outlook should say to one who has a biased outlook, "For the attainment of Truth, you should adopt the unbiased attitudes."

६८. इच्चेवं तत्त्व संघी झोसितो भवति ।

98. Iccevam tattha saṁdhi jhosito bhavati.

98. Complications (relating to the right and the wrong behaviour) can be resolved through the above mentioned method¹.

अहिंसा-पदं

६९. उट्ठियस्स ठियस्स गतिं समणुपासह ।

Ahimsā-padam

99. Uṭṭhiyassa ṭhiyassa gatiṁ samaṇupāsaha.

1. *Samdhi* denotes *granthi* (lit. a knot i. e. a complicated problem) and *jhosita* denotes *kṣapitaḥ* (i. e. dissolved).

Non-violence

99. Observe the carriage¹ of one who has risen-up (for practising self-discipline) and who is established in (it).

१००. एत्थवि बालभावे अप्पाणं णो उवदसेज्जा ।

100. Etthavi bālabhāve appāṇaṃ ṇo uvadaṃsejjā.

100. Do not support the ignorant thinking (such as there is no evil in perpetrating violence).

१०१. तुमंसि नाम सच्चेव जं 'हंतव्यं' ति मन्नसि,
 तुमंसि नाम सच्चेव जं 'अज्जावेयव्वं' ति मन्नसि,
 तुमंसि नाम सच्चेव जं 'परितावेयव्वं' ति मन्नसि,
 तुमंसि नाम सच्चेव जं 'परिधेतव्वं' ति मन्नसि ।
 तुमंसि नाम सच्चेव जं 'उद्देवयव्वं' ति मन्नसि ।

101. Tumaṃsi nāma sacceva jaṃ 'haṃtavvaṃ' ti mannasi,
 Tumaṃsi nāma sacceva jaṃ 'ajjāveyavvaṃ' ti man-
 nasi,
 Tumaṃsi nāma sacceva jaṃ 'paritāveyavvaṃ' ti
 mannasi,
 Tumaṃsi nāma sacceva jaṃ 'pariḥetavvaṃ' ti man-
 nasi;
 Tumaṃsi nāma sacceva jaṃ 'uddaveyavvaṃ' ti man-
 nasi.

101. One who you think should be hit is none else but you.

One who you think should be governed is none else but you.

One who you think should be tortured is none else but you.

One who you think should be enslaved is none else but you.

1. By *gati* is meant the steadiness of knowledge and perception, steadfastness of conduct and competence through the learning of scriptures, etc.

One who you think should be killed is none else but you.

ANNOTATION 101. Bhagavān Mahāvīra was the propounder of the doctrine that all souls are equal to one's own soul. This parity has been expressed in the present *sūtra*. Its purport is to establish the equality of feelings of two different souls.

The significance of the statement "One who you think should be hit is none else but you", is that one who you hit experiences the same feelings as you do, when you are hit by others.

१०२. अजू चय-पडिबुद्ध-जीवी, तम्हा ण हंता ण विधायए ।

102. Añjū ceya-paḍibuddha-jīvī, tamhā ṇa haṁtā ṇa vighāyae.

102. A sage is ingenuous and leads his life after comprehending (the parity of the killed and the killer). Therefore, neither does he cause violence to others nor does he make others to do so.

ANNOTATION 102. The term *añjū* (Skt. *Ṛju*) means ingenuous, self-disciplined or one who is keen to lead a self-disciplined life. The purport of the *sūtra* is that a wise man should abstain from violence, not through hypocrisy or fear, but through ingenuousness and spirit of self-discipline.

१०३. अणुसंवेयणमप्पाणेणं, जं 'हंतव्वं' ति णामिपत्तए ।

103. Aṇusañveyaṇamappāṇeṇaṁ, jaṁ 'haṁtavvaṁ' ti ṇā-bhīpatthae.

103. One has to experience himself the consequences¹ of one own *karma*. Hence, do not entertain the thought of hitting (i. e. causing violence to) anyone.

1. The term *aṇusañvedana* can also mean that one has to suffer exactly the same way as one has made others to suffer.

आय-पदं

१०४. जे आया से विण्णाया, जे विण्णाया से आया ।

जेण विजाणति से आया ।

Āya-padaṃ

104. *Je āyā se viṇṇāyā, je viṇṇāyā se āyā.
Jena vijāṇati se āyā.*

The Soul

104. The soul is that which cognizes; that which cognizes is the soul. Because it cognizes, it is soul.

ANNOTATION 104. That which knows, is the soul; that through which knowledge is gained, is also the soul. In these two *sūtras*, have been laid down the two definitions of the soul. The first of these two relates to substance, and the second to quality. The conscient soul is substance; consciousness, its quality. In other words, the former is the 'cognizer' and the latter, 'cognition'. Both the 'cognizer', and 'cognition' are one and the same, i. e. the soul. The 'Conscient' reality is not directly perceptible, but 'consciousness' is. Just as a person sitting inside a room can infer the existence of the sun through the sun-light, so can the existence of the 'cognizer' be deduced from the process of 'knowledge'. We know the 'knowable' through 'knowledge'. Hence, it can be said that we know (the existence of) 'knowledge' through knowing the knowable. Also, since 'knowledge' is the light of the 'knower', we know the 'knower' through 'knowing' the existence of 'knowledge'.

Soul is the 'substance', while knowledge is its quality. A substance and its quality are neither wholly identical nor wholly different. A quality always inheres in a substance, and hence both of them are identical. On the other hand, since one is the 'substratum', while the other is 'supported', both are different.

Knowledge, however, is the characteristic of soul. Hence, both are invariably concomitant.

The point here is: if the soul and knowledge are considered to be absolutely one and the same, even a single soul will become manifold, like knowledge. The present aphorism is clarification of this point — there are numerous manifestations of knowledge. Only on the basis of the phase of knowledge through which the soul passes at the particular moment, the right appellation of the soul can be ascertained. The soul which is occupied in cognizing through the sense of hearing is designated as the 'auditor' soul. Similarly, the soul engaged in gaining knowledge through mental processes is called 'psychic' soul. The soul occupied in cognizing such knowable entities as field, flag, chariot, horse, etc. can be called the percipient of field, flag, etc.

Cf. *Bhagavatī Sūtra*, (6/174) —

Gautama — "O Bhagavan! Is the soul a *jīva* or is consciousness a *jīva*?"

Bhagavān — "Gautama! the soul is certainly a *jīva* and so is consciousness."

१०५. तं पदुच्च पदिसंज्ञाए ॥

105. *Tam paḍucca paḍisaṃkhāe.*

105. Because of these (various manifestations of knowledge), the soul becomes the object of practical usage (i. e. various appellations are attributed to it).

१०६. एस आयावादी समियाए-परियाए वियाहिते ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

106. *Esa āyāvādi samiyāe-pariyāe viyāhite.*

— Tti bemi.

106. The believer in the Doctrine of Soul has been described as one who has attained the Truth¹.

— I say so.

1. The alternate translation of this aphorism may be done like this: This believer in the Doctrine of soul has been described as one who has attained the Equanimity.

SECTION VI

छट्टो उद्देशो

Chattho Uddeso

मागदंसण-पदं

१०७. अणाणाए एगे सोवट्ठाणा, आणाए एगे निरुवट्ठाणा ।

Maggadaṃsaṇa -padaṃ

107. Aṇāṇāe ege sovaṭṭhāṇā, āṇāe ege niruvaṭṭhāṇā.

Guidance

107. Some people exert themselves in non-conformity to the Instruction and are lax in conformity to it.

१०८. एतं ते मा होउ ।

108. Etaṃ te mā hou.

108. The thought (of exerting yourself in non-conformity to the Instruction, and laxity in conformity to it) should not even occur to you.

१०९. एयं कुसलस्स दंसणं ।

109. Eyaṃ kusalassa daṃsaṇaṃ.

109. This is the view of Bhagavān Mahāvīra.

११०. तद्धिदीए तम्म्युत्तीए तप्पुरक्कारे तस्सण्णी तन्निवेसणे ।

110. Taddiṭṭhiē tammuttīē tappurakkāre tassaṇṇī tanniwe-saṇe.

110. Fixing his mind on it (i. e. Bhagavān Mahāvīra's view), concentrating on it, giving it prominence,

becoming completely absorbed in its memory and throwing himself heart and soul in its (practice), one should follow it.

१११. अभिभूय अदक्खू, अणभिभूते पभू निरालंबयाए ।

111. Abhibhūya adakkhū, aṇabhibhūte pabhū nirālambā-
ṇayāe.

111. It is one who has overcome (the hurdles that come in the path of *śādhana*) realizes the Truth. Only he who is not vanquished (by hurdles) is competent to become free from all dependence.

ANNOTATION 111. A self-reliant person is always content with himself. (Cf. the *Uttarādhyaṇa Sūtra*, 29/34).

११२. जे महं अबहिमणे ।

112. Je maham abahimaṇe.

112. One who is great (i.e. who has salvation for his destination) should not allow his mind to go astray from the path of self-discipline (being dazzled by the miraculous feats of *Yoga*).

११३. पवाएणं पवायं जाणेज्जा ।

113. Pavāṇaṃ pavāyaṃ jāṇejjā.

113. Comprehend a philosophical view through (comprehensive study of) another one.

ANNOTATION 113. Critical examination of the diverse philosophical views have always been recognised in the field of religion and philosophy. One, who is desirous of adopting a particular creed or philosophical view, generally probes into other schools of philosophy. Bhagavān Mahāvīra also approved of such scrutiny. According to him, "After having studied one's own philosophy, a *muni* should study and critically examine other philosophical doctrines." But in doing so, he should be free from an attitude infected with attachment and aversion, that is to say, one should neither have attachment to one's own view nor have aversion for others'

views. Thus, he should not cherish the mentality of showing only the merits of one's own view and only the demerits of others. One should be perfectly unbiased and equanimous in critical examinations.

११४. सहसम्मइयाए, परवागरणेणं, अण्णेसिं वा अंतिए सोच्चा ।

114. Sahasammaiyāe, paravāgaraṇeṇaṃ, aṇṇesiṃ vā aṃtiē soccā.

114. (Comprehensive knowledge of the philosophical views can be gained) either through the recollections of the previous birth or through the revelations made by the *Tīrthankara* or through hearing from a person possessing transcendental knowledge.

११५. णिद्वेसं णातिवट्टेज्जा मेहावी ।

115. *Niddesaṃ ṇātiwattejjā mehāvī.*

115. A sage should not transgress the guidelines (of the *Tīrthankara*).

सच्चस्स अणुसीलण-पदं

११६. सुपडिलेहिय सव्वतो सव्वयाए सम्ममेव समभिजाणिया ।

Saccassa aṇusīlaṇa-padaṃ

116. Supaḍilehiya savvato savvayāe sammameva samabhi-jāṇiyā.

The Practice of Truth

116. One should follow nothing but the path of Truth¹, after having fully weighed all the pros and cons.

११७. इहारामं परिण्णाय, अल्लकीण-गुत्तो परिब्बए ।

णिद्वियद्वी बोरे, आगमेण सदा परक्कमेज्जासि ति वेमि ।

1. The alternate translation—Having made a perfect and complete observation, one should maintain nothing but Equanimity.

117. *Ihārāmaṃ parinnāya, allīṇa-gutto parivvāe.
Nīṭṭhiyaṭṭhi vīre, āgamaṇa sadā parakkamejjāsi tti bemi.*

117. Having discerningly realized Bliss in this (i. e. the practice of Truth), one should lead an ascetic life becoming deeply engrossed (in the Self) and subjugating the senses. Blessed with the accomplishment (of the practice of self-discipline, a courageous *muni* should always exert himself in tune with the purport of the scriptures¹. I say so.

११८. उद्धं सोता अहे सोता, तिरियं सोता वियाहिया,
एते सोया विक्कहाया, जेहि संगंति पासहा ॥

118. *Uddham sotā ahe sotā, tiriyaṃ sotā viyāhiyā.
Ete soya viyakkhāyā, jehim saṅganṭi pāsahā.*

118. There are secretory centres (of sensuality) in the upper (part of the body), they are in the middle (part of the body), and also they are in the lower part of body). These have been described as secretory centres (of sensuality). See that man becomes attached (to sensuality) through their secretions².

११९. आवट्ठं तु उवेहाए, एत्थ विरमेज्ज वेयवी ।

119. *Āvaṭṭam tu uvehāe, ettha viramejja veyavī.*

119. Having observed the whirlpools (of attachment and aversion), a wise *sādhaka* should keep himself away from them.

१२०. विषएत्तु सोयं निक्कम्म, एस महं अकम्मा जाणति पासति ।

120. *Viṇaettu soyaṃ nikkamma, esa maham akammā jāṇati pāsati.*

120. One who relinquishes sources of sensual pleasures and renounces worldly life, becomes a great *sādhaka*.

1. Cf. *Dasaveāliya Cūḷā*, 2/11.

2. Cf. 2/125, Annotation.

He, becoming free from action¹ (i. e. by going into meditation), knows and perceives.

१२१. पडिलेहाए णावकंखति, इह आगतिं गतिं परिणाय ।

121. Paḍilehāe ṇāvakaṁkhati, iha āgatiṁ gatiṁ pariṇāya.

121. A seer (of Truth), having discerningly known the arrival and departure of the Soul (i. e. the recurrent transmigration), does not crave (for sensual pleasures).

१२२. अच्चेइ जाइ-मरणस्स वट्टमग्गं वक्खाय-ए ।

122. Accei jāi-maraṇassa vaṭṭamaggāṁ vakkhāya-rae.

122. Absorbed in the Scriptures and their purport, a *muni* transcends the circular (i. e. cyclic) path of Birth and Death.

परमप्य-पदं

१२३. सव्वे सरा णियट्ठंति ।

Paramappa-padam

123. Savve sarā ṇiyattaṁti.

The Immaculate Soul – The Supreme Soul

123. All voices get reflected (i. e. fail to reach there — It is impossible to express the nature of the Immaculate Soul in words.

१२४. तक्का अत्थ ण विज्जइ ।

124. Takkā jattha ṇa vijjai.

124. There is no reason there i. e. He is beyond the grasp of logic.

१२५. नई तत्थ ण गहिआ ।

1. Cf. 2/38.

125. *Mai tattha na gāhiyā.*

125. The Intellect fails to grasp him.

१२६. ओए अप्पतिट्ठाणस्स खेयण्णे ।

126. *Oe appatiṭṭhāṇassa kheyāṇṇe.*

126. He is one and alone, body-less and the Knower.

१२७. से ण दीहे, ण हस्से, ण वट्ठे, ण तंसे, ण चउरंसे, ण परिमंडले ।

127. *Se ṇa dīhe, ṇa hasse, ṇa vatṭe, ṇa taṁse, ṇa caura-mse, ṇa parimaṇḍale.*

127. He (the Immaculate Soul) is neither long nor short, nor a circle nor a triangle, nor a quadrilateral nor a sphere.

१२८. ण किण्हे, ण णीले, ण लोहिए, ण हालिद्धे, ण सुक्किल्ले ।

128. *ṇa kiṇhe, ṇa ṇīle, ṇa lohīe, ṇa hālidde, ṇa sukkille.*

128. He is neither black nor bl e nor red nor yellow nor white.

१२९. ण सुब्धिगंधे, ण दुरभिगंधे ।

129. *ṇa subbhigaṇḍhe, ṇa durabhigaṇḍhe.*

129. He is neither a pleasant smell nor an unpleasant one.

१३०. ण तित्ते, ण कडुए, ण कसाए, ण अंबिले, ण महुरे ।

130. *ṇa titte, ṇa kaḍue, ṇa kasāe, ṇa āmbile, ṇa mahure.*

130. He is neither pungent,
nor bitter,
nor astringent,
nor sour,
nor sweet.

१३१. ण कक्खडे, ण मउए, ण गरुए, ण लहुए, ण सीए, ण उण्हे,
ण णिद्धे, ण लुक्खे ।

131. *ṇa kakkhaḍe, ṇa maue, ṇa garue, ṇa lahue, ṇa sīe, ṇa uphe, ṇa niddhe, ṇa lukkhe.*

131. He is neither hard, nor soft;
neither heavy, nor light;
neither cold, nor hot;
neither greasy, nor dry.

१३२. न कळ ।

132. Na kâu.

132. He is bodyless.

१३३. न रुहे ।

133. Na ruhe.

133. He is not subject to birth.

१३४. न संगे ।

134. Na saṅge.

134. He is free from attachment.

१३५. न इत्थी, न पुरिसे, न अण्णहा ।

135. Na itthī, na purise, na aṇṇahā.

135. He is neither female nor male, nor otherwise (i. e. neuter).

१३६. परिण्णे सण्णे ।

136. Pariṇṇe saṇṇe.

136. He is (immaculate) Knowledge and Intuition (i. e. He is consciousness and nothing but consciousness).

१३७. उवमा न विज्जए ।

137. Uvamā na vijjæ.

137. There exists no simile (to comprehend him).

१३८. अरुवी सत्ता ।

138. Aruvī sattā.

138. He is Formless Existence.

१३९. अपयस्स पयं नत्थि ।

139. *Apayassa payam natthi.*

139. He baffles all terminology. There is no word (to comprehend him).

१४०. से ण सद्दे, ण रुवे, ण गंधे, ण रसे, ण फासे, इच्चेताव ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

140. *Se ṇa sadde, ṇa rūve, ṇa gaṇdhe, ṇa rase, ṇa phāse, iccetaṇa.*

→ Tti bemi.

140. He is neither sound nor form nor odour, nor taste nor touch. Only so much (nothing more).

— I say so.

CHAPTER VI

ADVANCED ASCETICISM
(DHUTA)

छट्ठं अज्झयणं
धुयं

CHAṬṬHAṂ AJJHAYAṆAṂ

DHUYAṂ

SECTION I

पढमो उद्देशो

Padhamo Uddeso

नाणस्स निरुवण-पदं

१. ओबुज्जमाणे इह माणवेषु, आघाई से णरे ।

*Nāṇassa Virūvaṇa -padam*1. *Obujjhamāṇe iha māṇavesu, āghāi se ṇare.**Discourse on Knowledge*

1. An enlightened man discourses on (knowledge) to the people of the world.

ANNOTATION 1. No exegesis or philosophical exposition in this world is superhuman; it is all human.

२. जस्सिमाओ जाईओ सब्बओ सुपडिलेहियाओ भवन्ति, अक्खाई से
णाणमणेलिसं ।2. *Jassimāo jāio savvao supadilehiyāo bhavaṃti,*
akkhāi se ṇāṇamaṇelisam.

2. He (alone) who has thoroughly comprehended these genera of living beings in all directions, expatiates upon unparalleled Knowledge

३. से किट्ठति तेसि समुट्ठियाणं णिक्खित्तदंडाणं समाहियाणं
पण्णाणमंताणं इह मुत्तिमगं ।

3. Se kiṭṭati tesim̐ samutṭhiyāṇaṁ ṇikkhattadaṁḍāpaṁ samāhiyāṇaṁ paṇṇāṇamaṁtāṇaṁ iha muttimaggaṁ.
3. The enlightened philosopher expatiates upon the Path of Emancipation to those who are keen (on gaining the knowledge), who are restrained in all their mental, vocal and physical actions, whose mind is attentive and who are possessed of (spiritual) insight.

४. एवं पेगे महावीरा विपरक्कमन्ति ।

4. *Evam̐ pege mahāvīrā vipparakkamaṁti.*
4. Inspired by such philosophical discourses on Knowledge, the undaunted ones make assiduous efforts (in the practice of self-discipline).

अणत्तपण्णाणं अवसाद-पदं

५. पासह एगेवसीयमाणे अणत्तपण्णे ।

Aṇattapaṇṇāṇaṁ Avasāda-padaṁ

5. Pāsaha egevasīyamāṇe aṇattapaṇṇe.

Dejection amongst Sādhakas Lacking in Spiritual Insight

5. Lo and behold! All those who are lacking in spiritual insight feel dejected (in the practice of self-discipline i. e. asceticism).

६. से बेमि—से जहा वि कुम्मे हरए विणिबिदुच्चित्ते, पच्छन्त-पलासे,
उम्मग्गं से णो लहइ ।

6. Se bemi — se jahā vi kumme harae viṇivitṭha-citte, pacchanna-palāse, ummaggaṁ se ṇo lahai.
6. I illustrate (my point through a metaphor): Say, there is a tortoise (inhabiting the confines of a deep lake). The tortoise's mind is attached to the lake which is covered with moss and lotus-leaves. It (the tortoise) is unable to find a suitable opening (for getting a glimpse of the limitless sky).

ANNOTATION 6. The full purport of the metaphor in this aphorism is as follows: There was a large and deep lake

covered with layers of thick moss and lotus-leaves and full of all sorts of amphibian creatures. Once it came to pass that an aperture of the size of a tortoise's neck developed in the thick layers of moss. Dissociated from its family, a tortoise once accidentally happened to pass that way. It popped its head out of the hole and looked at the star-studded blue sky. Delighted, it thought to itself, "Why not get my entire family here and let them enjoy this beautiful sight?" So it went back, it brought its family with it and started off in search of the hole. But, as ill-luck would have it, it could never find it again. The vastness of the lake completely bewildered it.

This world is like the lake and man (householder) here is like the tortoise. "*Karman*" is like the moss. Right perception is the aperture (hole) through which the limitless horizon of self-discipline (or asceticism) can be seen. But if one goes back to the household life even after perceiving the sky of ascetic life, and becomes attached to worldly life, he is not able to get back the glimpse of the ascetic life.

This metaphor illustrates the dejection that accompanies a *sādhaka* lacking spiritual insight.

७. भंजगा इव सन्निवेसं णो चयंति, एवं पेगे—

अनेगरुवेहिं कुलेहिं जाया,

रुवेहिं सत्ता कलुणं थणंति,

जियाणलो ते न लभंति मोक्खं ।

7. Bhamjagā iva sannivesaṃ ṇo cayam̐ti, evaṃ pege—
Aṇegarūvehiṃ kulehiṃ jāyā,
Rūvehiṃ sattā kaluṇaṃ thaṇam̐ti,
Niyāṇao te ṇa labham̐ti mokkhaṃ.

7. Just as trees do not quit their place (inspite of undergoing all sorts of vagaries of weather), so also some people (do not renounce the household life). In this world people are born in diverse kinds of families (i. e. some are born in rich families, whereas some others are born in poor families). They wail pathetically (on being confronted by hardships that arise) on account of their clinging to sensual pleasures. Such people cannot extricate themselves from (the

miseries which are) the cause (of their pathetic wail of woe).

८. अह पास तेहि-तेहि कुलेहि आयत्ताए जाया—

गंडो अबुवा कोडी, रायंसी अवमारियं ।
 काणियं ज़िमियं खेव, कुणियं खुज्जियं तहा ॥
 उदरि पास मूयं च, सुणिअं च गिलासिणि ।
 खेवहं पीढसपिं च, सिलियं बहुमेहणि ॥
 सोलस एते रोगा, अवसाया अणुपुव्वसो ।
 अह नं फुसंति आयंका, फासा य असमंजसा ॥
 मरणं तेसि संपेहाए, उववायं चयणं च णच्चा ।
 परिपागं च संपेहाए, तं सुणेह जहा-तहा ॥

8. Aha pāsa tehiṃ-tehiṃ kulehiṃ āyattāe jāyā --
 Gaṇḍī aduvā koḍhī, rāyaṃsī avamāriyaṃ.
 Kāṇiyaṃ jhimiyaṃ ceva, kuṇiyaṃ khujjiyaṃ tahā..
 Udarī pāsa mūyaṃ ca, sūṇiāṃ ca gilāsiniṃ.
 Vevaiṃ pīḍhasappiṃ ca, silīyaṃ mahumehaṇiṃ..
 Solasa ete rōgā, akkhāyā anupuvvaso.
 Aha naṃ phusaṃti āyaṃkā, phāsā ya asamaṃjasā..
 Maraṇaṃ tesī saṃpehāe, uvavāyaṃ cayaṇaṃ ca
 ṇaccā.
 Paripāgaṃ ca saṃpehāe, taṃ suṇeha jahā-tahā..

8. See! Many people, born in diverse kinds of families (as a result of the rise of their *karma*, are afflicted with dreadful maladies):

1. Goitre
2. Leprosy
3. Consumption (Tuberculosis)
4. Epilepsy
5. One-eyedness
6. Apoplexy or paralysis
7. Defect in hands (such as handlessness, crookedness)
8. Hunch-backedness
9. Dropsy
10. Dumbness
11. Inflammation (or swelling)
12. Morbid appetite from over-digestion

13. Trembling
14. Crippledness (or lameness)
15. Elephantiasis
16. Diabetes.

The sixteen (chronic) diseases have been enumerated above. (Besides these) sometimes people are attacked with diseases which result in instantaneous death, and many other painful ills. Contemplate the deaths of people (afflicted with chronic diseases and instantaneously fatal diseases). Comprehend Birth and Death. Ponder over the consequences of the *karman*. Having done so, hear about its true nature.

६. संति पाणा अंधा तमसि वियाहिया ।

9. *Sānti pāṇā aṁdhā tamaṁsi viyāhiyā.*

9. Beings in darkness are called blind.

ANNOTATION 9. Darkness is of two kinds

- 1) Physical darkness — Absence of light.
- 2) Moral darkness — False belief and ignorance.

There are two kinds of blind people:

- 1) Physically blind people — lacking eye-sight.
- 2) Morally blind people — bereft of wisdom or discernment.

Those who adhere to false beliefs and ignorance are bereft of wisdom. They cannot visualise the cause and effect of *karman*.

१०. तामेव सई असई अतिअच्च उच्चावयफासे पडिसवेदेति ।

10. *Tāmeva saim asaim atiacca uccāvayaphāse paḍisaṁvedeṁti.*

10. Having been afflicted with it (i. e. the abovementioned woeful state) once or frequently, the beings experience the (painful) ills (in) acute or light (degrees).

११. बुद्धेहि एयं पवेदितं ।

11. Buddhehiṃ eyaṃ paveditaṃ.

11. This has been propounded by the Buddhas (i. e. *Tīr-thaṅkaras*).

पाणि-किलेस-पदं

१२. संति पाणा वासगा, रसगा, उदए उदयचरा, आगासगामिणो

Pāṇi-kilesa-padam

12. Saṃti pāṇā vāsagā, rasagā, udae udayacarā, āgāsa-gāmiṇo.

Tormentation of Beings by Other Beings:

12. The living beings are of various kinds —

- (a) Those produced in the rainy season (e.g. frogs, etc.);
- (b) Those born out of liquids (e.g. worms, etc.);
- (c) Those animals living in water (e.g. fish, etc.);
- (d) Those which can fly (e.g. birds, etc.).

१३. पाणा पाणे किलेसंति ।

13. *Pāṇā pāṇe kilesaṃti.*

13. Beings torment other beings (in various ways from injuring to killing).

ANNOTATION 13. There are two motives, in general, of one being tormenting another one:

- 1) Nourishment, and
- 2) Revenge.

१४. पास लोए महबभयं ।

14. *Pāsa loe mahabbhayaṃ.*

14. See! There is great terror in this world.

तिगिच्छापसंगे अहिंसा-पदं

१५. बहुदुक्खा हु जंतवो ।

*Tigicchāpasamge ahimsā-padam.*15. *Bahudukkha hu jantavo.**Observance of Non-violence in Medical Treatment*

15. Beings suffer legions of woes.

१६. सत्ता कामेहि माणवा ।

16. *Sattā kāmehi māṇavā.*

16. (Still) people are attached to sensual pleasures.

ANNOTATIONS 14-16. Beings torture other beings — this is a great terror engendered in this world. The vast host of woes and miseries in this world is also tantamount to great terror. Curiously enough, in spite of being horrified, people are attached to and enjoy the sensual pleasures.

१७. अबलेण वहं गच्छंति, सरीरेण पमंगुरेण ।

17. *Abaleṇa vhaṃ gacchānti, sarīreṇa pamaṅgureṇa.*

17. (Driven by the longing for life), people wish¹ to kill beings for the sake of maintaining this worthless and frail mortal frame.

१८. अट्ठे से बहुदुक्खे, इति बाले पगग्गह ।

18. *Atte se bahudukkhe, iti bāle pagabbhai.*

18. One, afflicted with pains, undergoes a host of miseries. Consequently that ignorant one becomes

1. The verb 'gacchānti', here means 'icchānti'. According to the author of the Cūrṇi, "Kamkhamti, patthamti and gacchamti are all synonymous." See Ac. Cūrṇi, p. 205.

shameless¹ (in torturing other creatures for the sake of mitigating his own miseries).

ANNOTATION 18. 'Does the next world exist? Who has seen it? Why should one suffer in this world and worry about a happy life in the next world? There is no sense in the principle that 'one has to reap the fruits of one's action in the next life'.²—This line of thinking is a sign of shamelessness.

१६. एते रोगे बहू नञ्चा, आउरा परितावए ।

19. *Ete roge bahū naccā, āurā paritāvae.*

19. The impassioned ones, having known that they are afflicted with diseases of various sorts (as mentioned previously in aph. 8), torment (other creatures for the sake of therapy).

२०. नालं पास ।

20. *Nālaṃ pāsa.*

20. But mind you! (All these therapies) are not competent enough (to remedy the maladies).

२१. अलं तवेएहि ।

21. *Alaṃ taveehim.*

21. Refrain from these (therapeutic measures) which cause misery to other creatures).

२२. एयं पास मुणी ! महब्भयं ।

22. *Eyaṃ pāsa muṇī! mahabbhayaṃ.*

1. The *Cūrṇi* and the *Tīkā* explain the text 'pakiavai' (in place of 'pagabbhai'). And therefore the translation would be — one, afflicted... ignorant one tortures other beings (for the sake of mitigating his own miseries) but the text in *Uttarādhyaṇa Sūtra* 5/7 is—"iti bāle pagabbhai." The author of the *Cūrṇi* here has taken "pagabbhai" to be a variant reading. This appears to be deeply meaningful and appropriate.

22. O Sage! Realize it yourself! These (remedies accompanied by violence) are the source of great fear (for others).

२३. नातिबाएज्ज कंचणं ।

23. *Nātivāejja kaṁcaṇaṁ.*

23. A *muni* should not kill any living being (even for the sake of therapy).

सयणपरिक्कायधृत-पदं

२४. आयाण भो ! सुस्सुस भो ! धूयवादं पवेदइस्सामि ।

Sayanapariccāyadhuta-padam

24. *Āyāṇa bho! sussūsa bho! dhūyavadaṁ pavedaissāmi.*

The Dhuta of the Abandonment of Relatives

24. O Sage! Realise this! Be attentive! I am going to expound the doctrine of the *Dhuta*¹.

1. The word *dhuta* literally means "separation by shaking off". Each of the five sections of the present chapter propounds one *dhuta* as follows:

1. The first section deals with the abandonment of one's kith and kin.
2. The second section deals with the abandonment of *karma*.
3. The third one deals with the abandonment of clothes and the body.
4. The fourth one deals with the abandonment of three types of conceit concerning *γddhi* — grandeur, *rasa* — delicacies, *sukha* — ease and comfort.
5. The fifth one deals with forbearance of *upsarga* (hardships) and abandonment of lust for honour.

२५. इह खलु अत्तत्ताए तेहि-तेहि कुलेहि अभिसेएण अभिसंभूता,
अभिसंजाता, अभिणिक्कटा, अभिसंबुद्धा, अभिसंबुद्धा
अभिणिक्खंता, अणुपुब्बेण महामुणी ।

25. Iha khalu attattāe tehiṃ-tehiṃ kulehiṃ abhiseeṇa abhisambhūtā abhisamjātā, abhiṇivvattā, abhisambuddhā, abhisambuddhā abhinikkhamtā, *aṇupuvvena mahāmuni*.

25. Man is born in various clans (or families) on account of his own spiritual state (i. e. in accordance with his own *karman*), through seminal effusion into the woman's uterus, and composition of pre-foetal flesh and muscles (i. e. embryo five days old), and development of various limbs. After birth, he gradually grows and matures. Then a day comes in his life when knowledge (enlightenment) dawns upon him. And thereafter he renounces the world. Through this process (of conception-birth-growth-enlightenment-renunciation) he becomes a *mahāmuni* — a great sage.

ANNOTATION 25. In the first week after conception, the "*kalala*" (embryo) is formed; in the second week the "*arbuda*" is developed; which later on develops into a foetus; and then, the muscles and limbs begin to grow. The words '*abhisambhūta*', '*abhisamjāta*', and '*abhinivvatta*' respectively denote the stages of the development of the embryo, foetus and muscles, and limbs.

२६. तं परवकमंतं परिदेवमाणा, "मा ने चयाहि" इति ते वदन्ति ।

छंदोवणीया अज्झोववन्ना, अक्कंदकारी जणगा वदन्ति ॥

26. *Taṃ parakkamaṃtaṃ paridevamāṇā, "mā ne cayāhi".*
iti te vadamti.

Chāṇdovaṇīyā ajjhovavannā, akkaṇḍakārī jaṇagā ru-
vamti.

26. When (after becoming enlightened, inspired by the spirit of self-discipline), a person proceeds to renounce the world and embrace asceticism, his parents

begin to lament and say, "Do not leave us, please. We respect each other's feelings. We have affection for you." Bewailing thus, his parents cry bitterly.

२७. अतारिसे मुणी, णो ओहंतरए, जणगा जेण विप्पजडा ।

27. Atārise muni, ṇo ohaṁtarae, jaṇagā jeṇa vippajadhā.

27. (They plaintively cry:) "Any person who has deserted his parents can neither be a *muni*, nor can he cross the ocean of '*saṁsāra*' (mundane existence)."

२८. सरणं तत्थ णो समेति । किह नाम से तत्थ रमति ?

28. Saraṇaṁ tattha ṇo sameti. Kiha nāma se tattha ramati?

28. He does not go back to his relatives, (in spite of their lamentation). For, how can an enlightened soul revel in the pleasures of family-life?

२९. एयं णाणं सया समणुवासिज्जासि ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

29. Eyaṁ ṇāṇaṁ sayā samaṇuvasijjāsi.

— Tti bemi.

29. Always follow this Knowledge meticulously.

— I say so.

SECTION II

बीओ उद्देशो

Bio Uddeso

कम्मपरिच्चायधुत-पदं

३०. आतुरं लोयमायाए, चइत्ता पुव्वसंजोगं हिच्चा उवसमं वसित्ता
 बंभचेरम्मि वसु वा अणुवसु वा जाणित्तु धम्मं अहा-तहा, अहेगे
 तमचाइ कुसीला ।

Kamma-pariccāyadhuta-padam

30. Āturaṃ loyamāyāe, caittā puvasaṃjogaṃ hiccā
 uvasamaṃ vasittā bambhacerammaṃ vasu vā aṇuvasu
 vā jāṇittu dhammaṃ ahā-tahā, ahege tamacāi kusīlā.

The Dhuta of the Abandonment of Karma

30. Some unrighteous *munis* unable to abide by the ascetic conduct, despite their having known this world to be afflicted (with passions etc.), having severed off all their former connections, having even practised tranquillization of mind, having taken to ascetic life (or having remained in the guidance of the preceptor) and having known rightly the duties of a lay follower as well as those of a monk,

३१. वत्थं पडिग्गहं कंबलं पायपुच्छणं विउसिज्जा ।

31. Vatthaṃ paḍiggaham kambalaṃ pāyapum̐chaṇaṃ viusijjā.

31. (They give up their **paraphernalia** such as) monastic cloaks, almsbowls, blankets, and dust-wipers (or soft brushes).

३२. अणुपुव्वेण अणहियासेमाणा परीसहे दुरहियासए ।

32. *Aṇupuvveṇa aṇahiyāsemāṇā parisahe durahiyāsae.*

32. (They give up the ascetic life simply) because they are unable to endure the intolerable hardships which continue to become successively severer.

ANNOTATION 32. The hardships (rigours) fall in two categories: agreeable and disagreeable. The temptation of sensual pleasure arising out of sound, beauty, etc. is agreeable hardship. On encountering these agreeable hardships, if one indulges in sensual pleasures, and on their cessation, if one reminisces them, he cannot endure these rigours. The converse of this is equally true. The same is the case with the 'disagreeable' hardships.

३३. कामे ममायमाणस्स इयाणि वा मुहुत्ते वा अपरिमाणाए भेदे ।

33. *Kāme mamāyamaṇassa iyaṇiṃ vā muhutte vā aparimāṇāe bheḍe.*

33. (One gives up the ascetic life) on account of infatuation with sensuality; his death may occur at that very moment or within a *muhūrt* (i. e. 48 minutes) or any time.

ANNOTATION 33. The enjoyment of sensual pleasures is also not free from obstacles, death being the most unsurmountable.

३४. एवं से अंतराइएहि कामेहि आकेबलिएहि अवितिण्णा चेए ।

34. *Evam se amtarāiehiṃ kāmehiṃ ākevaliehiṃ avitiṇṇā cee.*

34. Thus they (such people) can never overcome carnality which is fraught with many obstacles and conflicts.

ANNOTATION 34. Sensuality is always attended by obstacles, conflicts and absence of satiety. Driven by the desire of pleasure, man wants to enjoy sensual indulgence but in course of his enjoyment of carnal passions, he faces

obstacles like deprivation (of the object of enjoyment), death, disease, etc. He craves for the most agreeable and unalloyed enjoyment of sensual pleasures, but his efforts are thwarted by disagreeable impediments in his way. Insatiability being the characteristic of sensual pleasures, they are never satisfying. Consequently, craving for worldly delights increases in inverse proportion to their indulgence. This makes it impossible to transcend them.

३५. अहेगे धम्म मादाय आयाणप्पभिद्दं सुपणिहिए चरे ।

35. Ahege dhamma mādaya āyāṇappabhiim supaṇihie care.

35. Some one (else) who is initiated into the ascetic way of life and who has subdued his mind and senses leads the ascetic life.

३६. अपलीयमाणे दहे ।

36. *Apaliyamaṇe -dadhe.*

36. Remaining unattached to the worldly pleasures and firm¹ and unshakable (in his belief), (he follows the path of Righteousness).

३७. सव्वं गेहिं परिण्णाय, एस पणए महामुणी ।

37. *Savvaṃ gehiṃ parinṇāya, esa paṇae mahāmuni.*

37. Relinquishing fully all (sorts of) attachment and completely dedicating oneself (to Righteousness), one becomes a 'mahāmuni' (a great sage).

३८. अइअच्च सव्वतो संगं "ण महं अत्थित्ति इति एगोहमंस्सि ।"

38. *Aiacca savvato saṅgaṃ "ṇa maham atthitti iti ego-hamaṃsi."*

38. Forswearing all sorts of attachment in their entirety, (he should think in terms of) "No one (or nothing) is mine; hence I exist all by myself".

1. Only he who is patient and possessed of a strong physique can carry the burden (of ascetic life) through.

३९. जयमाणे एत्थ विरते अणगारे सव्वओ मुडे रीयंते ।

39. Jayamāṇe ettha virate aṇagāre savvao muṇḍe riyaṁte.

39. Being self-disciplined, he abstains from worldly desires, renounces the household life and becomes completely shorn¹ of (all his evils) and has no fixed abode.

४०. जे अचेले परिवुसिए सच्चिक्खति ओमोयरियाए ।

40. Je acele parivusie saṁcikkhati omoyariyāe.

40. A *muni*, who remains naked, practises (the penance called) *avamaudārya* (i. e. attenuation).

ANNOTATION 40. The terms *avamaudārya* means attenuation. It is of two kinds:

- (a) Physical — Attenuation of food and clothing.
- (b) Psychical — Attenuation of passions like anger, etc.

Possession of clothes may provoke anger. The practice of nudism amounts to the practice of the penance of attenuation of passions.

1. The *Sthānāṅga Sūtra* enumerates ten kinds of *muṇḍa*, literally one who has his head shaved and figuratively one who has stripped off all his evils).

1. Stripped off Anger.
2. Stripped off Conceit.
3. Stripped off Deceit.
4. Stripped off Avarice.
5. Shaven headed — by plucking out hair.
6. Free from the passion relating to the sense of audition.
7. Free from the passion relating to the sense of vision.
8. Free from the passion relating to the sense of odour.
9. Free from the passion relating to the sense of taste.
10. Free from the passion relating to the sense of touch.

४१. से अक्कुट्ठे व हए व लूसिए वा ।

41. *Se akkutthe va hae va lūsie vā.*

41. Someone may call him names; or beat him up, or maim him.

४२. पलियं पगंथे अदुवा पगंथे ।

42. *Paliyaṃ pagaṃthe aduvā pagaṃthe.*

42. Or someone may also abuse him (by reminding him) of his (past) deeds, or may abuse him using indecent or vituperative language.

ANNOTATION 42. People from all walks of life used to be ordained in the order of the *Aṛhat* (Mahāvīra). Some of them who were engaged in mean occupations during their household life were mocked at by people (who referred to their pre-ascetic vocations) with the derisive remarks such as "O weaver! So, you've become a *sādhu*, eh! What on earth do you know?"; "Listen ye, woodcutter! Look at yourself! Call yourself a *sādhu*? What about the heap of wood you used to bear on your shoulders only until the other day? Tut! Tut!"

४३. अतहेहिं सद्-फासेहिं, इति संखाए ।

43. *Atahehiṃ sadda-phāsehiṃ, iti saṃkhāe.*

43. Or someone may swear at him (by addressing him) with false imputations (such as rascal/rogue) and someone may calumniate him of having caused bodily harm like maiming the limbs. The *muni* should (forbear all this) by dispassionate thinking.

ANNOTATION 43. Dispassionate thinking here means that in the event of revilement, beating or mutilation, a *muni* should think on these lines:

1. The poor fellow must be influenced by evil spirit.
2. He must be mad.
3. That person must be arrogant.

4. All this must be due to my own past actions, which are now coming to the fore. That is why this ignoramus is calling me names, binding me hand and foot, or beating me up.
5. Let me bear these insults. Only by so doing shall the sharp edges of my past actions (misdeeds) be whittled down.

४४. एगतरे अणयरे अभिण्णाय, तितिक्खमाणे परिव्वए ।

44. Egatare aṇṇayare abhinñāya, tīlīkhamāṇe parivvāe.
44. Experiencing (the onset of) one or various kinds (of rigours), a *muni* ought to display forbearance and cheerfully follow the ascetic path.

४५. जे य हिरी, जे य अहिरीमणा ।

45. Je ya hirī, je ya ahirīmaṇā.
45. (A *muni* ought to remain unaffected by) rigours of an embarrassing nature (e. g. rigours of nudity) or otherwise (rigours of climate, such as excess of cold or heat, etc.) (and happily move along the path of asceticism).

४६. चिच्छा सव्वं विसोत्तिथं, फासे फासे समियदंसणे ।

46. Ciccā savvaṃ visottiyam, phāse phāse samiyadam-saṇe.
46. Possessed of Spiritual Experience, a *muni* should not let his mind waver. He should react to all sorts of external environment with complete equanimity.

४७. एते भो ! जगिणा वुत्ता, जे लोगंसि अणायमणधम्मिणो ।

47. Ete bho! jaḡiṇā vuttā, je logamsi aṇāgamaṇadhammiṇo.
47. In the spiritual field, only he is truly called a nude, who does not go back to worldly life, after having renounced it for good.

४८. आजाए मासगं धम्मं ।

48. *Āṇāe māmagam dhammam.*

48. The *munis* who are conversant with the Way of life I have laid down carry out my injunctions (throughout their life and observe asceticism).

ANNOTATION 48. The commentator has interpreted this aphorism in two ways:

(a) *Muni* should follow the Way of life in accordance with my exhortation (*ājñā*),

(b) Nothing belongs to me except the disciplined Way of life, hence let me carry out the instructions of the *Tīrthāṅkara* and follow aright this path.

However, the traditional interpretation which is more prevalent is: "My religion can be practised only if one acts according to my commandments."

We have translated here the word '*āṇāe*' as '*ājñāya*', for '*māmagam dhammam*' is in the accusative case.

४६. एस उत्तरवादे, इह माणवानं वियाहिते ।

49. *Esa uttaravāde, iha māṇavāṇam viyāhite.*

49. This Golden Principle has been laid down for the people of the world.

ANNOTATIONS 47-49. If, after having accepted the ascetic way of life, one goes back to his family life, he is said to be an '*āgamana dharma*'. The reason for going back to one's family life is inability to forbear various kinds of rigours and hardships. A person who withstands enticements of sensual pleasure, etc., rigours like being up-braided, nudism and begging alms, does not return to his family life. He becomes what is known as "*anāgamana dharma*." Bhagavān Mahāvīra laid down the principles of non-violence, and forbearance of hardships as the Way of life. Only if a person is conversant with it, can he remain completely unperturbed by the onset of various hardships; and it is only that person who remains unperturbed by them

unto his last breath, can truly lead a life of asceticism. The ability to forbear all kinds of hardships and not to relinquish the ascetic way of life, inspite of them is called the "*Uttaravāda*" (i. e. The Golden Principle).

५०. एत्थोवरए तं ज्ञोसमाणे ।

50. Etthovarāe taṁ jhosamāṇe.

50. A *sādhaka* who abstains from sensual enjoyment follows this Golden Principle (*Uttarvāda*).

५१. आयाणिज्जं परिण्णाय, परिपाएण विणिच्चइ ।

51. Āyāṇijjaṁ parinṇāya, pariyāṇa viṇiccai.

51. After having known the causes leading to the influx of *karma*, he renders them inoperative by the mode of (self-discipline i. e. ascetic life).

५२. इहमेगेसि एगचरिया होति ।

52. Ihamegesim egacariyā hoti.

52. Some *sādhus* practise solitary asceticism — i. e. they take the vow of a wandering recluse.

५३. तत्थियराइयेहि कुलेहि सुद्धेसणाए सव्वेसणाए ।

53. Tatthiyarāiyarehim kulehim suddhesanāe savvesanāe.

53. They (lead an ascetic life), collecting alms from various families after carefully and thoroughly ascertaining its propriety.

ANNOTATION 53. The term '*sarveṣaṇā*' implies all rules of begging food and eating. A recluse ought to observe these rules strictly.

५४. से मेहावी परिव्वए ।

54. Se mehāvī parivvāe.

54. Such a wise recluse should keep moving (from village to village).

५५. सुद्धिं अबुवा दुद्धिं ।

55. *Subbhiṃ aduvā dubbhiṃ.*

55. (He should eat whatever food he gets—) be it flavoured, or even unsavory, (with the least keenness or resentment).

५६. अदुवा तत्थ भेरवा ।

56. *Aduvā tattha bheravā.*

56. Or during the period of *sādhana* in solitariness (a *muni* should never be daunted by) dreadful (sights and sounds around him).

५७. पाणा पाणे किलेसंति ।

57. *Pāṇā pāṇe kilesaṃti.*

57. (He should not be panicky) if a beast of prey fatally attacks him.

५८. ते फासे पुट्ठो धीरो अहियासेज्जासि ।

—ति बेमि ।

58. *Te phāse puttḥo dhiro ahiyāsejjāsi.*

— Tti bemi.

58. On confrontation with such untoward circumstances (hardships), the courageous *muni* should patiently bear them.

— I say so.

SECTION III

तइओ उद्देसो

Taio Uddeso

उवगरणपरिच्चायधुत-पदं

५९. एयं खु मुणी आयाणं सया सुअक्खायधम्मं विधूतकप्पे
णिज्जोसइता ।

Uvagaraṇapariccāyadhuta-padam

59. Eyaṃ khu muṇī āyaṇaṃ sayā suakkhāyadhamme vid-
hūtakappe ñijjhositā.

The Dhuta of the Abandonment of Clothes

59. A *muni* who rightly follows this well-propounded faith¹

1. The literal meaning of the term *suakkhāe* (skt. *su-ākhyātaḥ*) is "well-propounded." Bhagavān Mahāvīra had propounded the religion of equanimity. It has the following characteristics:

- (1) It is *naiṛyātrika* — i. e. it is capable of leading to *nirvāna* (i. e. liberation).
- (2) It is *satya* (i. e. true), for it adopts the relativist (or non-absolutist) approach.
- (3) It is *saṃśuddha* (i. e. pure), for it is devoid of attachment, aversion and delusion.
- (4) It is *pratyutpanna* i. e. it is instantaneously capable of checking the influx of *karma*-particles and exhausting the effects of past actions.

That is why it is qualified as "*su-ākhyāta*."

and who leads a life of *Dhuta*-conduct, abandons (once and for all) the use of *ādāna*¹ (i. e. clothes).

६०. जे अचेले परिवुसिए, तस्स णं भिक्खुस्स णो एवं भवइ—परिजुण्णे मे वत्थे वत्थं जाइस्सामि, सुत्तं जाइस्सामि, सूइं जाइस्सामि, संधिस्सामि, सीवीस्सामि, उक्कसिस्सामि, वोक्कसिस्सामि, परिहिस्सामि, पाउणिस्सामि ।

60. Je acele parivusie, tassa ñaṃ bhikkhussa no evaṃ bhavai — parijunṇe me vatthe vatthaṃ jāissāmi, suttaṃ jāissāmi, sūiṃ jāissāmi, saṃdhissāmi, sīvissāmi, ukkasissāmi, vokkasissāmi, parihissāmi, pāṇissāmi.

60. A *muni* who abides by the vow of nudity is never vexed (by ideas like):

"This cloth of mine is tattered; I will, therefore, have to beg a new one. To mend the torn cloth, I shall have to ask for thread and needle, I shall have to stitch and/or sew it or I shall have to stitch or cut it to size (as the case may be). I shall have to wear it or wrap myself with it (and so on and so forth)."

६१. अदुवा तत्थ परक्कमांतं भुज्जोअचेलं तणफासा कुसंति, सीयफासा कुसंति, तेउफासा कुसंति, दंसमसगफासा कुसंति ।

61. Aduvā tattha parakkamaṃtaṃ bhujjo acelaṃ taṇaphāsā phusaṃti, siyaphāsā phusaṃti, teuphāsā phusaṃti, daṃsamasagaphāsā phusaṃti.

61. Or practising nudism, he is often oppressed by pricks of grass, the severities of heat and cold, and the stings of gad-flies and mosquitoes.

1. The author of the *Cūṇi* has interpreted the word *ādāna* in the sense of the trio of Knowledge, Perception and Conduct, whereas the commentator has interpreted it in the sense of "*karma*" or clothes. Contextually, however, the meaning "clothes" appears to be more appropriate.

६२. एगयरे अण्णयरे विरूवरूवे फासे अहियासेति अचेले ।

62. Egayare añṇayare virūvarūve phāse ahiyāseti acele.

62. The nude monk bears hardships of one or various sorts.

६३. लाघवं आगममाणे ।

63. Lāghavaṁ āgamamaṇe.

63. He feels lighter in spirit.

६४. तवे से अभिसमण्णागए भवति ।

64. Tave se abhisamañṇāgae bhavati.

64. The practice of nudism by a *muni* facilitates for him the observance of austerities like curtailment of monastic paraphernalia and *kāya-kleśa* penances.

६५. जहेयं भगवता पवेदितं तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए समत्तमेव समभिजाणिया ।

65. Jaheyam bhagavatā paveditaṁ tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhijāṇiyā.

65. The ascetic nudism which has been recommended for a *muni* by Bhagavān Mahāvīra should be interpreted in the same sense in which it is meant and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly (i. e. no one should be despised).

ANNOTATION 65. Some *munis* are more scantily clad than the others, i. e. the number of clothes possessed by each varies. But this does not give them a feeling of hauteur towards their brethren. For they realize that all of them are disciples of the *Tīrthaṅkaras*. This difference in discipline is due to one's individual physical structure and temperament. Nevertheless, a *muni* who conforms to nudism does not underestimate or despise another *muni* who is a non-nudist.

The *Āyāra-cūlā* (5/21) records that a *muni*, accepting self-imposed vows with regards to scantiness of clothes, should not deem — "These *munis* labour under false presumptions; I do not." On the contrary, he should think in

these terms: "We are all practising self-restraint according to the Instruction of the *Tirthaṅkara*."

This, in fact, comprises the observance of "*samatva*" (practising equanimity).

सरीरलाघवधृत-पदं

६६. एवं तेसि महावीराणं चिरराइं पुव्वाइं वासाणि रीयमाणानं
दवियाणं पास अहियासियं ।

Sarīralāghavadhuta-padam.

66. Evaṁ tesim mahāvīrāṇaṁ cirarāim puvvāim vāsāṇi
rīyamāṇāṇaṁ daviyāṇaṁ pāsa ahiyāsiyaṁ.

The Dhuta of Attenuation of the Body

66. See! How all these brave and self-disciplined *munis* endured various hardships, having been initiated into asceticism during the prime of their life and how they adhered all their life to self-restraint.

६७. आगयपण्णाणानं किंसा बाहा भवन्ति, पयणुए य मससोणिए ।

67. Āgayapaṇṇāṇāṇaṁ kiṣā bāhā bhavaṁti, payaṇue ya
maṁsasoe.

67. The *muni* who most painstakingly acquires profound Scriptural Knowledge, (attenuates his body to such an extent that) his arms become lean, with very little flesh and blood on his body.

ANNOTATION 67. During the period of scriptural studies, a *muni* undertakes fasting, dieting or eating non-fat-producing food. This leads to emaciation of his body indicated by his lean and thin arms. On account of eating little or decalorised food, little nourishment is produced in the body, which in its turn is responsible for under-production of flesh and blood. Consequently, the body gets emaciated. Also, because of constant preoccupation with hard studies, the body loses weight. Thus austerities — both external and internal — cause attenuation of the body.

The author of the *cūṭṭi* has pointed out that all the above

aphorisms relating to curtailment of belongings are applicable also to the attenuation of the body. Accordingly, these aphorisms (viz. 63, 64 and 65) can be translated thus:

63. A *muni* who is absorbed in the acquisition of knowledge and practises austerities is blessed with the attenuation of the body.
64. Attenuation of the body facilitates for him the practice of *tapa* i. e. austerity.
65. Attenuation of the body which has been recommended for a *muni* by Bhagavān Mahāvīra should be interpreted in the same sense in which it is meant, and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly — no one should be despised.

Thus, the *muni* observing four-months' fast should not despise another *muni* who has observed only one month's fast. Similarly, a *muni* observing fasts on alternate days should not deride one who takes his meals daily. So also, should a *muni* who has made a higher study than another refrain from despising him.

A *muni* who practises equanimity does not despise others.

६८. विस्सेणि कट्टु, परिण्णाय ।

68. Vissenim kattu, pariṇṇāe.

68. A *muni* ought to cut across the chain of *rāga* and *dvesa* (attachment and aversion) through the discernment (born of equanimity).

६९. एस तिण्णे मुत्ते विरए वियाहिए त्ति बेमि ।

69. Esa tiṇṇe mutte virae viyāhie tti bemi.

69. He (who has cut across the chain of attachment and aversion is said to have crossed the ocean of mundane existence), to be emancipated and to have ceased (from worldly activities). I say so.

संजमधुत-पदं

७०. विरयं भिक्खुं रीयंतं, चिररातोसियं, अरती तत्थ किं विधारे ?

Samjamadhuta-padam

70. *Virayaṃ bhikkhūṃ rīyaṃtaṃ, cirarātosiyam, aratī tattha kiṃ vidhārae?*

The Dhuta of Self-discipline

70. Can the feeling of boredom dampen the enthusiasm of such monk who, having been initiated into ascetic life for a long while, and having ceased from the enjoyment of sensual pleasures, successively progresses in the practice of self-discipline?

ANNOTATION 70. Weak, wavering, and wayward are the senses of man, and unimaginably far-reaching are the repercussions of Delusion. Bizarre, too, are the consequences of *karma*. No wonder, therefore, that even a wise soul is led astray by all these.

७१. संधेमाणे समुत्थिए ।

71. *Sandhemāṇe samutthie.*

71. Conjoining (every moment of his life with righteousness), and constantly engaged in freeing himself from passions, (a true *muni* is never deterred from following his path by any possible apathy to asceticism).

ANNOTATION 71. Although a *sādhaka* endeavours happily to observe self-restraint after having renounced sensual pleasures, he may, during the period of his *sādhanā*, become prone to sensuality arising out of stupor and passions which keep rearing up their ugly heads from time to time. Nevertheless, a conscientious *sādhaka* unifies religion with the mainstream of self-realization¹. By so doing, he experiences spiritual ecstasy.

1. Starting with the development of his conscious judgement (*samyaktva*), the *sādhaka* voluntarily renounces

७२. जहा से दीवे असंदीणे, एवं से धम्मो आयरिय-पदेसिए ।

72. *Jahā se dīve asaṁdīṇe, evaṁ se dhamme āyariya - padesie*

72. Just as an island, unthreatened by water, serves (as a place of refuge for the passengers of a ship), so also does the Religion (i. e. Way of Life), laid down by the *Tīrthaṅkara*, serve (as the mainstay for the people of this world who are bound for the Journey Beyond).

ANNOTATION 72. The word "*dīva*" can be interpreted in two ways, '*divīpa*' (island) and '*dīpa*' (lamp or light or light-house). '*Dīpa*' gives us 'light' and '*divīpa*' gives 'shelter' or 'refuge'. Each of these two is of two kinds:

(a) *Samdina*: In the context of 'island', the word means 'the land which gets flooded with water high tide and becomes dry on ebb'. In the context of 'lamp' (or 'light'), it denotes 'the lamp which is liable to be extinguished.'

(b) *Asaṁdina*: In the context of 'island' the word means 'the land which does not get flooded with water.' In the context of 'lamp' or 'light', the word denotes 'perennial sources of light, such as the sun, the moon, various gems, etc.'

In the context of religion, 'the Right Knowledge' (*samyakva*) stands for 'an island affording refuge'.

sensual pleasures and endeavours to find happiness in self-discipline. During the period of his *sādhana*, however, passionate instincts and impulses which might have been repressed and relegated to the subconscious, may continue to torment him in the form of crude urges for sensual pleasures. Nevertheless the alert (*apramatta*) *sādhaka* would constantly reinforce the power of his reasoning mind and weaken the forces of primal urges by systematic practice of meditation. Thus, he canalises his aggressive urges into the mainstream of self-realization.

Saṁdīna Island is equivalent to 'revocable Right Knowledge', whereas *Asaṁdīna Island* is equivalent to 'irrevocable righteousness'. Knowledge is the lamp (or light). Scriptural Knowledge is 'light that may get dim or extinguished', while Self-knowledge is 'perennial light'.

The enthusiasm in ascetic practices of a *muni* who is keen in conjoining Righteousness with life is comparable to an *asaṁdīna* island or lamp.

७३. ते अणवकंखमाणा अणतिवाएमाणा दइया मेहाविणो पंडिया ।

73. Te aṇavakamkhamāṇā aṇativāemāṇā daiyā mehaviṇo paṇḍiyā.

73. Such *munis* do not crave for worldly pleasures, and never 'take others' lives. By virtue of these qualities, they endear themselves to the world (i. e. win recognition in religious circles), and are called sages illuminated by Knowledge of the Self.

विणयधृत-पदं

७४. एवं तेसिं भगवओ अणुट्ठाणे जहा से दिया-पोए ।

Vinayadhuta-padam

74. Evam tesim bhagavao aṇuṭṭhāṇe jahā se diyā-poe.

The Dhuta of Humbleness

74. Just as the young ones of birds (act in accordance with the instructions of their parents), so should the young disciples abide by the instructions of their learned teachers (who are like islands for refuge).

ANNOTATION 74. When the young of a bird is still in the egg and even after being hatched, it keeps getting sustenance from the warmth of parent's feathers. It is fed and taught by its parents, until it learns to fly, when it leaves them and is on its own.

The behaviour of a newly initiated *muni* has been compared to the behavioural patterns of the young ones of birds.

A young disciple remains under the care of his *guru*, until he gains full knowledge and maturity and is able to lead, on his own, a life of solitary asceticism.

७५. एवं ते सिस्सा दिया य राओ य अणुपुब्बेण वाइय ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

75. *Evam te sissā diyā ya rāo ya anupuvvena vāiya.*

—Tti bemi.

75. Thus, progressively trained, day and night, a disciple (becomes ultimately competent to attain the Self).

— I say so.

SECTION IV

चउत्थो उद्देसो

Cauttho Uddeso

गोरवपरिच्छायधृत-पदं

७६. एवं ते सिस्सा दिय्या य राओ य, अनुपुव्वेण वाइया तेहि महा-
वीरेहि पण्णाणमतेहि ।

Goravapariccāyadhuta -padaṃ

76. Evaṃ te sissā diyā ya rāo ya, anupuvveṇa vāiyā tehiṃ
mahāvirehiṃ pannāṇamaṃtehiṃ.

The Dhuta of Abandonment of Conceit

76. (Like the progressive development of the young of birds) is the successive progress, day and night, of the disciples duly trained by painstaking and wise *gurus*.

७७. तेसित्ति ए पण्णाणमुवलब्भ हिच्चा उवसमं फारुसियं समादियंति ।

77. Tesiṃtie pannāṇamuvalabbha hiccā uvasamaṃ pharusiyaṃ samādiyaṃti.

77. Despite having gained the Scriptural Knowledge and having learnt the practice of tranquillity from their preceptors, some disciples (conceited with knowledge) behave rudely i.e. show disrespect for their teachers' speech and style.

७८. वसित्ता बंभचेरंसि आण 'तं णो' त्ति मण्णमाणा ।

78. Vasittā bambhaceramsi āṇaṃ 'taṃ ṇo' tti maṇṇamāṇā.

78. Despite leading a life of self-restraint in the care of teachers, (they reject) the injunctions (of their preceptors) (on the excuse that) they are not the injunctions (of the *Tīrthaṅkara*).

७६. अग्घायं तु सोच्चा णिसम्म समणुण्णा जीविस्सामो एगे
णिक्खम्म ते—

असंभवंता विडज्जमाणा, कामेहि गिद्धा अज्जोववण्णा ।

समाहिमाघायमसोसयंता, सत्थारमेव फरसं वदंति ॥

79. Agghāyaṃ tu soccā ṇisamma samaṇuṇṇā jīviṣṣāmo ege nikkhamma te — .

Asambhavaṃtā vidadajjhamāṇā, kāmehiṃ giddhā ajjhova-
vamṇā.

Samāhimāghāyamaḥhosayaṃtā, satthārameva pharu-
sam vadamti.

79. Some disciples, having heard and understood the sermons, and having taken up the vow that they would lead a life of the highest form of self-discipline, are not true to their pledge. Consumed by the fire of passion (*kaṣāya*), infatuated with sensual delights, and stung by the avidity (for grandeur, delicacies, and prosperity), they do not adhere to the *samādhi* (i. e. subduing senses and the mind) laid down by the *Tīrthaṅkara*. (This is not all). They even flout the authority of the *Sāstā* (i. e. the *Tīrthaṅkara*), (if the Preceptor tries to convince them on something by quoting Him).

८०. सीलमंता उवसंता, संज्ञाए रीयमाणा । असीला अनुवयमाणा ।

80. *Sīlamanṭā uvasaṃtā, saṃkhāe riyaṃāṇā. Asīlā anu-*
vayaṃāṇā

80. They vilify even the noble who have subdued their passions and are wisely painstaking in the observance of self-discipline as ignoble.

८१. वितिया मंबस्स बालया ।

81. *Bitiyā maṁdassa bālayā.*

81. These stupid ones, thereby, compound their folly.

८२. नियट्टमाणा वेगे आचार-गोचरमाइक्खंति णाणभट्ठा वंसण-
लूसिणो ।

82. *Niyattamāṇā vege āyāra-goyaramāikkhamti ṇāṇabha-
tṭhā daṁsaṇa lūsiṇo.*

82. (It is a wonder how) such people, vitiated by perva-
sion of knowledge, defilement of creed and deviation
from self-discipline, expound (their own) ethics.

ANNOTATION 82. A *sādhaka* who is perverted in know-
ledge and faith, arrogantly lauds his own conduct to the
skies. Disregarding the true touchstone of non-violence
and self-denial, he recognises only expediency as touch-
stone of his conduct.

८३. नममाणा एगे जीवितं विपरिणामेति ।

83. *Namamāṇā ege jīvitam vippariṇamerīti.*

83. Although dedicated to (the *Tīrthaṅkara*'s Instruction
and the *Ācārya*'s discipline) some *munis* ruin their
life (due to overwhelming force of delusion).

८४. पुट्ठा वेगे नियट्ठंति, जीवियस्सेव कारणा ।

84. *Putṭhā vege niyattānti, jīviyasseeva kāraṇā.*

84. Succumbing (to hardships), some *sādhakas* abandon
asceticism in favour of living only a life (of plea-
sures).

८५. निक्खंतं पि तेसिं दुन्निकखंतं भवति ।

85. *Nikkhamntam pi tesim dunnikkhamntam bhavati.*

85. The renunciation of those *munis* (who retraced their
steps) is rendered vitiated.

८६. बाल-वयणिज्जा हु ते नरा, पुणो-पुणो जातिं पक्खेति ।

86. *Bala - vayanijjā hu te narā, puṇo-puṇo jātim pakka-
ppemti.*

86. They are open to censure even by the laymen. (On account of their attachment to sensuality), they are born again and again.

८७. अहे संभवन्ता विद्यायमाणा, अहमंसी विउक्कसे ।

87. Ahe saṁbhavaṁtā viddāyamāṇā ahamamsī viukkase.

87. In spite of their being on a lower rung (of knowledge), they consider themselves to be learned, and project their ego.

८८. उदासीणे कस्तं वदन्ति ।

88. Udāsīṇe pharusam vadamti.

88. They speak harshly unto even those who have turned (so) neutral to the sense of praise or censure (that they have attained total self-effacement).

८९. पलियं पगंथे अदुवा पगंथे अतहेहि ।

89. Paliyaṁ pagamthe aduwā pagamthe atahehiṁ.

89. They taunt these neutral *muni*s for their past actions (of their pre-ascetic period), or use indecent language for them, and speak harshly unto them with false accusations.

९०. तं मेहावी जाणिज्जा धम्मं ।

90. Taṁ mehāvī jāṇijjā dhammaṁ.

90. (It is only an unrighteous person who behaves in this way). That is why it is imperative that a conscientious *sādhaka* should know Righteousness.

९१. अहम्मट्ठी तुमंसि णाम बाले, आरंभट्ठी, अणुवयमाणे, हणमाणे,
घायमाणे, हणओ यावि समणुजाणमाणे, घोरे धम्मे उदीरिए,
उवेहइ णं अणाणाए ।

91. Ahammatthī tumaṁsi nāma bāle, āraṁbhatthī, aṇu-vayamāṇe, haṇamāṇe, ghāyamāṇe, haṇao yāvi samaṇ-ujāṇamāṇe, ghore dhamme udīrie, uvehai ṇaṁ aṇā-nāe.

91. (The preceptor admonishes an unrighteous *sādhaka* thus:) "You like unrighteousness. You are an ignominious. You not only indulge yourself in sinful acts, but also support (others who do so). You are a killer of living beings, you make others to do so, and approve of others doing so. Bhagavān Mahāvīra has expounded the Austere Way (of cessation from all influxes of *karma*). But you are neglecting it by transgressing His Instruction."

६२. एस विसण्णे वितहे वियाहिते त्ति बेमि ।

92. *Esa viṣaṇṇe vitadde viyāhite tti bemi.*

92. One (who neglects the Austere Path) is called "*Viṣaṇṇa*" (i. e. embogged by sensual pleasures) and '*Vitarka*' (i. e. a killer of beings). — I say so.

६३. 'किमणेण भो ! जणेण करिस्सामि'त्ति मण्णमाणा एवं पेगे

वइत्ता,

मातरं पितरं हिच्चा, नातओ य परिग्गहं ।

वीरायमाणा समुट्ठाए, अविहिंसा सुव्वया दंता ॥

93. '*Kimapeṇa bho! jaṇeṇa karissāmi*' tti maṇṇamāṇā-evam pege vaittā,

Mātaraṃ pitaraṃ hiccā, nātao ya pariggaham.

Vīrāyamāṇā samutthāe, avihimsā suvvaṃ dantā.

93. (Addressing themselves) the *sādhakas* say, "O my Soul! What have I to do with these relatives of mine?" Thus contemplating, they boldly renounce their parents, their kith and kin and all their worldly possessions. They thus become abstainers from violence, observers of perfect asceticism, and subjugators of the senses.

६४. अहेगे पस्स दीणे उप्पाए पडिवयमाणे ।

94. *Ahege passa diṇe uppaie paḍivayaṃāṇe.*

94. (In contrast to these), see those who (lacking courage) become wretched and fall from the path of self-discipline.

६५. वसट्ठा कायरा जणा लूसगा भवति ।

95. Vasatṭā kāyarā jaṇā lūsagā bhavanti.

95. Such cowards who are afflicted with sensuality are transgressors (of their ascetic pledges).

६६. अहमेगेसि सिलोए पावए भवइ, "से समणविग्गहे समणविग्गहे".

96. Ahamegesim siloe pāvae bhavai, "se samanavibbhamānte samanavibbhamānte."

96. Some *munis* (who flinch from the course of asceticism), earn notoriety, thus: "These apostate ascetics!"

६७. पासहेगे समण्णागएहि असमण्णागए, णममाणेहि अणममाणे,
विरतेहि अविरते, दविएहि अदविए ।

97. Pāsahege samannāgaehim asamannāgae, ṇamamāṇehim aṇamamāṇe, viratehim avirate, daviehim adavie.

97. Differentiate between the fallen monks who do not observe the ascetic code with fidelity and those who do so; who are not dedicated to self-discipline, and those who are; who have not ceased from enjoyment of sexual pleasures and those who have; and, finally, who are not affluent with Right Conduct, and those who are.

६८. अभिसमेच्चा पंडिए मेहावी णिट्ठियट्ठे वीरे आगमेण सया
परक्कमेज्जासि ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

98. Abhisameccā paṇḍie mehāvī ṇiṭṭhiyaṭṭhe vīre āga-menam sayā parakkamejjāsi.

— Tti bemi.

98. Having realised (the consequences of deviation from ascetism), a learned, wise and courageous *muni* blessed with the accomplishment (of the practice of self-restraint) should exert himself in tune with the (purport of) Scriptural Exhortations.

— I say so.

SECTION V

पंचमो उद्देशो

Pamcamo Uddeso

तितिवलाधुत-पदं

६६. से गिहेसु वा गिहंतरेसु वा, गामेसु वा गामंतरेसु वा, नगरेसु वा
नगरंतरेसु वा, जणवएसु वा जणवयंतरेसु वा, सतेगइया जणा
लूसगा भवन्ति, अदुवा—
कासा कुसन्ति ते कासे, पुद्ढो बीरोहियासए ।

Titikkhādhuta -padam

99. Se giheṣu vā gihaṁtaresu vā, gāmesu vā gāmaṁta-
resu vā, nagaṛesu vā, nagaraṁtaresu vā, jaṇavaṣu
vā jaṇavayaṁtaresu vā, saṁtegaīyā jaṇā lūsagā bha-
vaṁti, aduvā —
phāsā phusaṁti te phāse, puṭṭho vīrohiyāsae.

The Dhuta of Forbearance

99. (Moving along) from house to house, village to village,
town to town, or county to county, (or practising sus-
pension of all voluntary physical activities), a *muni*
encounters man-made hardships, both agreeable
and disagreeable, or natural hardships, (such as
excesses of heat and cold, or stings of gadflies and
mosquitoes, etc.) Assailed (by them) the undaunted
muni should forbear them.

धम्मोववेषधुत-पदं

१००. ओए समियदंसणे ।

Dhammovadesadhuta-padam

100. *Oe samiyadaṃsane.*

The Dhuta of Sermons

100. An unbiased *muni* commanding Right Perception (or Spiritual Experience) (should expatiate upon religion).

१०१. दयं लोगस्स जाणित्ता पाईणं पडीणं दाहिणं उदीणं, आइक्खे विभए किट्ठे वेयवी ।

101. *Dayaṃ logassa jāṇittā pāṇaṃ paḍiṇaṃ dāhiṇaṃ udiṇaṃ, āikkhe vibhāe kiṭṭe veyavi.*

101. Keeping in mind compassion to all the living beings of the world in all directions — East, West, South, North, a *muni* who has mastered the Scriptures should expound (Religion), expatiate upon its various facets and laud (its beneficial outcome).

१०२. से उट्ठिएसु वा अणुट्ठिएसु वा सुस्सुसमाणेसु पवेदाए—संति, विरतिं, उवसमं, णिव्वाणं, सोयवियं, अज्जवियं, मद्दवियं, लाघवियं, अणइवत्तियं ।

102. *Se uṭṭhiesu vā aputṭhiesu vā sussūsamāṇesu pavedae — samtiṃ, viratiṃ, uvasamaṃ, nīvāṇaṃ, soyaviyaṃ, ajjaviyaṃ, maddaviyaṃ, lāghaviyaṃ, aṇaivattiyaṃ.*

102. To all those who are desirous of hearing the sermons, albeit they may or may not be prepared to put them into practice in their life, a *muni* should expatiate upon the following: Tranquillity, cessation from desire, pacification of passions, peace (*nirvāṇa*), freedom from avarice (*śauca*), straightforwardness, gentleness, curtailment (of possessions) and non-violence.

१०३. सव्वेसिं पाणाणं सव्वेसिं भूयाणं सव्वेसिं जीवाणं सव्वेसिं सत्ताणं अणुवीह भिक्खू धम्ममाइक्खेज्जा ।

103. *Savvesiṃ pāṇaṇaṃ savvesiṃ bhūyaṇaṃ savvesiṃ jīvaṇaṃ savvesiṃ sattāṇaṃ aṇuvīi bhikkhū dhamma-māikkhejjā.*

103. A monk should discerningly expound the principles of religion to all living and sentient beings.

१०४. अणुवीह भिक्खू धम्ममाइक्खमाणे—णो अत्ताणं आसाएज्जा,
णो परं आसाएज्जा, णो अण्णाइ पाणाइ भूयाइ जीवाइ सत्ताइ
आसाएज्जा ।

104. *Aṇuvī bhikkhū dhammamāikkhamāṇe — no attāṇaṃ āsāejjā, no paraṃ āsāejjā, no aṇṇāiṃ pāṇāiṃ bhūyāiṃ jīvāiṃ sattāiṃ āsāejjā.*

104. A monk discerningly expounding the principles of religion should neither be an impediment to himself, nor to others; nor to any living and sentient beings.

१०५. से अणासादए अणासादमाणे वुज्झमाणाणं पाणाणं भूयाणं
जीवाणं सत्ताणं, जहा से दीहे असंदीणे, एवं से सबइ सरणं
महामुणी ।

105. *Se aṇāsādae aṇāsādamāṇe vujjhamāṇāṇaṃ pāṇāṇaṃ bhūyāṇaṃ jīvāṇaṃ sattāṇaṃ, jahā se dīve asaṃdīṇe, evaṃ se bhavaī saraṇaṃ mahāmuni.*

105. A great sage who does not cause obstruction of any kind to others¹, and who does not (deliver such religious discourses) which may become the cause of violence to living beings and may become the source of obtaining his own livelihood, is a great refuge, like

1. The author of the *Cūrṇi* has explained the word "*aṇāsādamāṇe*", thus: 'A *muni* should not propound a religion which causes harm to any kind of beings, living or sentient.' The alternate translation suggested by the author of the *Cūrṇi* has been adopted in our translation above:

"*Aṇāsātamaṇṇottī* taḥā ṇa kaḥeti jahā pāṇabhūyajjīvasattānaṃ āsāyaṇā bhavati, appaṇaṃ vā, ahavā dhammaṃ kaḥemto ṇa kiṃci āsādae annaṃ vā pāpaṃ vā, jaṃ bhaṇitaṃ — taddaṭṭha ṇa kaḥeti.

The author of the *Vṛtti* translates it thus: "not causing harm to anyone through the instrumentality of another."
— (Parairanāsātayan).

an island, unaffected by water for the (marooned passengers of a ship), for all living beings who are being carried away by the currents (of births and deaths).

ANNOTATION 100-105. A religious preacher must possess certain qualifications tested on the touchstone of truth and non-violence. In the above paragraphs, the following five qualifications have been given:

- (a) Freedom from bias.
- (b) Right Perception.
- (c) Friendliness with all living-beings.
- (d) Mastery of Scriptural Knowledge.
- (e) Not causing hindrance to others.

According to the Nāgārjuna's redaction of the Scriptures, only that *muni* is competent to expound religious doctrines in public who is widely learned and an erudite scholar of the *Āgamas*, is adept in logic and illustration, able to discourse and sermonize, and understands the proprieties of time, place and audience. In this context, attention is drawn to the aphorism 2/177 (viz. *Ke yaṁ purise kaṁ ca ṇaye*). Preaching for the sake of earning one's livelihood is forbidden.

कसायपरिच्चायधुत-पदं

१०६. एवं से उठ्ठिए ठियप्पा, अणिहे अचले चले, अबहिलेस्से
परिव्वए ।

Kaṣāyapariccāyadhuta-padam

106. *Evam se utthiṇe thiyappā, aṇihe acale cale, abahilesse parivvāe.*

The Dhuta of Freedom from Passions

106. A *muni* who has thus risen up for the practice of self-discipline, who is absolutely tranquil and staid, who does not hold himself back from the fullest exertion, who remains unvacillated (by rigours and hardships), who is engaged in giving a vigorous shake-up

to the *karma* and who keeps his instincts attuned with self-discipline, should blissfully lead a well-balanced ascetic life (unobstructed by any impediments coming in his way).

१०७. संलाय पेसलं धम्मं, दिट्ठमं परिणिव्वुडे ।

107. *Samkhāya pesalam dhammam, ditṭhimam pariṇivvude.*

107. After having known this magnificent Way of life, a *muni* of insight should extinguish (the fire of his sensuality and passions).

१०८. तम्हा संगं ति पासह ।

108. *Tamhā saṅgaṃ ti pāsaha.*

108. Therefore (i. e. for the extinction of sensuality and passions), perceive Attachment.

ANNOTATION 108. The term *saṅga* can have three meanings — attachment, sensations like sound, etc., and impediments.

Attachment can be forsworn by perceiving it. One who does not perceive it, cannot forswear it. In the method of *sādhana* laid down by Bhāgavān Mahāvira, knowledge and perception amount to watchfulness or alertness. Therefore, it constitutes an important method of forswearing attachment. The stronger the Knowledge and Perception, the weaker the effects of *karma*. On the weakening of the effects of *karma*, attachment is extinguished by itself.

१०९. गंयेहि गद्धिया नरा, विसण्ण कम्मविप्पिया ।

109. *Gaṇṭhehiṃ gaḍḍhiyā ṇarā, viṣaṇṇā kāmavippiyā.*

109. For persons attached to worldly possessions and luxuries, and bogged down (in sensual pleasures), sensuality becomes a serious impediment¹.

११०. तम्हा लूहाओ णो परिवित्तसेज्जा ।

110. *Tamhā lūhāo ṇo parivittasejjā.*

1. *Vippiyā — Vigghatatti (vigghatā) vippitatti egatṭha — Cūṇī*, p. 242.

110. Therefore, a *muni* should not be weary of self-discipline.

१११. जस्सिमे आरंभा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए सुपरिण्णया भवन्ति, जेसिमे लूसिणो णो परिवित्तसन्ति, से वन्ता कोहं च माणं च मायं च लोभं च ।

111. Jassime āraṁbhā savvato savvattāe supariṇṇāyā bhavaṁti, jesime lūsiṇo ño parivittasaṁti, se vaṁtā ko-haṁ ca māṇaṁ ca māyaṁ ca lobhaṁ ca.

111. A *muni* who completely forswears all those proclivities for violence from which violent people do not refrain, eschews all passions like anger, pride, deceit and avarice, (and thus breaks the fetters of delusion).

११२. एस तुट्ठे वियाहिंते त्ति बेमि ।

112. Esa tuṭṭe viyāhite tti bemi.

112. Such a person (who snaps the shackles of *kaṣṭāya*) is called a 'breaker' (*trotaka*). I say so.

११३. कायस्स विओवाए, एस संगमसीसे वियाहिए ।

से हु पारंगमे मुणी, अवि हम्ममाणे फलगावयट्ठी,
कालोवणीते कंखेज्ज कालं, जाव सरीरभेउ ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

113. *Kāyassa viovāe, esa saṁgāmasise viyāhie*

Se hu pāraṁgame muni, avi hammaṁaṇe phala-gāva-yatṭhi, kālovaṇīte kaṁkhejja kālaṁ, jāva sarīrabheu.

— Tti bemi.

113. (Voluntary and brave) abandonment of the body when Death arrives is like fighting on the front line of a battle. Only that *muni* (who is not vanquished in this battle.) fulfils his mission.

Just as he, on encountering various kinds of hardships, does not get perturbed by them, so also should he not feel perturbed (on encountering Death), by

virtue of the fact that he has his body attenuated and his passion well-curtailed through vigorous external and internal austerities, like (the two sides of) a beam well-chiselled and evened out. When Death is imminent, he should allow it to take its own time (rather than wish it immediately), until at last the soul is separated from the body.

— I say so.

ANNOTATION 113. Death is really a battle. One who comes out victorious in the battle is blessed with splendor, whereas one who is vanquished is deprived of it. Similarly, a *sādhaka*, engaged in the battle with Death, attains the pinnacle of *sādhanā*, if he boldly remains unattached. On the contrary, if he gets defeated in the battle (i. e. if the fear and anticipation of Death haunts him), he deviates from the path of self-discipline.

Hence, the author of the *Āgama* has laid down that one should not lose his wits, on encountering the Death. But for this, one has to be prepared beforehand; one cannot hope to escape Delusion at the eleventh hour. This preparation consists of attenuation of body and passions. Cf. *Sūtra-kṛtāṅga Sūtra*, 1/7/30.

CHAPTER VIII

EMANCIPATION

अट्टमं अज्झयणं
विमोक्खो

ATṬHAMAM AJJHAYANAṀ

VIMOKKKHO

SECTION I

पढमो उद्देशो

Paḍhamo Udeso

असमणुणविमोक्ख-पदं

१. से बेमि—समणुणस्स^१ वा असमणुणस्स वा असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा वत्थं वा पडिग्गहं वा कंबलं वा पायपुच्छणं वा णो पाएज्जा, णो णिमंतेज्जा, णो कुज्जा वेयावडियं—परं आढायमाणे त्ति बेमि ।

ATTHAMAM AJJHAYANAM
VIMOKKHO

Asamaṇunnavimokkha-padam

1. Se bemi — samaṇunṇassa¹ vā asamaṇunṇassa vā asa-
ṇam vā pāṇam vā khāimam vā sāimam vā vattham vā
paḍiggaham vā kaṁbalam vā pāyapucchānam vā ṇo
pāejjā, ṇo nimantejjā, ṇo kujjā veyāvāḍiyam — param
āḍhāyamāṇe tti bemi.

Avoiding Heretics

1. I say:

A *bhikkhū* should neither offer food, drink, delicacies and savoury stuff, clothes, utensils, blankets, and brooms to a co-religionist (apostate) and/or a heretic monk nor invite them to accept these, nor give them any service, but in doing so, he should always be polite, I say so.

1. Before this, "se bhikkhu" is to be understood.

ANNOTATION 1. A *san anuñña* is a monk whose faith, attire, deportment etc. can be approved of, and an *asamanujña* is just the reverse of a *samanujña*. For a Jaina *muni*, another Jaina *muni* is *samanujña*, while a heretic *muni* is *asamanujña*. According to the religious code of conduct prescribed for a *muni*, he is allowed to exchange food, drink, etc. with only a *sādharmika muni* (i. e. one belonging to the same faith). But a *sādharmika* may also be an apostate. A *muni* can neither give him nor accept from him anything. Therefore two adjectives have been used for *sādharmika*:

- a) *Sāmbhogika*, and
- b) *Samanujña*

— (*Nisīhājīhayaṇam*, 2/44).

The *sāmbhogika* is one with whom the exchange of things is permissible in accordance with the code of conduct. The *samanujña* is one with the same deportments.

The *Nisītha* (15/76-77) prescribes expiation for giving food, drink, clothes etc. to a heretic monk, a householder or an apostate.

२. धुवं चेयं जाणेज्जा—असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा
वत्थं वा पडिग्गहं वा कंबलं वा पायपुंछणं वा लभिय णो
लभिय, भुजिय णो भुजिय, पंथं विउत्ता विउकम्म विभत्तं धम्मं
इोसेमाणे समेमाणे पलेमाणे, पाएज्ज वा, णिमंतेज्ज वा, कुज्जा
वेयावाडियं—परं अणादायमाणे त्ति बेमि ।

2. Dhuvaṃ ceyaṃ jāṇejjā — asaṇaṃ vā paṇaṃ vā khāi-
maṃ vā sāimaṃ vā vatthaṃ vā paḍiggahaṃ vā kām-
baṃ vā pāyapūñchaṇaṃ vā labhiya ṇo labhiya, bhuñ-
jiya ṇo bhuñjiya, paṇthaṃ viuttaṃ viukamma vibhat-
taṃ dhammaṃ jhosemaṇe samemaṇe palemaṇe, pāeja
vā, ṇimaṇteja vā, kujjā veyāvaḍiyaṃ — paraṃ aṇa-
dhāyaṃmaṇe tti bemi.

2. (An *asamanujña* (a heretic) monk may say to a *muni*):
"You should know that food, drink, delicacies and

savoury stuff, clothes, utensils, blankets, and brooms (are available in our monastery every day). You may visit our monastery (to get these if you like). You might have obtained your alms or not, and you might have had your meals or not, and you may take any path — straight or winding, (you would be welcome there). You may continue to observe the rules of conduct prescribed by your own faith." If, after accepting this invitation, a *muni* happened to go there, and was offered a meal or was invited for a meal or was offered any service, he should decline and should not give the least attention to it. I say so.

असम्मायार-पदं

३. इहमेगेसि आयार-गोयरे णो सुणिसंते भवति, ते इह आरंभद्दी
अणुवयमाणा हणमाणा, घायमाणा, हणतो यावि समणुजाणमाणा ।

Asammāyāra -padam

3. Ihamegesim āyāra-goyare no sunisaṃte bhavati, te iha āraṃbhaṭṭhī aṇuvayamāṇā haṇamāṇā ghāyamāṇa, haṇato yāvi samaṇujāṇamāṇā.

Improper Conduct

3. There are some monks who are not well-instructed in the discipline of right conduct. They indulge in violence (connected with preparation) and endorse such actions. Not only do they themselves kill (living beings), but they cause others to do so and approve of it.

४. अदुवा अदिन्नमाइयंति ।

4. Aduvā adinnamāiyamti.

4. Or they are guilty of *adatta* (i. e. the mental attitude and the act of taking away things or objects belonging to other people, including their life).

ANNOTATION 4. The taking of life of other beings is "*adatta*". A killer is not only guilty of causing violence to

others but also guilty of stealing (i.e. stealing others' life). Violence is directly related to one's mental attitude, but as living beings do not permit others to take their life, *adatta* also refers to beings which are being killed. (Cf. *Āyāro*, 1/57).

५. अदुवा वायाओ विउंजंति, तं जहा—

अत्थि लोए, णत्थि लोए,
धुवे लोए, अधुवे लोए,
साइए लोए, अणाइए लोए,
सपज्जवसिते लोए, अपज्जवसिते लोए,
सुकडेत्ति वा दुक्कडेत्ति वा,
कल्लणेत्ति वा पावेत्ति वा,
साहुत्ति वा असाहुत्ति वा,
सिद्धीति वा, असिद्धीति वा,
णिरएत्ति वा, अणिरएत्ति वा ।

5. Aduvā vāyāo viumjam̐ti, tam̐ jahā —

Atthi loe, ṇatthi loe,
Dhuve loe, adhuve loe,
Sāie loe, anāie loe,
Sapajjavasite loe, apajjavasite loe,
Sukadetti vā, dukkadetti vā,
Kallānetti vā, pāvetti vā,
Sāhutti vā, asāhutti vā,
Siddhīti vā, asiddhīti vā,
Niraetti vā, aniraetti vā.

5. Or they propound (mutually contradictory absolutistic) doctrines such as:

1) (The Realists maintain that) the universe has an objective existence.

2) (The Idealists maintain that) the universe does not really exist.

3) (The Helio-centrists maintain that) the sun does not move.¹

1. Or it may be translated thus — (the Eternalists maintain that) the universe is absolutely unchanging.

- 4) (The Geo-centrists maintain that) the sun moves¹.
- 5) (The Creationists maintain that) the universe has a beginning.
- 6) (The non-Creationists maintain that) the universe is beginningless.
- 7) (The Creationists maintain that) the universe has an end.
- 8) (The non-Creationists maintain that) the universe is endless.
- 9) (Some philosophers maintain that) "*Sukṛta*" (i. e. righteousness) exists.
- 10) (Some philosophers maintain that) *Duṣkṛta* (i. e. unrighteousness) exists.
- 11) (Some philosophers maintain that) *Kalyāṇa* (i. e. virtue) exists.
- 12) (Some philosophers maintain that) *Pāpa* (i. e. vice) exists.
- 13) (Some philosophers maintain that) *Sādhu* (i. e. ascetic) exists.
- 14) (Some philosophers maintain that) *Asādhu* (i. e. non-ascetic) exists.
- 15) (Some philosophers maintain that) *Nirvāṇa* (i. e. complete emancipation) exists.
- 16) (Some philosophers maintain that) *Nirvāṇa* does not exist.
- 17) (Some philosophers maintain that) hell exists.

1. Or it may be translated thus — (the non-Eternalists maintain that) the universe is changing.

18) (Some philosophers maintain that) hell does not exist.

६. जमिणं विप्पडिवण्णा मामगं धम्मं पणवेमाणा ।

6. Jamiṇaṃ vippaḍivaṇṇā māmagaṃ dhammaṃ paṇṇave-māṇā.

6. Thus while taking for granted mutually contradictory dogmas, each one professes and propounds his own creed.

७. एत्थवि जाणह अकस्मात् ।

7. Etthavi jāṇaha akasmāt.

7. (A *muni* should not cultivate intimacy with the absolutists (or extremists). In the event of philosophical discussion with them, he should admonish them thus —).

"Try to realize that these absolutistic doctrines of yours are not compatible with rationality — they are illogical."

ANNOTATION 7. Both the doctrines — 'the universe is real' and 'the universe is unreal' — exemplify Absolutism. Until we accept the concept of reality, we cannot prove that of unreality, and vice versa.

Actually, 'reality' and 'unreality' are both relative terms. They can respectively be comprehended through the point of view of substance and that of the transformations of substance. The universe is real with reference to substance and unreal with reference to its mutations or modifications.

The 'isms' referred to in the present aphorism are all absolutistic in outlook and hence mutually contradictory.

८. एवं तेसि णो सुअक्खाए, णो सुपण्णत्ते धम्मे भवति ।

8. Evaṃ tesim ṇo suakkhāe, ṇo supaṇṇatte dhamme bhavati.

8. The creed professed by such a philosopher, (whose views are based on Absolutism and hence are far

from being rational or logical) is neither rightly enunciated nor rightly expounded.

विवेग-पदं

६. से जहेयं भगवया पवेदितं आसुपण्णेण जाणया पासया ।

Vivega-padam

9. Se jaheyam bhagavayā paveditam āsupaṇṇeṇa jāṇayā pāsayā.

Viveka (Wisdom)

9. (The monk should explain the Doctrine) as it was revealed to Bhagavān Mahāvīra, through his intuition and as it was enunciated and expounded by him with the help of Knowledge and Spiritual Experience.

१०. अदुवा गुत्ती वओगोयस्स त्ति वेमि ।

10. Aduvā guttī vaogoyarassa tti bemi.

10. (If the *muni* is not competent enough to explain the Doctrine and if the discussion about it is likely to result in ill-feelings or animosity), he should withhold his tongue.

ANNOTATION 10. "*Rāgadosakaro vādo*" — Indulgence in polemics often ends in animosity. A *muni* should, therefore, maintain reticence whenever any such eventuality arises.

११. सव्वत्थ सम्मयं पावं ।

11. *Savvattha sammayam pāvam.*

11. Even the use of violence is sanctioned (by all heretic schools of thought).

१२. तमेव उवाइक्कम्म ।

12. Tameva uvāikamma.

12. A *muni* should avoid this (violence) (and lead a life based on non-violence).

१३. एस महं विवेगे वियाहिते ।

13. Esa maham vivege viyāhite.

13. This has been described as the course of high wisdom.

ANNOTATION 11-13. 'To lead a life of non-violence is a wise course of action' — this is one of the interpretations.

The *Cūrṇi* and the Commentary have interpreted these three aphorisms in a different way, viz.

If invited by the heretics, a *nuni* should say to them: "Your creed allows the use of violence involved in cooking or getting something cooked; my creed, on the other hand, does not allow me to do so, it would be wise on my part to avoid violence."

१४. गामे वा अदुवा रण्णे ?

केच गामे णेव रण्णे धम्ममायाणह—पवेदितं माहणेण मईमया ।

14. *Gāme vā aduvā ranṇe ?*

Neva gāme neva rāṇṇe dhammamāyāṇaha — paveditam māhaṇeṇa maimayā.

14. "Where should we practise Religion, in the village or in the forest?"

"You should know that religious practice has nothing to do with the village or the forest," the wise Māhana (Bhagavān Mahāvīra) has propounded thus.

ANNOTATION 14. Some *sādhakas* believed that religion could be practised only in a village, whereas others believed that it could be practised in the forest. On being questioned by a disciple, the preceptor answered that religion is not concerned with either the village or the forest, but with the soul. It is always through the soul that one practices religion. As a matter of fact, religion is nothing but the nature or essence of the soul. We find the same idea expressed in a different way by Pūjyapāda Devānandī in the following couplet:

"*Grāma(a)raṇyamiti dvedhā nivāso nātmadarśiṇām.
Dṛṣṭātmanām nivāsastu viviktātmeva niścalaḥ.*"

(— *Samādhisāta*, 73)

— "A *śādhaka* who does not know the soul prefers to practise religion either in the village or in the forest, but a *sūdhaka* who knows the soul always remains (fixed in) the pure soul."

१५. जाना तिणि उदाहिया, जेसु इमे आरिया संबुज्झमाणा
समुत्थिया ।

15. *Jāmā tiṇṇi udāhiyā, jesu ime āriyā sambhujjhamāṇā samutthiyā.*

15. Persons belonging to three age-groups (can be initiated). After being enlightened, the noble ones belonging to any one of these three age-groups can initiate themselves into ascetic life.

ANNOTATION 15. Although a man's total life-span of a hundred years is divisible into ten different age-groups, the three age groups referred to here have been mentioned in the context of initiation into ascetic life. The first stage extends from the age of 8 years to that of 30 years; the second, from 31 years to 60 years; and the third from 61 years onwards. The *barivṛājakas* (one of the schools of ascetics, who used to move about) did not initiate persons below the age of twenty. The people who followed the vedic religion used to embrace renunciation in the last stage of their life.

The Buddha did not allow a person below the age of twenty to be ordained. (— *Vinaya Piṭaka, Bhikkhu Pāṭi-mokha*, 65). But an adolescent capable of frightening away a crow was allowed to become a probationer. (— *Vinaya Piṭaka, Mahāvagga, Mahāskandhaka*, 1/3/8).

But according to the Jaina convention, the age of eligibility for initiation was just after eight years and a quarter.

१६. जे निव्वुया पावेहिं कम्महिं, अणियाणा ते वियाहिया ।

16. *Je nivvuyā pāvehiṃ kammehiṃ, aṇiyāṇā te viyāhiyā.*

16. Those who have ceased to perpetrate actions like violence, etc. are called *anidāna* (free from the bonds of attachment and aversion).

अहिंसा-पदं

१७. उड्डं अहं तिरियं दिसासु, सव्वतो सव्वावन्ति च णं पडियक्कं
जीवेहि कम्म-समारभे णं ।

Ahimsā-padam

17. *Uddham aham tiriyaṃ disāsu, savvato savvāvaṃti ca
ṇaṃ padiyakkam jīvehiṃ kamma-samāraṃbhe ṇaṃ.*

Ahimsā

17. Various kinds of acts involving violence or injury to living beings are perpetrated in all ways, in all directions — upper, lower and lateral.

ANNOTATION 17. The Buddhist monks did not cook their meals themselves, but got them cooked by others. They also used to construct monasteries themselves and got them constructed by others as well; they used to eat meat considering that it was not a sin to do so.

Some mendicants used to indulge in violence for the sake of the *Saṅgha* (i. e. the religious order), and did not consider it sinful.

Some mendicants did not do violence to vegetable life.

Some mendicants did not accept food especially prepared for them, but drank animate water.

Some others, however, drank animate water, but did not bathe in it.

The present aphorism refers to these conventions.

१८. तं परिणाय मेहावी नेव सयं एतेहि काएहि दंडं समारंभेज्जा,
नेवण्णेहि एतेहि काएहि दंडं समारंभावेज्जा, नेवण्णे एतेहि
काएहि दंडं समारंभते वि समणुजाणेज्जा ।

18. *Taṃ parinnāya mehāvī neva sayam etehiṃ kāehiṃ
daṇḍaṃ samāraṃbhejjā, nevaṇṇehiṃ etehiṃ kāehiṃ
daṇḍaṃ samāraṃbhāvejjā, nevaṇṇe etehiṃ kāehiṃ
daṇḍaṃ samāraṃbhaṃte vi samaṇujāṇejjā.*

18. Having discernfully renounced actions involving violence, the wise *śādhaka* should not do violence even

to the subtle living-beings. And he should also not cause others to do so nor should he approve of such actions.

१९. जेवणो एतेहि काएहि दंडं समारंभति, तेसि पि वयं लज्जामो ।

19. Jevanne etehim kāehim daṇḍaṁ samāraṁbhanti, tesim pi vayaṁ lajjāmo.

19. We pity those mendicants who do violence to the subtle living beings.

२०. तं परिणाय मेहादी तं वा दंडं, अण्णं वा दंडं, जो दंडभी दंडं
समारंभेज्जासि ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

20. Taṁ parimāya mehādi taṁ vā daṇḍaṁ, aṇṇaṁ vā daṇḍaṁ, na daṇḍabhi daṇḍaṁ samāraṁbhejjāsi.

— Tti bemi.

20. Having discerningly relinquished actions involving violence, the wise *sādhaka*, out of fear of causing violence, abstains from inflicting any kind of injury, as mentioned before or otherwise.

— I say so.

SECTION II

बीओ उद्देशो

Bīo Uddeso

अणाचरणीय-विमोक्ख-पदं

२१. से भिक्खू परक्कमेज्ज वा, चिट्ठेज्ज वा, णिसीएज्ज वा, तुयट्ठेज्ज वा, सुसाणंसि वा, सुन्नागारंसि वा, गिरिगुहंसि वा, रुक्खमूलंसि वा, कुम्भारायतणंसि वा, हुरत्था वा कहिं चि विहरमाणं तं भिक्खुं उवसं कमित्तु गाहावती बूया—आउसंतो समणा ! अहं खलु तव अट्ठाए असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा वत्थं वा पडिग्गहं वा कंबलं वा पायपुंछणं वा पाणाइं भूयाइं जीवाइं सत्ताइं समारब्भ समुद्दिस्स कीयं पामिच्चं अच्छेज्जं अणिसट्ठं अभिहट्ठं आहट्ठुं चेतेमि, आवसहं वा समुस्सिणोमि, से भुंजह वसह आउसंतो समणा !

Aṇācaranīya-vimokkha-padam

21. Se bhikkhū parakkamejja vā, citthejja vā, nisīejja vā, tuyattejja vā, susaṇaṃsi vā, sunnāgāraṃsi vā, giri-guhaṃsi vā, rukkhamaḷaṃsi vā, kumbhārāyataṇaṃsi vā, huratthā vā kaḥiṃ ci viharamaṇaṃ taṃ bhikkhuṃ uvaṣaṃkamittu gāhāvati būyā — āusaṃto samaṇā! ahaṃ khalu tava atthāe asaṇaṃ vā paṇaṃ vā khāimaṃ vā sāimaṃ vā vatthaṃ vā paḍiggahaṃ vā kambalaṃ vā pāyapum̐chaṇaṃ vā pāṇāim̐ bhūyāim̐ jīvāim̐ sattāim̐ samārab̐bha samuddissa kiyaṃ pāmiccam̐ acchejjaṃ aṇisaṭṭhaṃ abhihaṭṭaṃ āhattu cetemi, āvasahaṃ vā samuṣṣiṇomi, se bhun̐jaha vasaḥ āusaṃto samaṇā!

Avoiding the Forbidden

21. A monk may be in any one of the following states: he may be on his way to somewhere or he may be stand-

ing, sitting, or lying in a cemetery, or in a deserted house, or in a mountain-cave, or under a tree, or in a potter's lodge, or he may be rambling about a village. (While he may be in any of these states), a householder may come to him and say, "I am going to prepare food, drink delicacies or savoury stuff, or clothes, bowls, blankets, or brooms, which involves violence to living beings, etc. or I am going to purchase or borrow or forcibly snatch them from others or am going to offer them to you without the permission of my partner, or I am going to bring them here for you. I am going to construct a house to accommodate you. O venerable sir! would you please accept these and come to live in the 'said house'?"

२२. भिक्षू तं गाहावति समणसं सवयसं पडियाइक्खे—आउसंतो गाहावती ! णो खलु ते वयणं आहामि, णो खलु ते वयणं परिजाणामि, जो तुमं मम अट्ठाए असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा वत्थं वा पडिग्गहं वा कंबलं वा पायपुच्छणं वा पाणाइं भूयाइं जीवाइं सत्ताइं समारब्भ समुद्दिस्स कीयं पामिच्चं अच्छेज्जं अणिसट्ठं अभिहं आहट्ठु चेएसि, आवसहं वा समुस्सिणसि, से विरतो आउसो गाहावती ! एयस्स अकरणाए ।

22. Bhikkhū taṃ gāhāvatiṃ samanasaṃ savayasam paḍi-
yāikkhe — āusaṃto gāhāvati! ño khalu te vayanam ā-
hāmi, ño khalu te vayanam pari jāṇāmi, jo tumam
mama atthāe asanam vā paṇam vā khāimam vā sāi-
mam vā, vattham vā paḍiggaham vā kambalam vā
pāyapumchanaṃ vā pāṇam bhūyāim jīvāim sattāim
samārabbha samuddissa kiyaṃ pāmiccam acchejjam
aṇisaṭṭham abhihaḍam āhaṭṭu ceesi, āvasaham vā
samussināsi se virato āuso gāhāvati! eyassa akar-
aṇāe.

22. Declining his offer, the monk should say to the honest and truthful householder, "Sir, I can neither accept nor approve of your offer. You would prepare food, drinks, delicacies, or savoury stuff, or clothes, bowls, blankets or brooms, by killing living beings etc., or you would buy, borrow or snatch them for me, or you would offer them to me without the per-

mission of your partner, or would bring them here for me. You would construct a house purposively for me. But sir! I should abstain from accepting these. For me (a Jaina monk) these are taboo. (I regret I cannot accept them at all)."

२३. से भिक्खू परक्कमेज्ज वा, चिट्ठेज्ज वा, णिसीएज्ज वा, तुयट्ठेज्ज वा, सुसाणंसि वा, सुन्नागारंसि वा, गिरिगुहंसि वा, रुक्खमूलंसि वा, कुम्भारायतणंसि वा, हुरत्था वा कहिंसि विहरमाणं तं भिक्खुं उवसंकमित्तु गाहावती आयगयाए पेहाए असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा क्थं वा पडिमाहं वा कंबलं वा पायपुच्छणं वा पाणाइं भूयाइं जीवाइं सत्ताइं समारब्भ समुद्दिस्स कीयं पामिच्चं अच्छेज्जं अणिसट्ठं अभिहं आहट्ठु चेएइ, आवसहं वा समुस्सिणाति, तं भिक्खुं परिघासेउं ।

23. Se bhikkhū parakkamejja vā, cītthejja vā, ṇisīejja vā, tuyattejja vā, susāṇamsi vā, sūnnāgāraṁsi vā, giri-guhaṁsi vā, rukkhāmūlaṁsi vā, kuṁbhārāyatanaṁsi vā, huratthā vā kahiṁci viharamaṇaṁ taṁ bhikkhuṁ uvasaṁkamittu gāhāvati āyagayāe pehāe asaṇaṁ vā pāṇaṁ vā khāimaṁ vā sāimaṁ vā, vatthaṁ vā paḍig-gahaṁ vā kaṁbalaṁ vā pāyapum̐chaṇaṁ vā pāṇāim̐ bhūyāim̐ jīvāim̐ sattaim̐ samārabba samuddissa kīyaṁ pāmiccam̐ acchejjaṁ aṇisaṭṭhaṁ abhihaḍaṁ āhaṭṭu ceei, āvasahaṁ vā samussināti, taṁ bhikkhuṁ parighāseum̐.

23. A monk may be in any one of the following states: he may be on his way to somewhere or he may be standing, sitting, or lying, in a cemetery, or in a deserted house, or in a mountain-cave, or under a tree, or in a potter's lodge, or he may be rambling about a village. Now, a householder approaches the mendicant to offer food, drinks, dainties or savoury stuff, clothes, bowls, blankets or brooms, involving violence to living-beings etc. or having bought, borrowed or even snatched them for him; or is offering them to him without seeking permission of his partner, or has brought them there for him, or has constructed a house purposively to accommodate him, deliberately

concealing the truth that he does this for feeding and accommodating the monk.

२४. तं च भिक्खू जाणेज्जा—सहसम्मइयाए, परवागरणेणं, अण्णेसिं वा अंतिए सोच्चा अयं खलु गाहावई मम अट्टाए असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा वत्थं वा पडिग्गहं वा कंबलं वा पाय-पुच्छणं वा पाणाइं भूयाइं जीवाइं सत्ताइं समारब्भ समुद्दिस्स कीयं पामिच्चं अच्छेज्जं अणिसट्ठं अभिहडं आहट्ठु चेएइ, आवसहं वा समुस्सिणाति, तं च भिक्खू पडिलेहाए आगमेत्ता माणवेज्जा अणासेवणाए त्ति बेमि ।

24. Tam ca bhikkhu jāṇeja → sahasammaiyāe, paravāga-
raṇeṇaṃ annessim vā aṃtie soccā ayaṃ khalu gāhāvai
mama atthāe asanaṃ vā pānaṃ vā khāmaṃ vā sāimaṃ
vā vattham vā paḍiggahaṃ vā kambalam vā pāya-
pumchapam vā pānaṃ bhūyāim jīvāim sattāim samā-
rabbha samuddissa kīyaṃ pāmiccam acchejjaṃ aṇi-
sattham abhihaḍaṃ āhaṭṭu ceei, āvasaḥam vā samus-
sīṇāti, tam ca bhikkhū paḍilehāe āgamettā āṇavejja
āṇasevaṇāe tti bemi.

24. Now, if the monk comes to know, either through his own intelligence or through a person possessed of transcendental knowledge or by hearing from some one else, that the householder has prepared food, drink, delicacies, savoury articles, clothes, bowls, blankets or brooms, by killing living beings, etc. for him; or has bought, borrowed or even snatched them for him, is offering them without the permission of his partner, or has brought them there from his house for him, or has constructed a house to accom-
modate him, he should tell him (the householder) frankly but politely, bearing in mind the injunctions of the *Āgamas* (the scriptures), "I regret I cannot accept such (food etc. or accommodation)." I say so.

२५. भिक्खुं च खलु पुट्ठा वा अपुट्ठा वा जे इमे आहच्च गंधा फुसंति—
“से हंता ! हणह, खणह, छिदह, दहह, पचह, आलुपह, विलुपह,
सहसाकारेह, विप्परामुसह”—ते फासे धीरो पुट्ठो अहियासए ।

25. Bhikkhum ca khalu putthā vā aputthā vā je ime āhacca gaṁthā phusaṁti — "se haṁta! haṇaha, khaṇaha, chimdaha, dahaha, pacaha, ālumpaha, vilumpaha, sahasākāreha, vipparāmusaha" — te phāse *dhīro puṭṭho ahiyāsaē*.

25. (Some people prepare some food, drink, etc. for a monk) with or without consulting him. (The monk declines). They (get annoyed with him and) tie him hand and foot with a rope. Addressing their servants they say, "(Go), and give him a good thrashing, (because that rascal of a monk has had so much of my money squandered away), tear him to pieces, mutilate him, burn him with acids, brand him with fire-brand, tear his body with nails, behead him (or get him trodden under the foot of an elephant), torture him in various ways." On being tortured, a patient muni should forbear it with fortitude.

२६. अदुवा आयार-गोयरमाइक्के, तक्किया ण मणेलिसं । अणुपुव्वेण
सम्मं पडिलेहाए आयगुत्ते ।

26. Aduvā āyāra - goyaramāikkhe, takkiyā ṇa maṇelisam. Anupuvveṇa sammam paḍilehāe āyagutte.

26. (If the self-controlled *muni* found the householder and his attendants intelligent enough to understand the scriptural injunctions), he should explain to them, in due order and with due deliberation, his own code of conduct, not prescribed elsewhere.

२७. अदुवा गुत्ती वागोयरस्स ।

27. Aduvā guttī vaogoyarassa.

27. However (if they are not intelligent enough), he should observe silence.

२८. कुडोहं एयं पवेदितं—से समणुण्णे असमणुणस्स असणं वा पाणं
वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा वत्थं वा पडिग्गहं वा कंबलं वा पाय-
पुच्छं वा नो पाएज्जा, नो निर्मतेज्जा, नो कुज्जा देयावडियं—
पर आइयमाणे त्ति वेमि ।

28. *Buddhehiṃ yaṃ paveditaṃ* — se samaṇunṇe asamaṇunṇassa asaṇaṃ vā pāṇaṃ vā khāimaṃ vā sāimaṃ vā vatthaṃ vā paḍiggahaṃ vā kaṃbalaṃ vā pāyapum̐chaṇaṃ vā no pāejaṃ, no nimaṃtejaṃ, no kujjaṃ veyāvaḍi-yaṃ — paraṃ ādhāyaṃāṇe, tti bemi.

28. The enlightened preceptors have said:

A *samanujña muni* should not give food, drink, delicacies and savoury food stuff, clothes, utensils, blankets, and brooms to a heretic monk; nor should he invite him to take these things, nor render him any service; however, he should always be very polite to him. I say so.

२६. धम्मसायाणह, पवेइयं माहणेण मतिमया—समणुण्णे समणुण्णस्स असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा वत्थं वा पडिग्गहं वा कंबलं वा पायपुंछणं वा पाएज्जा, णिमंतेज्जा कुज्जा वेयावडियं— परं आढायमाणे ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

29. *Dhammamāyāṇaha, paveiyaṃ māhanena matimayā* — samaṇunṇe samaṇunṇassa asaṇaṃ vā pāṇaṃ vā khāimaṃ vā sāimaṃ vā vatthaṃ vā paḍiggahaṃ vā kaṃbalaṃ vā pāyapum̐chaṇaṃ vā pāejaṃ, nimaṃtejaṃ kujjaṃ veyāvaḍi-yaṃ — paraṃ ādhāyaṃāṇe.

— Tti bemi.

29. Know well the Right Path shown by the wise Māhana (Bhagavān Mahāvīra):

A *samanujña muni* should give food, drinks, dainties, and savoury food stuff, clothes, bowls, blankets, and brooms to another *samanujña muni*; and invite him to take these things, and render him service, and he should always be polite to him.

— I say so.

SECTION III

तद्वओ उद्देसो

Taio Uddeso

पव्वज्जा-पदं

३०. मज्झिमेणं वयसा एगे, संबुज्जमाणा समुत्थिता ।

*Pavvajjā-padam*30. *Majjhimeṇaṃ vayasā ege, sambujjhamāṇā samutthitā.**Initiation into Ascetic Life*

30. Some persons achieve enlightenment in the middle age and get initiated into ascetic life.

ANNOTATION 30. Initiation could take place at an early age or in old age. But mostly it used to take place in the middle age. Most of the romantic indulgence in the pleasures of sex is over by this time. Therefore, a middle aged initiate can stick to ascetic life happily. He becomes wiser also. That is why middle age has been mentioned here. Most of the *Gaṇadhara*s were initiated in their middle age. Even Bhagavān Mahāvira embraced renunciation after crossing the early stage of his life.

३१. सोच्चा वई मेहावी पंडियाणं निसामिया ।

समियाए धम्मो, आरिएहि पवेदिते ।

31. *Soccā vai mehāvī paṇḍiyāṇaṃ nisāmiyā.*
*Samīyāe dhamme, āriehiṃ pavodite.*31. "The religion expounded by the *Tīrthaṅkaras* have asserted that *dharma* (i. e. righteousness) subsists in equanimity." — Having heard this told by the pre-

ceptors and having absorbed it correctly, wise people who have become enlightened by the *Tirthankaras* (get initiated into ascetic life in middle age.)¹

ANNOTATION 31. Enlightened persons are of three kinds:

- a) Self-enlightened — *Svayam-sambuddha*.
- b) Suddenly enlightened (by an impulse or an event)—
(*Pratyekabuddha*).
- c) Enlightened by the *Tirthankara* — *Buddha-bodhita*.

The present aphorism refers to the last one.

अपरिग्रह-पदं

३२. ते अणवकंखमाणा अणतिवाएमाणा अपरिग्रहमाणा णो परिग्रह-
ह्वावन्ती सन्वावन्ती च णं लोगंस्स ।

Apariggaha -padaṃ

32. Te aṇavakamkhamāṇā anativāemāṇā apariggahamāṇā
ṇo pariggahāvaṃti savvāvaṃti ca ṇaṃ logaṃsi.

Abandonment of Possessiveness by Ascetics

32. Remaining unattached to sensual pleasures, avoiding killing living beings and abandoning possessiveness, they practise non-violence and non-possessiveness everywhere.

३३. णिहाय दंडं पाणोह, पावं कम्मं अकुब्बमाणे, एस महं अगंथे
वियाहिए ।

33. *Nihāya daṇḍaṃ pāṇehiṃ, pāvaṃ kammaṃ akuvva-*
māṇe, esa maḥaṃ aḡaṃthe viyāhie.

33. One, who is non-violently compassionate towards all living beings and does not act sinfully, is called a great *agrantha* (i. e. absolutely unfettered by worldly snares).

1. Cf. 5/40.

आहारहेउ-पवं

३४. ओए जुतिमस्स खेयण्णे उववायं चवणं च णच्चा ।

Āhāraheu-padam

34. *Oe jutimassa kheyanne uvavāyaṃ cavaṇaṃ ca ṇaccā.*

The Purpose of Monk's Nourishment

34. A monk who has no attachment and is acquainted with the essence of spiritual discipline, having known birth and death, (should contemplate the mortality of the body).

३५. आहारोवचया देहा, परिसह-पभंगुरा ।

35. *Āhārovacayā dehā, parisaha-pabhaṅgurā.*

35. The body becomes corpulent by eating, and it becomes emaciated by hardships.

३६. पासहेगे सव्विंदिएहि परिगिलायमाणेहि ।

36. *Pāsahege savvīṇdiehiṃ parigilāyamāṇehiṃ.*

36. Think, how some monks lose the strength of their sense-organs (because of under-nourishment).

३७. ओए दयं दयइ ।

37. *Oe dayam dayai.*

37. (Despite hunger and thirst) a *muni* who has no attachment duly observes self-control and compassion towards living beings.

ANNOTATIONS 34-37. Now, if the body is mortal, the question arises as to why a *muni* should take food at all. To illustrate this point, the author of the Scriptures has pointed out: The sustenance of the human body is essential for liberation, and food is essential for the sustenance of the body. Therefore, the intake of (nutritious) food cannot be prohibited for a *muni*. But at the same time, the observance of non-violence is a must for the procurement of food.

३८. जे सन्निहाण-सत्थस्स खेयण्णे ।

38. Je sannihāṇa-satthassa kheyāṇṇe.

38. One who is conversant with the sinfulness consequent to the storing or hoarding (of food) (does not store or hoard food to avoid evils like violence).

३९. से भिक्खू कालण्णे बलण्णे मायण्णे खणण्णे विणयण्णे समयण्णे
परिगहं अममायमाणे कालेणुद्वाइ अपडिण्णे ।

39. Se bhikkhū kalāṇṇe balāṇṇe māyaṇṇe khaṇāṇṇe viṇayaṇṇe samayaṇṇe pariggahaṃ amamāyamāṇe kāleṇuṭṭhāi apaḍiṇṇe.

39. A monk should be conversant with the following:

the right time (for procuring alms);
the strength (for wandering about for alms);
the measure (of warranted food);
the opportune moment (for collecting alms);
the code of conduct (the prescribed manner in which alms are procured); and
the Scriptures.

He should have no attachment to possessions.

He should perform the right ritual at the right moment, and should be free from likes and dislikes for particular kinds of food.¹

ANNOTATIONS 38-39. The authors of the *Cūṭṭi* and the *Vṛtti* (commentary) have interpreted the word *sannihāṇa* (skt. *samīdhāna*) as *karma*; but it sounds rather out of context. Actually, it should be "the storing or hoarding of food articles, etc." In the fifth section (aphs. 104-111) of the Second Chapter (viz. Subjugation of Worldliness), this topic has been discussed at length. Here we find an abstract of the same.

४०. दुहओ चेट्ता नियाइ ।

40. Duhao chettā niyāi.

1. Cf. 2/110.

40. Having broken the shackles of both (attachment and aversion), he leads a disciplined life.

अगणि-असेवण-पदं

४१. तं भिक्खुं सीयफास-परिवेवमाण-गायं उवसंकमित्तु गाहावई
 बूया—“आउसंतो समणा ! णो खलु ते गामधम्मा उव्वाहंति ?”
 “आउसंतो गाहावई ! णो खलु मम गामधम्मा उव्वाहंति ।
 सीयफासं णो खलु अहं संचाएमि अहियासित्तए । णो खलु मे
 कप्पति अगणिकायं उज्जालेत्तए वा पज्जालेत्तए वा, कायं
 आयावेत्तए वा पयावेत्तए वा अण्णेसि वा वयणाओ ।”

Aganī-asevaṇa -padam

41. Taṃ bhikkhū siyaphāsa-parivevamaṇa-gāyaṃ uva-
 saṃkamittu gāhāvai būyā — "Ausamto samaṇa! ño
 khalu te gāmadhammā uvvāhamti?"
 "Ausamto gāhāvai! ño khalu mama gāmadhammā
 uvvāhamti. Siyaphāsaṃ ño khalu ahaṃ saṃcāemi
 ahiyāsittae. Ño khalu me kappati aganikāyaṃ ujjā-
 lettāe vā pajjālettāe vā, kāyaṃ āyāvettae vā payāvettae
 vā añṇesiṃ vā vayanāo."

Forswearing the Use of Five

41. A householder may approach a monk, who is shivering with cold, and say to him, "O venerable *Śramaṇa*! are you suffering from sexual excitement?" "Oh, no! sir! not in the least. It is cold, not cupidity, which makes me shiver."
 — ("Why don't you burn fire, then?")
 — "I can neither kindle fire myself, in order to ward off cold, nor can I accept invitation by others to make use of the fire lit by them to keep my body warm and comfortable."

४२. सिया से एवं वदंतस्स परो अगणिकायं उज्जालेत्ता पज्जालेत्ता
कायं आयावेज्ज वा पयावेज्ज वा, तं च भिक्खू पडिलेहाए
आगमेत्ता आणवेज्जा अणासेवणाए ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

42. Siyā se evaṃ vadaṃtassa paro aganikāyaṃ ujjāletta
pajjāletta kāyaṃ āyavejja vā payāvejja vā, taṃ ca
bhikkhu padilehāe āgametta āṇavejja aṇāsevaṇāe.

— Tti bemi.

42. Despite the monk's refusal, if the householder were to light fire to warm up the former's (shivering) body, the monk, bearing in mind the instructions of the *Āgamas*, should politely but firmly say, "I am sorry, I cannot avail myself of the warmth of the fire (as it entails injury and violence to the living beings embodied in the fire)."

— I say so.

SECTION IV

चउत्थो उद्देशो

Cauttho Uddeso

उवगरण-विमोक्ख-पदं

४३. जे भिक्खू तिहि वत्थेहि परिवुसिते पाय-चउत्थेहि, तस्स णं णो
एवं भवति—चउत्थं वत्थं जाइस्सामि ।

Uvagarāṇa-vimokkha-padam

43. Je bhikkhū tihim vatthehim parivusite pāya-cautt-
hehim, tassa ṇaṃ ṇo evaṃ bhavati — cauttham
vattham jāissāmi.

The Relinquishment of Clothes

43. A monk who abides by the vow of possessing only three pieces of cloth and a bowl does not desire to beg for a fourth piece of cloth.

ANNOTATION 43. A monk is allowed to keep in his possession at the most three pieces of cloth out of which two should be cotton and one woollen. The method of over-spreading them is as follows:

At first a cotton cloth should be draped (wrapped around one's body). If this is not enough to keep cold out, the second cotton cloth should be overlaid. If this too fails to protect one from cold, then in that case the remaining woollen cloth should be worn. The convention has been that the woollen cloth is the last to be worn.

४४. से अहेसणिज्जाइं वत्थाइं जाएज्जा ।

44. Se ahesaṇijjāim vatthāim jāejjā.

44. He should beg for those clothes only which have been prescribed for a monk in his discipline.¹

४५. अहापरिगहियाइं वत्थाइं धारेज्जा ।

45. Ahāpariggahiyāim vatthāim dhārejjā.

45. He should put on clothes in the same state in which they are given to him i. e. without altering or modifying them in any way.

४६. णो धोएज्जा, णो रएज्जा, णो धोय-रत्ताइं वत्थाइं धारेज्जा ।

46. No dhoejjā, no raejjā, no dhoya-rattāim vatthāim dhārejjā.

46. He should neither wash nor dye them. Nor should he put on clothes which have been washed clean and dyed.

ANNOTATION 46. This aphorism explains why clothes should be worn in the same condition in which they have been given. But, the monks have been advised against the washing and dying of clothes which are worn with a view to beautifying the body. (Cf. *Nisīhājīhayaṇaṃ*, 16/154).

४७. अपलिउंचमाणे गामंतरेसु ।

47. Apaliuṃcamāṇe gāmaṃtaresu.

47. While moving from village to village, he should not try to hide any of his clothes.

४८. ओमचेलिए ।

48. Omacelie.

48. He should be an *avama-celika* (i. e. scantily clad) — he should always wear very few (and extremely ordinary and simple) clothes.

ANNOTATION 48. The word '*avama*' is interpretable from two points of view: number and size. From the point of view of number, a person who keeps three clothes on, is an

1. The code for begging clothes is fourfold (Cf. *Āyāra-Cūlā*, 5/16-21).

avama-celika (i. e. scantily clad). From the latter point of view, an *avama-celika* is one who is clad in clothing which is two *ratnis* long (equivalent to the distance from the closed fist to the shoulders) and as much wide as the distance between the knees and the waist (Cf. *Niśīṭhabhāṣya*, 16/39/verse 5789).

४९. एयं खु वत्थधारिस्स सामगियं ।

49. Eyaṃ khu vatthadhāriṣṣa sāmaggiyaṃ.

49. These are the belongings of a monk allowed to keep clothes.

५०. अह पुण एवं जाणेज्जा—उवाइक्कंते खलु हेमंते, गिम्हे पडिवन्ते,
अहापरिजुण्णाइं वत्थाइं परिट्ठवेज्जा, अहापरिजुण्णाइं वत्थाइं
परिट्ठवेत्ता—

50. Aha puṇa evaṃ jāṇejjā — uvāikkam̐te khalu hemam̐te, gimhe padivanne, ahāparijunnāim̐ vatthāim̐ paritṭhā-
vejja ahāparijunnāim̐ vatthāim̐ paritṭhāvetta —

50. A monk should realize that winter is now over, and summer has set in. It is, therefore, incumbent on him that he should discard worn out clothes. After having done so, —

५१. अदुवा संतरुत्तरे ।

51. Aduvā saṃtaruttare.

51. Either he should put on an inner clothing (made of cotton) and an outer one (made of wool),

५२. अदुवा एगसादे ।

52. Aduvā egasāde.

52. Or he should be clad in only one clothing,

५३. अदुवा अचेले ।

53. Aduvā acele.

53. Or he should divest himself of all clothings (i. e. become an *acela*).

ANNOTATIONS 50-53. The order of relinquishing the clothes at the end of winter is as follows:

If all the three clothes have become worn out, and are not fit enough to be worn during the next winter, they should be discarded. For eight months, no clothes should be draped round.

If, by any chance, clothings are difficult to obtain till the next winter, only the most worn out robes should be given up and the rest kept with him, but not used.

If one of the three robes is more worn out, it should be discarded, and the remaining two kept.

If the two robes out of three are very much worn out, the two should be disposed of and the remaining one kept.

If all the three are very old, they should all be given up.

५४. लाघवियं आगममाणे ।

54. Lāghaviyaṃ āgamamāṇe.

54. Constantly bearing in mind (the ideal of) minimum possession, (the monk should gradually abandon his clothes).

५५. तवे से अभिसमन्नागए भवति ।

55. Tave se abhisamannāgae bhavati.

55. A monk who keeps the minimum of clothes gets the (double) benefit of observing austerities (— curtailment of clothes and enduring physical hardships).

५६. जमेयं भगवथा पवेदितं, तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए
समत्तमेव समभिजाणिया ।

56. Jameyaṃ bhagavayā paveditaṃ, tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhijāṇiyā.

56. The scantiness of clothes (for the practice of asceticism) which has been recommended for a monk by Bhagavān Mahāvīra should be interpreted in the same sense, in which it is meant, and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly (i. e. nobody should be despised)¹.

1. Cf. 6/65.

सरीर-विमोक्ष-पदं

५७. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवति—पुट्ठो खलु अहमंसि, नालमहमंसि
सीयफासं अहियासित्तए, से वसुमं सव्व-समन्तागय-पण्णाणेणं
अप्पाणेणं केइ अकरणाए आउट्ठे ।

Sarīra-vimokkha-padam

57. Jassa naṃ bhikkhussa evaṃ bhavati — putṭho khalu ahamamsi, nālamahamamsi siyaphāsaṃ ahīyāsittae, se vasumaṃ savva-samannāgaya-paṇṇāṇeṇaṃ appāṇeṇaṃ kei akaraṇāe āutte.

Abandonment of Body

57. A monk may find "I am being (unwillingly) seduced (by a woman) and (I feel that) this enticing rigour is overwhelming me"; only a well-disciplined monk would, by his full conscious reasoning and entire will-power, subjugate his arising passions and thus save himself from sinful indulgence¹.

ANNOTATION 57. Out of the 22 rigours (*pariśāhas*), "woman" and "yearning for being praised" are considered to be the two "*śīta pariśaha*" (i.e. cooling rigour) and the rest twenty rigours are "*usna pariśaha*" (i.e. scorching rigour), (vide, *Ācārāṅga Nirvyūkti*, 3/verse 202). In the context of this aphorism, the word "*śīta sparsa*" could be interpreted as "*strī-pariśaha*" (i.e. rigours pertaining to the fair sex or "the enjoyment of sexual pleasures.")

५८. तवस्सिणो हु तं सेयं, जमेगे विहमाइए ।

58. *Tavassīṇo hu taṃ seyaṃ, jamege vihamāie.*

58. (In the event of being unwillingly seduced by a woman), for an austere monk death by hanging himself is beneficial (rather than yielding to her). Such a course should be adopted by a chaste and pure monk.

५९. तत्थावि तस्स कालपरियाए ।

1. Cf. 5/3/55.

59. Tatthāvi tassa kālapariyāe.

59. Such an act is not (to be branded) miserable and untimely death.

६०. से वि तत्थ विमंतिकारए ।

60. Se vi tattha viam̐tikārae.

60. Such an end may even lead to the attainment of final emancipation (from bonds) (i. e. total annihilation *karma*).

६१. इच्छेतं विमोहायतणं हियं, सुहं, खमं, णिस्सेयसं, आणुगामियं ।

—त्ति बेमि ।

61. Iccetaṁ vimohāyatanaṁ hiyaṁ, suhaṁ, khamāṁ, piṣseyasaṁ ānugāmiyaṁ.

— Tti bemi.

61. Such a death is a peaceful haven for all those monks who are totally free from the craving for life. It is beneficial and conducive to happiness; it is timely (i. e. justified under the circumstances) salutary (i. e. leading to beatitud) and proves to be of great assistance in the Journey Beyond.

— I say so.

ANNOTATIONS 57-61. When a monk goes for alms, his own relatives may try to persuade him to stay with them, or if he visited another family, some woman of that family getting enamoured of him, tries to seduce him into living with her. Confronted with such a predicament, what should a *nuni* do ? This has been discussed by the author of the scriptures in the present discourse.

Ending one's own life is of two kinds: (a) *bāla-maraya* — suicide committed due to irrational impulses, and (b) *paṇḍita maraya* — the one committed by conscious judgement. *Veḥānasa* (i. e. committing suicide by hanging etc.) falls in the former category. *Anaśana* (i. e. undertaking fast unto death) exemplifies the latter (vide, *Bhagavati Sūtra* 2/49). But how can a monk practise *anaśana* in such an

emergency as above? *Vehānasa* death has been prescribed and approved of in such circumstances, for the sake of keeping the monk's chastity intact. Therefore it is not instance of *bāla-marāṇa*.

The author of the *Curni* cites an interesting case of a monk who finds himself locked in a room in which he discovers, to his utter dismay, his former wife introduced in it by his relatives. He is unable to come out of it. Now, the woman tries to seduce him. He should then pretend to be a dead man by suppressing his breath. As soon as he finds a suitable opportunity, he should try to pretend to put a noose around his neck. If, then, the woman takes pity on him and asks him to leave rather than commit suicide, he should come out of the room. If, however, the woman continues her advances, he should hang himself to death. To be forced to commit suicide in this way is not deemed to "*bāla-marāṇa*". This has been approved of by Bhagavān Mahāvīra.

SECTION V

पंचमो उद्देशो

Pañcamo Uddeso

उवगरण-विमोक्ख-पदं

६२. जे भिक्खू दोहिं वत्थेहिं परिवुसिते पायतइएहिं, तस्सणं णो एवं भवति—तइयं वत्थं जाइस्सामि ।

Uvagarana-vimokkha-padam

62. Je bhikkhū dohiṃ vatthehiṃ parivusite pāyataiehiṃ, tassaṇaṃ ño evaṃ bhavati — taiyaṃ vatthaṃ jāissāmi.

The Relinquishment of Clothes

62. A monk who abides by the vow of possessing only two pieces of cloth and a bowl does not desire to beg for a third piece.

६३. से अहेसणिज्जाइं वत्थाइं जाएज्जा ।

63. Se ahesanijjāiṃ vatthaiṃ jāejjā.

63. He should beg for only those clothes which have been prescribed for a monk in his discipline.

६४. अहापरिगहियाइं वत्थाइं धारेज्जा ।

64. Ahāpariggahiyāiṃ vatthāiṃ dhārejja.

64. He should put on clothes in the same state in which they are given to him i. e. without altering or modifying them in any way.

६५. णो धोएज्जा, णो रएज्जा, णो धोय-रत्ताइं वत्थाइं धारेज्जा ।

65. No dhoejjā, no raejjā, no dhoya-rattāim vatthāim dhārejjā.

65. He should neither wash nor dye them. Nor should he put on clothes which have been washed clean and dyed.

६६. अपलिउच्चमाणे गामंतरेसु ।

66. Apaliuṃcamāṇe gāmaṃtaresu.

66. While moving from village to village, he should not try to hide any of his clothes.

६७. ओमचेलिए ।

67. Omacelie.

67. He should be an avama-celika (i. e. scantily clad) — he should always wear very few (and extremely ordinary and simple) clothes.

६८. एयं खु तस्स भिक्खुस्स सामगियं ।

68. Eyaṃ khu tassa bhikkhussa sāmaggiyaṃ.

68. These are the belongings of a monk allowed to keep clothes.

६९. अह पुण एवं जाणेज्जा—उवाइक्कते खलु हेमंते, गिम्हे पडिवत्ते,
अहापरिजुण्णाइं वत्थाइं परिट्ठवेज्जा, अहापरिजुण्णाइं वत्थाइं
परिट्ठवेत्ता—

69. Aha puṇa evaṃ jāṇejjā — uvāikkamte khalu hemaṃte, gimhe paḍivanne, ahāparijuṇṇāim vatthāim paritthavejjā, ahāparijuṇṇāim vatthāim paritthavettā —

69. A monk should realize that winter is now over, and summer has set in. It is, therefore, incumbent on him that he should discard worn out clothes. After having done so, —

७०. अदुवा एगसाडे ।

70. Aduvā egasāḍe.

70. Either he should be clad in only one clothing.

७१. अदुवा अचेले ।

71. Aduvā acele.

71. Or he should divest himself of all clothings (i. e. become an *acela*).

७२. लाघवियं आगममाणे ।

72. Lāghaviyaṃ āgamamaṇe.

72. Constantly bearing in mind (the ideal of) minimum possession, (the monk should gradually abandon his clothes).

७३. तवे से अभिसमन्नागए भवति ।

73. Tave se abhisamannāgae bhavati.

73. A monk who keeps the minimum of clothes, gets the (double) benefit of observing austerities (— curtailment of clothes and '*kāyakleśa*' — enduring physical hardships).

७४. जमेयं भगवता पवेदितं, तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए
समत्तमेव समभिजाणिया ।

74. Jameyaṃ bhagavatā paveditaṃ, tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhijāṇiyā.

74. The scantiness of clothes (for the practice of asceticism) which has been recommended for a monk by Bhagavān Mahāvīra should be interpreted in the same sense in which it is meant and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly (i. e. nobody should be despised)¹.

गिलाणस्स भत्तपरिण्णा-पदं

७५. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवति—“पुट्ठो अबलो अहमंसि, नाल-
महमंसि गिहंतर-संकमणं भिक्खायरिय-गमणाए” से एवं
वदंतस्स परो अभिहंडं असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा
आहट्टु दलएज्जा, से पुव्वामेव आलोएज्जा “आउसंतो ! गाहा-
वती ! णो खलु मे कप्पइ अभिहंडे असणे वा पाणे वा खाइमे
वा साइमे वा भोत्तए वा, पायए वा, अण्णे वा एयप्पगारे ।”

1. Cf. 6/65.

Gilāṇassa bhattaparinnā-padam

75. Jassa ṇaṃ bhikkhussa evaṃ bhavati — "Putṭho abalo ahamāsi, nālamahamaṇsi gihaṃtara-saṃkamaṇaṃ bhikkhāyariya-gamaṇāe" se evaṃ vadaṃtassa paro abhihaḍaṃ asaṇaṃ vā pāṇaṃ vā khāimaṃ vā sāimaṃ vā, āhaṭṭu dalaējjā, se puṇvāmeva āloejjā "Āusaṃto! Gāhāvati! ṇo khalu me kappai abhihaḍe asaṇe vā pāṇe vā khāime vā sāime vā bhottae vā, pāyae vā, aṇṇe vā, eyappagāre."

Abandonment of Food by an Ailing Monk

75. If a monk felt that he was too weak (on account of illness) to go begging from door to door, and if a householder brought food, drink, delicacies, and savoury foodstuff, from his own house and offered them to him, the monk should, after deliberation (over the nature of transgression), say, "Sir! I am afraid I can't accept this food, or drink, etc." Similarly, he should (forbid the householder to offer him) any other food etc. leading to other (transgression of the rules of begging food).

वेयावचपकप्प-पदं

७६. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स अयं पगप्पे—अहं च खलु पडिण्णत्तो अपडिण्णत्तेहि, गिलाणो अगिलाणेहि, अभिकंख साहम्मिएहि कीरमाणं वेयावडियं सातिज्जिस्सामि । अहं वा वि खलु अपडिण्णत्तो पडिण्णत्तस्स, अगिलाणो गिलाणस्स, अभिकंख साहम्मिअस्स कुज्जा वेयावडियं करणाए ।

Veyāvaccapakappa-padam

76. Jassa ṇaṃ bhikkhussa ayaṃ pagappe — ahaṃ ca khalu paḍiṇṇatto apaḍiṇṇattehiṃ, gilāṇo agilāṇehiṃ, abhikāṃkha sāhammiēhiṃ kīramāṇaṃ veyāvaḍiyaṃ sāti-jjissāmi. Ahaṃ vā vi khalu apaḍiṇṇatto paḍiṇṇattassa, agilāṇo gilāṇassa, abhikāṃkha sāhammiāssa kujjā veyāvaḍiyaṃ karaṇāe.

Rules for Service

76. A monk may resolve, 'I am sick and my fellow ascetics are all right. They have offered their unconditional services to me. Although I have not called for such services, I shall accept them, because they are offering them with a view to purifying themselves from karmic contamination.'

Or, he may resolve:

"My fellow ascetics are sick and I am all right. I have offered my unconditional services to them with a view to purifying myself from *kārmic* contamination for the sake of mutual obligation."

७७. आहट्टु पइण्णं आणक्खेस्सामि, आहडं च सातिज्जिस्सामि,
आहट्टु पइण्णं आणक्खेस्सामि, आहडं च णो सातिज्जिस्सामि,
आहट्टु पइण्णं णो आणक्खेस्सामि, आहडं च सातिज्जिस्सामि,
आहट्टु पइण्णं णो आणक्खेस्सामि, आहडं च णो सातिज्जिस्सामि।

77. *Āhaṭṭu painṇaṃ āṇakkhessāmi, āhaḍaṃ ca sātijjis-sāmi.*

Āhaṭṭu painṇaṃ āṇakkhessāmi, āhaḍaṃ ca ṇo sātijjis-sāmi.

Āhaṭṭu painṇaṃ ṇo āṇakkhessāmi, āhaḍaṃ ca sātijjis-sāmi.

Āhaṭṭu painṇaṃ ṇo āṇakkhessāmi, āhaḍaṃ ca ṇo sātij-jisāmi.

77. A monk may take a vow; "I shall bring food, etc. (for fellow-ascetics) and also accept what (they) bring for me."

Or

"I shall bring food, etc. (for them), but I shall not accept the stuff brought (by them)."

Or

"I shall not bring food, etc. (for the fellow ascetics) but accept the stuff brought (by them)."

Or

"I shall neither bring food, etc. (for the fellow ascetics) nor accept the same brought (by them)."

(The monk should thus honour and abide by his vow. When senility makes his knees totter, the monk should embrace tranquil death (*samādhi-marāṇa*) through observing fast unto death (i. e. *anaśana*) known as "*bhakta-pratyākhyāna*" (i. e. abandonment of food).

७८. लाघवियं आगममाणे ।

78. Lāghaviyaṃ āgamamāṇe.

78. Constantly bearing in mind (the ideal of) minimum possession, (the monk should gradually abandon his clothes).

७९. तवे से अभिसमण्णागए भवति ।

79. Tave se abhisamaṇṇāgae bhavati.

79. A monk who keeps the minimum of clothes gets the (double) benefit of observing the austerities (– curtailment of clothes and enduring physical hardships).

८०. जमेयं भगवता पवेदितं, तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए
समत्तमेव समभिजाणिया ।

80. Jameyaṃ bhagavatā paveditaṃ tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhijāṇiyā.

80. Scantiness of clothes (for the practice of asceticism) which has been recommended for a monk by Bhagavān Mahāvīra should be interpreted in the same sense in which it is meant, and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly (i. e. nobody should be despised)¹.

८१. एवं से अहाकिट्ठियमेव धम्मं समहिजाणमाणे संते विस्ते
सुसमाहितलेसे ।

81. Evaṃ se ahākiṭṭiyameva dhammā samahijāṇamāṇe saṃte virate susamāhitalese.

81. Knowing and practising thus the code of conduct laid down by the *Tīrthaṅkaras*, a monk should become absolutely placid and abstinent from sin, and dis-

1.Cf. 6/65.

cipline his consciousness by extremely composed train of thoughts (*leśyā*).

८२. तत्थावि तस्स कालपरियाए ।

82. Tatthāvi tassa kālapariyāe.

82. (If a monk in the state of illness, abiding by the code of conduct and his own resolution, breathes his last), it is not to be branded miserable and untimely death,

८३. से तत्थ विअंतिकारए ।

83. Se tattha viam̐tikārae.

83. Such an end may even lead to the attainment of final emancipation (from bonds) (i. e. total annihilation of *karma*).

८४. इच्चेतं विमोहायतणं हियं, सुहं, खमं, णिस्सेयसं, आणुगमियं ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

84. Ic̐cetam̐ vimohāyatanaṃ hiyaṃ, suhaṃ, khamam̐, nisseyasaṃ, āṇugāmiyaṃ.

— Tti bemi.

84. Such a death is a peaceful haven for all those monks who are totally free from the craving for life. It is beneficial and conducive to happiness; it is timely (i. e. justified under the circumstances) salutary (i. e. leading to beatitude) and proves to be of great assistance in the Journey Beyond.

— I say so.

SECTION VI

छट्ठो उद्देशो

Chatṭho Uddeso

उवगरण-विमोक्ख-पदं

८५. जे भिक्खू एगेण वत्थेण परिवुसिते पायविइएण, तस्स णो एव
भवइ -- बिइयं वत्थं जाइस्सामि ।

Uvagarana-vimokkha-padam

85. Je bhikkhū egeṇa vattheṇa parivusite pāyabhiieṇa, tassa
no evaṃ bhavaī — biīyaṃ vatthāṃ jāissāmi.

Abandonment of Clothes

85. A monk who abides by the vow of possessing only one
piece of cloth and a bowl, does not desire to beg for
a second piece.

८६. से अहेसणिज्जं वत्थं जाएज्जा ।

86. Se ahesanijjam vattham jāejjā.

86. He should beg for that cloth only which has been
prescribed for a monk in his discipline.

८७. अहापरिगग्हियं वत्थं धारेज्जा ।

87. Ahāpariggahiyam vattham dhārejja.

87. He should put on the cloth in the same state in which
it is given to him i. e. without altering or modifying
it in any way.

८८. णो धोएज्जा, णो रएज्जा, णो धोय-रत्तं वत्थं धारेज्जा ।

88. No dhoejjā, no raejjā, no dhoya-rattam vattham dhā-
rejja.

88. He should neither wash nor dye it. Nor should he put on cloth which has been washed clean and dyed.

८६. अपलिउंचमाणे गामंतरेसु ।

89. Apaliuñcamāṇe gāmañtaresu.

89. While moving from village to village, he should not try to hide his cloth.

९०. ओमचेलिए ।

90. Omacelie.

90. He should be an *avama-celika* (i. e. scantily clad) — he should always wear an extremely ordinary and simple cloth.

९१. एयं खु वत्थधारिस्स सामगियं ।

91. Eyaṃ khu vatthadhāriṣṣa sāmaggiyaṃ.

91. These are the belongings of a monk allowed to keep cloth.

९२. अह पुण एवं जाणेज्जा—उवाइक्कंते खलु हेमंते, गिम्हे पडिवन्ने,
अहापरिजुण्णं वत्थं परिट्ठवेज्जा, अहापरिजुण्णं वत्थं परिट्ठवेत्ता—

92. Aha puṇa evaṃ jāṇejjā — uvāikkante khalu hemaṃte, gimhe paḍivanne, ahāparijunṇaṃ vatthaṃ pariṭṭhavej-jā, ahāparijunṇaṃ vatthaṃ pariṭṭhavettā —

92. A monk should realize that winter is now over, and summer has set in. It is, therefore, incumbent on him that he should discard worn out cloth. After having done so, —

९३. अदुवा अचेले ।

93. Aduvā acele.

93. He should divest himself of his clothing (i. e. become an *acela*).

९४. लाघवियं आगममाणे ।

94. Lāghaviyaṃ āgamamaṇe.

94. Constantly bearing in mind (the ideal of) minimum passession, (the monk should abandon his cloth).

९५. तवे से अभिसमण्णागए भवति ।

95. Tave se abhisamannāgae bhavati.

95. A monk who keeps the minimum of clothes, gets the (double) benefit of observing the austerities (—curtailment of clothes and enduring physical hardships).

९६. जमेयं भगवता पवेदितं, तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए
समत्तमेव समभिजाणिया ।

96. Jameyam bhagavatā paveditam, tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhiññiyā.

96. The scantiness of clothes (for the practice of asceticism) which has been recommended for a monk by Bhagavān Mahāvīra should be interpreted in the sense in which it is meant, and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly (i. e. nobody should be despised).¹

एगसभावणा-पदं

९७. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवइ—एगो अहमंसि, न मे अत्थि कोइ,
न याहमवि कस्सइ, एवं से एगाणिमेव अप्पाणं समभिजाणिज्जा ।

Egattabhāvanā-padam

97. Jassa ṇaṃ bhikkhussa evaṃ bhavai — ego ahamāṃsi, na me atthi koi, na yāhamavi kassai, evaṃ se egāṇimeva appāṇaṃ samabhiññijjā.

Contemplation of Solitariness

97. A monk, who is convinced and feels, 'I am myself alone, I have nobody belonging to me, nor do I belong to anybody', should thus realize that his soul actually stands alone by itself.

९८. लाघवियं आगममाणे ।

1. Cf. 6/65

98. Lāghaviyaṃ āgamamāṇe.

98. Constantly bearing in mind (the ideal of) minimum possession, (the monk should gradually abandon his encumbrances).

६६. तवे से अभिसमन्नागए भवइ ।

99. Tave se abhisamannāgae bhavai.

99. Such line of thinking leads him to the observance of austerities (of the contemplation of solitariness).

१००. जमेयं भगवता पवेदितं, तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए
समत्तमेक समभिजाणिया ।

100. Jameyaṃ bhagavatā paveditaṃ, tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhijāṇiyā.

100. The solitariness (for the practice of asceticism) which has been recommended for a monk by Bhagavān Mahāvīra should be interpreted in the same sense in which it is meant, and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly (i. e. nobody should be despised)¹.

अणासायलाघव-पदं

१०१. से भिक्खू वा भिक्खुणी वा असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा
साइमं वा आहारेमाणे णो वामाओ हणुयाओ दाहिणं हणुयं
संचारेज्जा आसाएमाणे, दाहिणाओ वा हणुयाओ वामं हणुयं णो
संचारेज्जा आसाएमाणे, से अणासायमाणे ।

Aṇāsāyalāghava-padam

101. Se bhikkhū vā bhikkhunī vā asaṇaṃ vā paṇaṃ vā khāi-
maṃ vā sāimaṃ vā āhāremāṇe ṇo vāmāo haṇuyāo
dāhiṇaṃ haṇuyaṃ saṃcārejja āsāemāṇe, dāhiṇāo vā
haṇuyāo vāmaṃ haṇuyaṃ ṇo saṃcārejja āsāemāṇe, se
aṇāsāyamāṇe.

Eschewing Taste

101. A monk or a nun eating food, drink, delicacies or
savoury stuff, should not shift (the morsel) from the

1. Ibid.

left jaw to the right jaw, nor from the right jaw to the left jaw, to get a fuller taste of it, (but should eat by) eschewing taste (of it).

१०२. लाघवियं आगममाणे,

102. Lāghaviyaṃ āgamamaṇe.

102. Constantly bearing in mind the (ideal of eschewing (of taste), (the monk should give up attachment to taste).

१०३. तवे से अभिसमन्तागए भवइ ।

103. Tave se abhisamannāgae bhavai.

103. A monk who eschews taste gets the (double) benefit of observing austerities (— non-attachment to taste and enduring physical hardships).

१०४. जमेयं भगवता पवेइयं, तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए
समत्तमेव समभिजाणिया ।

104. Jameyaṃ bhagavatā paveiyam, tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhijāṇiyā.

104. Eschewing of taste, which has been recommended for a monk by Bhagavān Mahāvīra, should be interpreted in the same sense in which it is meant, and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly (i. e. nobody should be despised)¹.

संलेहणा-पदं

१०५. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवति— से गिलांमि च खलु अहं
इमंसि समाए इमं सरीरगं अणुपुब्बेण परिवहित्ताए, से आणुपुब्बेण
आहारं संवट्टेज्जा, आणुपुब्बेण आहारं संवट्टेत्ता,
कसाए पयणुए किच्चा, समाहियच्चे फलगावयट्ठी,
उट्ठाय भिक्खू अभिनिव्वुडच्चे ।

Samlehaṇā-padam

105. Jassa naṃ bhikkhussa evaṃ bhavati — se gilāmi ca khalu ahaṃ imaṃsi samae imaṃ sariragaṃ aṇupuv-

1. Cf. 6/65.

vena parivahittae, se ānupuvvenam āhāram samvattē-
jjā, ānupuvvenam āhāram samvattēttā,

Kasāe payaṇue kiccā, samāhiyacce phalagāvaṇṇā,
Uttāya bhikkhū abhinivvudacce.

Conscious Preparation for Death

105. If a monk feels — 'Infirmity is forcing my body to cease functioning and I cannot do my duties (at the right time)', he should gradually reduce his diet, and through this reduction, try to chisel his passions (anger, pride, deceit and avarice) (just as a carpenter does a beam).

After attenuating his passions, a monk who has completely subdued his emotions and has his body attenuated and passions well-curtailed through vigorous external and internal austerities, like (the two sides of) a beam well-chiselled and evened out, and having thus prepared himself for *Death Sublime* (*samādhi-maraṇa*), should become free from attachment and activities of body.

ANNOTATION 105. Generally one becomes infirm through some sort of disease. But, as the author of the *Cūṛṇi* has pointed out, insufficient food, little or no clothes, or squatting for hours on end like a cock etc. also make one infirm. Severe austerities may also result in infirmity. When the body becomes extremely emaciated, the monk should prepare himself for Death Sublime through gradual attenuation (*samlekhanā*). The main constituents of attenuation are:

- (a) Gradual reducing of diet.
- (b) Scrupulous diminution of passions.
- (c) Keeping the body in a state of stillness.

Exertion (*utthāna* or vigorous preparation for something) is of three kinds:

- (a) Exertion in self-discipline — to get initiated into ascetic life.

- (b) Exertion in movement from village to village.
 (c) Exertion in the attainment of *Death Sublime* through gradual emaciation of the body (*saṁle-khanā*) on experiencing infirmity.

इंगिनिमरण-पदं

१०६. अणुपविसित्ता गामं वा, नगरं वा, खेडं वा, कब्बडं वा, मडं वा, पट्टणं वा, दोणमुहं वा, आगरं वा, आसमं वा, सण्णिवेसं वा, णिगमं वा, रायहाणि वा, तणाइं जाएज्जा, तणाइं जाएत्ता, से तमायाए एगंतमवक्कमेज्जा, एगंतमवक्कमेत्ता अप्पंडे अप्प-पाणे अप्प-बीए अप्प-हरिए अप्पोसे अप्पोदए अप्पुत्तिग-पणग-दग-मट्टिय-मक्कडासंताणए, पडिलेहिय-पडिलेहिय, पमज्जिय-पमज्जिय तणाइं संथरेज्जा, तणाइं संथरेत्ता एत्थ वि समए इत्तरियं कुज्जा ।

Imginimarana-padam

106. Anupavisittā gāmaṁ vā, nagaraṁ vā, khedaṁ vā, kabbadaṁ vā, maḍambāṁ vā, pattaṇaṁ vā, doṇamuhaṁ vā, āgaram vā, āsamaṁ vā, saṇṇivesaṁ vā, nigamaṁ vā, rāyahāṇiṁ vā, taṇāiṁ jāejjā, taṇāiṁ jāettā, se tamāyāe egaṁtamavakkamejjā, egaṁtamavakkamettā appaṁde appa-pāṇe appa-bīe appa-hariē appose appodae apputtiṅga-paṇaga-daga-maṭṭiya-makkadāsamaṭṭāṇae, paḍilehiya-paḍilehiya, pamaḍḍiya-pamaḍḍiya taṇāiṁ saṁtharejjā, taṇāiṁ saṁtharettā ettha vi samaē ittariyaṁ kujjā.

Fast unto Death Called Imgini (Itvarika)

106. (Thus exerting in *saṁlekhanā*, when the monk finds himself physically infirm,) he should enter a village, or a town, or a town two miles long (*kheda*), or a village at the foot of a mountain (*karvaṭaṁ*), or an isolated village (*maḍamba*), or a larger town (*pattana*) or a capital of four hundred villages (*droṇamukha*) or a mine-like abode (*ākara*), or a hermitage (*āśrama*) or a settlement of thus (*sanniveśa*), or a city (*nigama*), or a capital (*rājadhānī*) and beg for straw-stack (hay). After having got it, he should retire into

seclusion somewhere outside (the village etc.). After having thoroughly examined and cleaned the ground where there are no eggs (of insects), nor insects, nor seeds, nor sprouts, nor dew, nor water, nor ant-holes, nor mildew, nor marsh nor cobwebs, he should make a bed of straw on it. He should then observe the religious fast unto death called *itvarika*.

ANNOTATION 106. At the time of fasting unto death, the monk should face the East, with his hands folded together and raised to the head in supplication or salutation. After paying obeisances to the *Siddhas* (i. e. the Perfect Ones), he should resolve to carry out his *itvarika* fast unto death. In this fast, one can move only within a restricted area. That is why, it has been termed as the *itavarika* fast. Here, *itvarika* does not signify fast for a brief and limited period. For the annotation of the words *grāma*, *nagara* etc., cf. *Uttarajjhayaṇī*, 30/16, 17.

१०७. तं सच्चं सच्चावादी ओए तिण्णे छिण्ण-कहंके आतीतट्ठे
अणातीते वेच्चाण भेरुं कायं, संविहणिय विरुवरुवे परिसहो-
वसग्गे अस्सि विस्सं भइत्ता भेरवमणुचिण्णे ।

107. Tam saccam saccāvādī oe tinṇe chinṇa-kahamkahe
ātītattṭhe anāṭīte veccāṇa bheṭṭam kāyaṃ, samvihūṇiya
virūvarūvē parisahovasagge assim vissam bhaṭṭa
bheravamanucinṇe.

107. The *itvarika* fast is a righteous (undertaking). The monk, remaining truthful (i. e. one who faithfully carries all his vows to completion) and devoid of passions, successfully crossing the Ocean of Worldly Existence, remaining free from doubt about his ability to carry the fast through, being blessed in every possible way with the happy feeling of accomplishment, remaining unaffected by circumstances, realizing that the body is mortal, subjugating various hardships and troubles, recognizing the separateness of body and soul and experiencing the same, accomplishes (unperturbedly) this formidable (*bhairava*) task (of fast unto death).

१०८. तत्त्वावि तस्स कालपरियाए ।

108. Tatthāvi tassa kālapariyāe.

108. Such an end is not to be branded miserable and untimely death.

१०९. से तत्थ विअतिकारए ।

109. Se tattha viamtikārae.

109. Such an end may even lead to the attainment of final emancipation (from bonds) (i. e. total annihilation of *karma*).

११०. इच्चेतं विमोहायतणं हियं, सुहं, खमं, णिस्सेयसं, आणुगामियं ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

110. Icchetam vimohāyatanam hiyam, suham, khamam, nisseyasam, āṇugāmiyam.

— Tti bemi.

110. Such a death is a peaceful haven for all those monks who are totally free from the craving for life. It is beneficial and conducive to happiness; it is timely (i. e. justified under the circumstances) salutary (i. e. leading to beatitude) and proves to be of great assistance in the Journey Beyond.

— I say so.

SECTION VII

सत्तमो उद्देशो

Sattamo Uddeso

उवगरण-विमोक्ख-पदं

१११. जे भिक्खू अचेले परिवुसिते, तस्स णं एवं भवति—चाएमि अहं
तणफासं अहियासित्तए, सीयफासं अहियासित्तए, तेउफासं
अहियासित्तए, दंस-मसगफासं अहियासित्तए, एगयरे अणयरे
विरूवरूवे फासे अहियासित्तए, हिरिपडिच्छादणं चहं णो संचाएमि
अहियासित्तए, एवं से कप्पति कडिबंधणं धारित्तए ।

Uvagarāṇa-vimokkha-padam

111. Je bhikkhū acele parivusite, tassa ṇaṃ evaṃ bhavati —
cāemi ahaṃ tanaphāsaṃ ahiyāsittae, siyaphāsaṃ
ahiyāsittae, teuphāsaṃ ahiyāsittae, daṃsa-masaga-
phāsaṃ ahiyāsittae, egatare annatare virūvarūve phāse
ahiyāsittae, hiripadicchādaṇaṃ cahaṃ ṇo saṃcāemi
ahiyāsittae, evaṃ se kappati kaḍibandhaṇaṃ dhārit-
tae.

The Relinquishment of Clothes

111. If a monk, who abides by the discipline of remaining
naked, feels, 'I can put up with the rigours of the
pricking of grass, heat and cold, the stings of
various sorts. But I cannot discard the clothes
covering the privities', then he may put on a loin-
cloth.

११२. अदुवा तत्थ परक्कमंतं भुज्जो अचेलं तणफासा फुसंति,
सीयफासा फुसंति, तेउफासा फुसंति, दंस-मसगफासा फुसंति,
एगयरे अणयरे विरूवरूवे फासे अहियासेति अचेले ।

112. Aduvā tattha parakkamaṁtaṁ bhuḷḷo acelaṁ taṇaphāsā phusaṁti sīyaphāsā phusaṁti, teuphāsā phusaṁti, daṁsa-masagaphāsā phusaṁti, egayare aṇṇayare virūvarūve phāse ahiyāseti acele.

112. Or if a monk is spiritually strong enough to overcome his shyness, he should wear nothing — not even a loin-cloth. (While practising nudism), he may be pricked by grass, heat and cold may oppress him, gadflies and mosquitoes may sting him and similar other hardships of various sorts may befall him; he should always endure these with fortitude.

११३. लाघवियं आगममाणे ।

113. Lāghaviyaṁ āgamamaṇe.

113. Constantly bearing in mind (the ideal of) minimum possession, (the monk should practise nudism).

११४. तवे से अभिसमन्नागए भवति ।

114. Tave se abhisamannāgae bhavati.

114. A monk who practises nudism gets the (double) benefit of observing austerities (— giving up clothes and enduring physical hardships).

११५. जमेयं भगवता पवेदितं, तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए समत्तमेव समभिजाणिया ।

115. Jameyaṁ bhagavatā paveditaṁ, tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhijāṇiyā.

115. Practice of nudism, which has been recommended for a monk by Bhagavān Mahāvīra, should be interpreted in the same sense in which it is meant and it should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly, (i. e. nobody should be despised)¹.

वेयावच्चपक्कप-पदं

११६. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवति — अहं च खलु अण्णेसि भिक्खूणं असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा आहट्ठु दलइस्सामि, आहट्ठं च सातिज्जिस्सामि ।

1. Cf. 6/65.

Veyāvaccapakappa-badam

116. Jassa nam bhikkhussa evaṃ bhavati — ahaṃ ca khalu añṇesiṃ bhikkhūnaṃ asanaṃ vā pānaṃ vā khāimaṃ vā sāimaṃ vā āhattu dalaissāmi, āhaḍaṃ ca sātijjissāmi.

Rules for Service

116. A monk may take a vow: "I shall bring food, drink, delicacies or savoury stuff (for fellow-ascetics) and also accept what (they) bring for me."

११७. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवति—अहं च खलु अण्णेसिं भिक्खूणं
असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा आहट्टु दलइस्सामि,
आहडं च णो सातिज्जिस्सामि ।

117. Jassa nam bhikkhussa evaṃ bhavati — ahaṃ ca khalu añṇesiṃ bhikkhūnaṃ asanaṃ vā, pānaṃ vā khāimaṃ vā sāimaṃ vā āhattu dalaissāmi, āhaḍaṃ ca no satijjissāmi.

117. A monk may take a vow: "I shall bring food, drink, delicacies or savoury stuff (for fellow-ascetics), but I shall not accept what is brought (by them)."

११८. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवति—अहं च खलु अण्णेसिं भिक्खूणं
असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा आहट्टु नो दलइस्सामि,
आहडं च सातिज्जिस्सामि ।

118. Jassa nam bhikkhussa evaṃ bhavati — ahaṃ ca khalu añṇesiṃ bhikkhūnaṃ asanaṃ vā pānaṃ vā khāimaṃ vā sāimaṃ vā āhattu no dalaissāmi, āhaḍaṃ ca sātijjissāmi.

118. A monk may take a vow: "I shall not bring food, drink, delicacies or savoury stuff (for the fellow-ascetics) but accept what is brought (by them)."

११९. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवति—अहं च खलु अण्णेसिं भिक्खूणं
असणं वा पाणं वा खाइमं वा साइमं वा आहट्टु नो दलइस्सामि,
आहडं च णो सातिज्जिस्सामि ।

119. Jassa nam bhikkhussa evam bhavati — aham ca khalu annessim bhikkhūnam asānam vā pānam vā khāimam vā sāimam vā āhattu no dalaissāmi āhaḍam ca no sātijjissāmi.

119. A monk may take a vow: "I shall neither bring food, drink, delicacies or savoury stuff (for the fellow-ascetics) nor accept the same brought (by them)."

१२०. अहं च खलु तेण अहाइरित्तेण अहेसणिज्जेण अहापरिग्गहिणं असणेण वा पाणेण वा खाइमेण वा साइमेण वा अभिकंख साहम्मियस्स कुज्जा वेयावडियं करणाए ।

120. Aham ca khahu teṇa ahāritteṇa ahesaniḍḍeṇa ahā-pariggahieṇa asāneṇa vā pāneṇa vā khāimeṇa vā sāimeṇa vā abhikaṃkha sāhammiyassa kujjā veyāvādiyaṃ karaṇāe.

120. (A monk may feel): "Inspired by a feeling of mutual cooperation and with a view to purifying the Self, I shall serve my fellow ascetics by offering them food, or drink, or delicacies or savoury stuff obtained, in excess of what I need, in conformity with the code of alms-begging."

१२१. अहं वावि तेण अहातिरित्तेण अहेसणिज्जेण अहापरिग्गहिणं असणेण वा पाणेण वा खाइमेण वा साइमेण वा अभिकंख साहम्मिएहि कीरमाणं वेयावडियं सातिज्जिस्सामि ।

121. Aham vāvi teṇa ahātiritteṇa ahesaniḍḍeṇa ahā-pariggahieṇa asāneṇa vā pāneṇa vā khāimeṇa vā sāimeṇa vā abhikaṃkha sāhammiehiṃ kīramāṇaṃ veyāvādiyaṃ sātijjissāmi.

121. (He may also feel): "Inspired by the feeling of mutual cooperation and with a view to purifying the Self, I shall approve of the services rendered by my fellow-ascetics by accepting food or drink, or delicacies or savoury stuff that they might have brought for themselves, in excess of what they need, in conformity with the code of alms-begging."

१२२. लाघवियं आगममाणे ।

122. *Lāghaviyaṃ āgamamāne.*

122. Constantly bearing in mind (the ideal of) humility, (the monk should resolve to render service).

१२३. तवे से अभिसमण्णागए भवति ।

123. *Tave se abhisamannāgae bhavati.*

123. A monk who resolves to render service gets the (double) benefit of observing the austerities (— curtailment of food, etc. and rendering service).

१२४. जमेयं भगवता पवेदितं, तमेव अभिसमेच्चा सव्वतो सव्वत्ताए समत्तमेव समभिजाणिया ।

124. *Jameyaṃ bhagavatā paveditaṃ, tameva abhisameccā savvato savvattāe samattameva samabhiññiya.*

124. The vows to render service which have been recommended for a monk by Bhagavān Mahāvīra, should be interpreted in the same sense in which they are meant and they should inspire the *muni* to practise equanimity thoroughly (i. e. nobody should be despised)¹.

पाओवगमण-पदं

१२५. जस्स णं भिक्खुस्स एवं भवति—से गिलामि च खलु अहं इमम्मि समए इमं सरीरगं अणुपुव्वेण परिवहित्तए, से अणुपुव्वेण आहारं संवट्ठेज्जा, अणुपुव्वेण आहारं संवट्ठेत्ता, कत्ताए पयणुए किच्चा समाहिअच्चे फलगावयट्ठी, उट्ठाए भिक्खू अभिणिव्वुडच्चे ।

Pāvagamana-padam

125. *Jassa ṇaṃ bhikkhussa evaṃ bhavati — se gilāmi ca khalu ahaṃ imammi samae imaṃ sarīragam aṇupuvvema parivahittae, se aṇupuvvenaṃ āhāraṃ samvattetjja, aṇupuvvena āhāraṃ samvattettā kasāe payanue kiṭṭhā samāhiacce phalagāvayaṭṭhī, utṭhāya bhikkhū abhinivvudacce.*

1. Cf. 6/65.

Fasting Unto Death called Prāyopagamana

125. If a monk feels: "Infirmity is forcing my body to cease functioning and I cannot do my duties (at the right time)," he should gradually reduce his diet, and through this reduction, try to chisel his passions (anger, pride, deceit and avarice) (just as a carpenter does a beam).

After attenuating his passions, a monk who has completely subdued his emotions and has his body attenuated and passions well-curtailed through vigorous external and internal austerities like (the two sides of) a beam well-chiselled and evened out, and having thus prepared himself for *Death Sublime* (*samādhi-marāṇa*), should become free from attachment and activities of the body.

१२६. अणुपविसित्ता गामं वा, नगरं वा, खेडं वा, कब्बडं वा, मडंबं वा, पट्टणं वा, दोणमुहं वा, आगरं वा, आसमं वा, सण्णिवेसं वा, निगमं वा रायहाणि वा, तणाईं जाएज्जा, तणाईं जाएत्ता से तमायाए एगंतमवक्कमेज्जा, एगंतमवक्कमेत्ता अप्पंडे अप्प-पाणे अप्प-बीए अप्प-हरिए अप्पोसे अप्पोदए अप्पुत्तिग-पणग-दग-मट्टिय-मक्कडासंताणए, पडिलेहिय-पडिलेहिय एमज्जिय-एमज्जिय तणाईं संथरेज्जा, तणाईं संथरेत्ता एत्थ वि समाए कायं च, जोगं च, इरियं च, पच्चक्खाएज्जा ।

126. Anupavisittā gāmaṃ vā, nagaraṃ vā, khedaṃ vā, kabbadaṃ vā, madambam vā, pattanaṃ vā, doṇamuhāṃ vā, āgaram vā, āsamaṃ vā, saṇṇivesaṃ vā, nigamaṃ vā rāyahāṇim vā, taṇāim jāejjā, taṇāim jāettā se tamāyāe egāntamavakkamejjā, egāntamavakkamettā appaṇḍe appa-pāṇe appa-bīe appa-harīe appose appodae apputtiṅga-paṇaga-dagamattiya-makkaḍḍasaṃtāṇae, paḍilehiya-paḍilehiya-pamajjiya-pamajjiya taṇāim saṃtharejja, taṇāim saṃtharettā ettha vi samae kāyaṃ ca, jogaṃ ca, iriyaṃ ca, paccakkhāejjā.

126. (Thus exerting in *saṃlekhanā*, when the monk finds himself physically infirm,) he should enter a village,

or a town, or a town two miles long (*kheḍḍā*), or a village at the foot of a mountain (*karvaṭam*), or an isolated village (*madaṁba*), or a larger town (*pattana*) or a capital of four hundred villages (*dronamukha*) or a mine-like abode (*ākara*), or a hermitage (*āśrama*) or a settlement of huts (*sanniveśa*), or a city (*nigama*), or a capital (*rājadhāni*) and beg for straw-stack (hay). After having got it, he should retire into seclusion somewhere outside (the village etc.). After having thoroughly examined and cleaned the ground where there are no eggs (of insects), nor insects, nor seeds, nor sprouts, nor dew, nor water, nor ant-holes, nor mildew, nor marsh, nor cobwebs, he should make a bed of straw on it. He should then observe the religious fast unto death called *prāyopagamana* and abandon the body, its motions (such as blinking of eyes, etc.) and movements.

१२७. तं सच्चं सच्चावादी ओए तिण्णे छिन्न-कहंके आतीतट्ठे
अणातीते वेच्चाण भेउरं कायं, संविहूणिय विरूवरूवे परिसहोव-
सग्गे अस्सि विसं भइत्ता भेरवमणुचिण्णे ।

127. Taṁ saccam saccāvādī oe tinṇe chinna-kahaṁkahe
ātitaṭṭhe anāṭite veccāṇa bhevaṁ kāyaṁ, saṁvihūṇiya
virūvarūvē parisahovasagge assirā viṣsaṁ bhaṭṭā
bheravamanucinṇe.

127. The *prāyopagāmana*-fast is a righteous (undertaking). The monk, remaining truthful (i. e., one who faithfully carries all his vows to completion) and devoid of passions, successfully crossing the Ocean of Worldly Existence, remaining free from doubt about his ability to carry the fast through, being blessed in every possible way with the happy feeling of accomplishment, remaining unaffected by circumstances, realizing that the body is mortal, subjugating various hardships and troubles, recognizing the separateness of body and soul and experiencing the same, accomplishes (unperturbedly) this formidable (*bhairava*) task (of fast unto death).

१२८. तत्थावि तस्स कालपरियाए ।

128. Tatthāvi tassa kālapariyāe.

128. Such an act is not to be branded miserable and untimely death.

१२९. से तत्थ विअंतिकारए ।

129. Se tattha viam̐tikārae.

129. Such an end may even lead him to the attainment of final emancipation from (bonds) (i. e., total annihilation of *karma*).

१३०. इच्चेतं विमोहायतणं हियं, सुहं, खमं, णिस्सेयसं, आणुगमियं ।

— त्ति बेमि ।

130. Icchetam̐ vimohāyatanam̐ hiyam̐, suham̐, khamam̐, nisseyasam̐, āṇugāmiyam̐.

— Tti bemi.

130. Such a death is a peaceful haven for all those monks who are totally free from the craving for life. It is beneficial and conducive to happiness; it is timely (i. e., justified under the circumstances) salutary (i. e., leading to beatitude) and proves to be of great assistance in the Journey Beyond.

— I say so.

SECTION VIII

अष्टमो उद्देशो

Atthamo Uddeso

अणसण-पदं

१. आणुपुब्बी-विमोहाइं, जाइं धीरा समासज्ज ।
वसुमंतो मइमंतो, सव्वं णच्चा अणेलिसं ॥

Anasana-padam

1. Āṇupuvvī-vimohāimī, jāim dhīrā samāsajja.
Vasumaṇṭo maimaṇṭo, savaṃ ṇaccā aṇelisam..

Fast Unto Death

1. When the courageous self-disciplined and wise monks come to know that the right time for undertaking 'the fast unto death' (*anaśana*) known as "*ānupūrvī vimokṣa* or *avyāghāta maraṇa*) which is the last stage of uninterrupted process of *sādhana* (i.e. ascetic practices), has come, they should acquaint themselves with the code of the three types of *anaśana* viz. *Bhakta-pratyākhyāna*, *īmginī maraṇa*, and *prāyopagāmana*) which are quite different from *bāla maraṇa*.

ANNOTATION 1. 'A fast unto death' undertaken for attaining Death Sublime, is of three kinds:

- (a) *Bhakta Pratyākhyāna*;
(b) *īmginī (īmgiṭa) Maraṇa*; and
(c) *Prāyopagāmana*

Section five, six and seven respectively deal with these three. The fourth section lays down the conditions for *viha-*

yomaraṇa (i. e. deliberately ending one's life by hanging).
Fasting is of two kinds:

- (a) *Saṃvāṭṭakrama* (undertaken when the body is strong).
- (b) *Āṇāṭṭakrama* (undertaken when the body grows weak).

Classified in another way, fasting is of two kinds:

- (a) *Vyāghāta-yukta* i. e. undertaken suddenly on account of some incident.
- (b) *Avyāghāta* i. e. undertaken in the normal course.

While the earlier sections deal with the former kind of *anaśana*, the present section deals with the latter one. As the *avyāghāta anaśana* is not abrupt or sudden but is achieved in serial order of development, it is also called *ānupūrvī*" (vide, the *Niryukti*, verse 263).

The various steps in the series of *ānupūrvī* fast are as follows:

- (a) getting initiated into ascetic life;
- (b) studying the Scriptures;
- (c) learning their deeper meaning and significance;
- (d) after having attained efficiency in the Scripture and their interpretations, imparting this knowledge to the deserving disciples;
- (e) after having taken due permission of the Preceptor, undertaking gradual attenuation of the body (*saṃlekhanā*);
- (f) then, finally, undertaking fast unto death (leading to Death Sublime), choosing one of the above three kinds of fasts and abandoning threefold daily necessities, viz. food, implements (clothes, bowls, etc.) and lodging.

भक्तपञ्चवक्त्राण-पदं

२. दुविहं पि विदित्ताणं, बुद्धा धम्मस पारागा ।
अणुपुब्बीए संखाए, आरंभाओ तिउट्ठति ॥

Bhattapaccakkhāna -padaṃ

2. Duvihaṃ pi vidittāṇaṃ, buddhā dhammassa pāragā.
Aṇupuvvīe saṃkhāe, āraṃbhāo tiuttati..

Bhakta -Pratyākhyāna

2. Those monks who are enlightened and proficient in religion realize that both (the external objects such as body and its daily necessities and the internal impulses and passions) are fit to be abandoned. Passing through the orderly stages of attaining ānupūrvī fast, and having duly discerned the benefits accruing from the voluntary abandonment of the body, these monks, forswear all activities (*āraṃbha*)¹.
३. कसाए पय गुए किच्चा, अप्पाहारो तितिक्खाए ।
अह भिक्खू गिलाएज्जा, आहारस्सेव अंतियं ॥
3. Kasāe payaṇue kiccā, appāhāro tiikkhae.
Aha bhikkhū gilāejjā, āhārasseva aṃtiyaṃ..
3. Such a monk attenuates (curbs) passions, curtails his diet and patiently endures (the consequences thereof). The progressive reduction of food emaciates his body and brings him almost to death.

ANNOTATION 3. In the present verse, the method of curtailment of passions and that of food respectively called *bhāva-saṃlekhana* and *dravya saṃlekhana*) has been indicated.

1. *Āraṃbha*: This term signifies here all those activities such as going out begging food and other necessities to sustain life, rendering services to fellow-ascetics and studying the scriptures, etc. undertaken to assist the practice of asceticism.

The *dravya-samlekhana* lasts for twelve years. According to the *Uttarādhyayana* (36/25-255), the order in which food can be curtailed is as follows:

The first four years — *Vikṛti-parityāga* (i. e. abandonment of rich food) or *ācāmla* (i. e. eating only a single item of food). The next four years — Special penance such as fasting for a day, for two days for three days etc. and taking appropriate breakfast. The 9th and the 10th years — Fasting on alternate days and *ācāmla* in breakfast.

The first half of the 11th year — fasting for one day and two days. The second half of the 11th year — Severer penances such as fasting for three or four days or more days.

During the whole of the 11th year, the *ācāmla* in breakfast. In the first six months reduced diet on the day of *ācāmla* and a full diet on such occasions is permissible during the next six months of the 11th year.

During the 12th year — *Ācāmla* coupled with another penance, i. e. either continuous *acāmla* or *ācāmla* with another penance alternately.

At the end of the 12th year — Fasting for a fortnight or a whole month or *Bhakta Pratyākhyāna*, etc.

According to the *Niśītha Cūrṇi*, taking food is reduced in such a way that complete abandonment of food and death coincide. During the last four months of this year, the mouth is kept oiled so that the speech-organs do not cease to function and there is no difficulty in reciting the *Namaskāra-mantra* etc. (*Uttarajjhyaṇāṇi*, vol. II, notes, pp. 263-264).

४. जीवियं नाभिकंखेज्जा, मरणं णोवि पत्थाए ।

दुहतोवि ण सज्जेज्जा, जीविते मरणे तहा ॥

4. Jīviyaṁ nābhikaṁkhejjā, maraṇaṁ novi patthae.
Duhatovi ṇa sajjejjā, jīvite maraṇe tahā..

4. Enfeebled, he should neither crave for life, nor long for death. He should not get attached to either life or death.

५. मज्झत्थो णिज्जरापेही, समाहिमणुपालए ।

अंतो बहिं विउसिज्ज, अज्झत्थं सुद्धमेसए ॥

5. Majjhattho nijjarāpehī, samāhimaṇupālae.
Aṁto bahiṁ viusijja, ajjhatthaṁ suddhamesae..

5. The equipoised¹ monk, intent on shedding the *karma* (*nirjarā*)², should maintain complete composure³. Sloughing off the internal as well as the external (encumbrances; viz. *rāga* and *dveṣa* and the body), he should engage himself in the pursuit of the pure Self⁴.

६. जं किचुवक्कमं जाणे, आउक्खेमस्स अप्पणो ।

तस्सेव अंतरद्वाए, खिप्पं सिक्खेज्ज पंडिए ॥

1. *Madhyastha*: During the period of fasting, a monk should maintain equanimity both in midst of favourable and unfavourable circumstances such as life-death, pleasure-pain, etc. This has been indicated by the author of the scriptures by the word '*madhyastha*'.

2. *Nirjarāprekṣi*: The mainstay of this equanimity is *nirjarā* (shedding off of the *karma*). A monk observing fast is always intent upon *nirjara*, without which he cannot remain dispassionate.

3. *Samādhi*: Knowledge, perception, conduct, penance, and spiritual vigours — these five are the constituents of *samādhi* (i. e. complete composure). A fasting monk must experience this five fold composure.

4. *Pursuit of the Pure Self*: The first step of spiritual pursuit is the reduction of physical activities and unattachment towards the body. This leads him to self-inspection wherein he perceives the impulses of *rāga* and *dveṣa*. Not perceiving the pure self, he penetrates still deeper into the innermost recesses of his soul. Ultimately, Conscient Reality (the self) in its purest and most spiritual form becomes manifest to him.

6. Jam kimcuvakkamañ jāṇe, āukkhemassa appaṇo.
Tasseva aṃtaraddhāe, khippañ sikkhejja paṇḍie..
6. If a wise monk, unexpectedly encounters a contingency, during the course of his orderly progress of *saṃlekhaṇā* (i. e. step-by-step attenuation of body through penances), he should at once go to (the extreme step of) giving up nourishment in the middle.
७. गामे वा अदुवा रण्णे, थडिलं पडिलेहिया ।
अप्पपाणं तु विण्णाय, तणाइं संघरे मुणी ॥
7. Gāme vā aduvā raṇṇe, thaṃḍilaṃ paḍilehiyā.
Appapāṇaṃ tu viṇṇāya, taṇāiṃ saṃthare muṇi..
7. The monk should enter a village or an unpopulated area, and after having thoroughly inspected a plot of ground free from living being, he should make a bed of straw on it.
८. अणाहारो तुअट्टेज्जा, पुट्ठो तत्थ हियासए ।
णातिवेलं उवचरे, माणुस्सेहि वि पुट्ठओ ॥
8. Aṇāhāro tuatṭejjā, putṭho tattha hiyāsae.
Nātivelam uvacare, māṇussehiṃ vi putṭhao..
8. After having solemnly resolved to give up food (and water, or food only), the monk should lie down on the straw bed. Having done so, if he happens to be oppressed by hunger, thirst or other rigours, he should bear them with fortitude. Or if he encounters any pleasing or painful conditions created by other people, he should not infringe the sanctity of his vow.
९. संसप्पगा य जे पाणा, जे य उद्धमहेचरा ।
भुंजति मंस-सोणियं, ण छणे ण पमज्जए ॥
9. Saṃsappagā ya je pāṇā, je ya uddhamahacarā.
Bhujanti maṃsa-soniyaṃ, ṇa chaṇe ṇa pamajjae..
9. If crawling insects (such as ants), or birds (such as vultures), or creatures living underground (such as rats) feed on the monk's flesh, or if the insects such

as mosquitoes suck his blood, he should not kill them and should not even ward them off with his broom.

१०. पाणा देहं विहिंसन्ति, ठाणाओ ण विउब्भमे ।
आसवेहि विवित्तेहि, तिप्पमाणेहियासए ॥

10. *Pāṇā dehaṃ vihiṃsaṃti, ṭhāṇāo ṇa viubbhame.*
Āsavehiṃ vivittehiṃ, tippamāṇehiyāsaē..

10. (He should deem that) "(Although) these creatures are destroying my body, (they are not destroying the essential attributes of my soul)". Even if he is harassed by them, he should not budge an inch from his posture (or fall from his spiritual elevation). As soon as the influx of *karma* particles has stopped, the monk feels self-satisfied (as if with ambrosia). (Thus satisfied) a monk should cheerfully forbear all hardships encountered by him.

११. गंधेहि विवित्तेहि, आउकालस्स पारए ।

11. *Gaṃtthehiṃ vivittehiṃ, āukālassa pārāe.*

11. All his complexes are fully resolved and he fulfils his pledge of fasting unto death.

इंगिणिमरण-पदं

पग्गहियतरणं चैयं, दवियस्स वियाणतो ॥

Imgiṇimarāṇa-padam

Paggahiyataragaṃ ceyaṃ, daviyassa viyāṇato..

(*Imgiṇi Marāṇa*)

This (*imgiṇi-murāṇa* fast) is of a higher order (than *bhakta-pratyākhyāna*). Only the very learned (who have the knowledge of at least nine *pūrvas*)¹ and self-disciplined monks embrace it.

1. The *Pūrvas* constitute one of the canonical texts of the Jains. Originally they were fourteen in number. They contained the vast oral tradition (or the *Śrutajñāna*). They have been lost.

१२. अयं से अवरे धम्मे, णायपुत्तेण साहिए ।

आयवज्जं पडीयारं, विजहिज्जा तिहा तिहा ॥

12. Ayaṃ se avare dhamme, ṇāyaputtena sāhie.
Āyavajjaṃ paḍiyāraṃ, vijahijjā tihā tihā..

12. Bhagavān Mahāvīra (Nātaputta) has propounded the code of *īmṅini maraṇa* fast differently from that of *bhakta-pratyākhyāna*. In the course of this *anaśana*, the monk is allowed to stand or sit or walk up and down (within limited place) but without taking another's support. He should neither take support himself nor ask others to do so, nor should he approve of others doing so.

१३. हरिएसु ण निवज्जेज्जा, थंडिलं मुणिआ सए ।

विउसिज्ज अणाहारो, पुट्ठो तत्थहियासए ॥

13. Hariesu ṇa nivajjejja, thaṇḍilaṃ muṇiā sae.
Viusijja aṇāhāro, puṭṭho tatthahiyāsae..

13. He should not lie down on a grassy spot; but only on *sthaṇḍila* (i. e. ground bereft of green grass and living beings like insects, etc.) Thus should the fasting monk abandon (his body etc.) completely and endure severe rigours (like the pangs of hunger and thirst.).

१४. इंदिएहि गिलायंते, समियं साहरे मुणी ।

तहावि से अगरिहे, अचले जे समाहिए ॥

14. Iṇḍiehiṃ gilāyaṃte, samiyaṃ sāhare muṇi.
Tahāvi se agarihe, acale je samāhie..

14. On getting enfeebled (and fatigued), the monk may make slight movements of the body, like contracting the limbs. By doing so, he who is tranquil and composed does not transgress the sanctity of his pledge.

१५. अभिककमे पडिककमे, संकुचए पसारए ।

काय-साहारणट्ठाए , एत्थं वावि अचेयणे ॥

15. Abhikkame paḍikkame, saṅkucae pasārae.
Kāya-sāharaṇaṭṭhāe, etthaṃ vāvi aceyaṇe..

15. (In case of getting fatigued as a result of incessant sitting or lying in the same posture), the fasting monk may move to and fro, or contract and stretch (his limbs). (But if his bodily strength permits), he should remain motionless as if he were unconscious in the course of this *anaśana* also.

१६. परक्कमे परिकिलंते, अदुवा चिट्ठे अहायते ।
ठाणेण परिकिलंते, णिसिएज्जा य अंतसो ॥

16. Parakkame parikilaṃte, aduvā ciṭṭhe ahāyate.
Thāṇeṇa parikilaṃte, ṇisiejjā ya āntaso..

16. If he feels fatigued after lying for a long time, he may move to and fro or may stand erect. If he feels tired of standing, he may finally sit down and rest.

१७. आसीणे णेलिसं मरणं, इंदियाणि समीरेण ।
कोलावासं समासज्ज, वितहं पाउरेसए ॥

17. Āsīṇe ṇelisam maraṇam, indiyāṇi samīrae.
Kolāvāsaṃ samāsajja, vitahaṃ pāuresae..

17. While observing this extraordinary fast unto death, he would make right and proper use of all his sense organs (i.e. he would have neither attachment nor aversion to desirable or undesirable objects. He should not lean against a wooden pillar eaten by timber worms and/or infested with white ants, but should look for one which is (clearly) free from insects or worms or little holes created by them.

१८. जाओ वज्जं समुप्पज्जे, ण तत्थ अवलंबए ।
ततो उक्कसे अप्पाणं, सव्वे फासेहियासए ॥

18. Jao vajjaṃ samuppajje, na tattha avalāmbae.
Tato ukkase appāṇaṃ, sāvve phāsehiyāsae..

18. The fasting monk should not lean against any thing which engenders the bondage of *karma*. He should keep himself away from it and bear all hardships.

पाओवगमण-पदं

१६. अयं चायततरे सिया, जो एवं अनुपालए ।
सव्वगायणिरोधेवि , ठाणातो ण विउब्भमे ॥

Pāovagamana-padam

19. Ayaṃ cāyatatare siyā, jo evaṃ anupālae.
Savvagāyaṇirodhevi, ṭhāṇāto ṇa viubbhame..

Prāyopagamana

19. The (*prāyopagamana*) *anaśana* is superior even to *imṅiṇi maraṇa*. A monk embracing it should not budge (even slightly) from his posture even though his whole body may become stiff.

२०. अयं से उत्तमे धम्मे, पुव्वट्ठाणस्स पग्गहे ।
अचिरं पडिलेहिता, विहरे चिट्ठ माहणे ॥

20. Ayaṃ se uttame dhamme, puvvatthāṇassa paggahe.
Aciraṃ paḍilehittā, vihare ciṭṭhā māhaṇe..

20. This is the supreme *Dharma*. It also includes the codes of conduct described earlier (in the context of the *imṅiṇi maraṇa* and *bhaktā-pratyākhyāna*). It is characterised by total motionlessness. A monk (who observes this fast) should look for a spot free from any living beings and occupy it remaining motionless¹.

२१. अचित्तं तु समासज्ज, ठावए तत्थ अप्पगं ।
वोसिरे सव्वसो कायं, ण मे देहे परिसहा ॥

21. Acittaṃ tu samāsajja, ṭhāvae tattha appagaṃ.
Vosire savvaso kāyaṃ, ṇa me dehe parisahā..

21. The monk may obtain (some thing like a wooden plank or stand,) free from any living being, and establish himself on (or against) it (in a suitable posture). He should completely abandon his body, (relaxing it

1. The *Cūrṇi & Vytti* have explained '*ciṭṭha*' as '*sthita*'.

completely). (If difficulties or adversities come, he should remain unaffected, and deem:) "Now when the body itself does not belong to me, how can the suffering (accompanying it) (ever affect me)?"

२२. जावज्जीवं परीसहा, उवसग्गा य संखाय ।
संबुडे देहमेयाए, इति पण्णेहियासए ॥

22. Jāvajjīvaṃ parīsaḥā, uvasaggā ya saṃkhāya.
Saṃvuḍe dehabheyāe, iti paṇṇehiyāsaē..

22. Knowing that hardships and difficulties last only as long as life endures, the wise monk who has already subjected his body to total abandonment and (is fully prepared) for its dissolution should endure them with evenness of mind.

२३. भेउरेसु न रज्जेज्जा, कामेसु बहुतरेसु वि ।
इच्छा-लोभं ण सेवेज्जा, सुहुमं वण्णं सपेहिया ॥

23. Bheuresu na rajjejjā, kāmesu bahutareshu vi.
icchā-lobhaṃ ṇa sevejja, suhumāṃ vaṇṇaṃ sapehiyā..

23. There are many sensual pleasures (emanating from sound etc.), but they are all transient. The monk (therefore) should not wallow in them. He should not even wish for any material gain as a reward. Self discipline is subtly exquisite, and the one, who perceives it should not deviate from it.

ANNOTATION 23. Desire is of two kinds:

- (a) Lust for sex, and
- (b) Craving for pleasure.

In the present *śloka*, the monk has been admonished to remain unattached to both kinds of desire. At the ebb of one's life, one might be tempted to wish for specific material gain as a reward of one's penances in the form of the attainment of the highest position of glory in the next birth. But a *sādhaka* being desireless should refrain from such vicious aspirations.

२४. सासएहि णिमतेज्जा, दिव्वं मायं ण सद्देहे ॥
तं पडिबुज्झ माहणे, सव्वं नूमां विधूणिया ॥

24. Sāsaehim̐ nimam̐tejjā, divvaṃ māyaṃ ṇa saddahe.
Taṃ paḍibujjha māhaṇe, savvaṃ nūmaṃ vidhūṇiyā..

24. The monk should not succumb to enticements when invited to divine reveleries by the gods. He should not be misled by their illusive tricks. Penetrating the veil of illusion, he should clearly perceive the truth.

२५. सव्वट्ठेहि अमुच्छिए, आउकालस्स पारए ।
तितिक्खं परमं णच्चा, विमोहणतरं हितं ॥
— त्ति बेमि ।

25. Savvatthehim̐ amucchie, āukālassa pārae.
Titikkhaṃ paramaṃ ṇaccā, vimohaṇṇataraṃ hitaṃ..

— Tti bemi.

25. Not tantalised by any allurements — human or divine, he should reach the end of his life-span. Keeping stoicism at a premium, he should take recourse to one of the three kinds of *vimokṣa* (fast unto death) viz. *bhaktā-bratyākhyāna*, *imgitā maraṇa* and *prā-yopagamana*, which is conducive to beatitude.

— I say so.

CHAPTER IX

THE EXCELLENCE OF
RIGHTEOUSNESS

नवमं अज्झयणं
उवहाण-सुयं

NAVAMAṂ AJJHAYAṆAṂ

UVAHĀṆA SUYAṂ

SECTION I

पढमो उद्देशो

Paḍhamo Uddeso

भगवओ चरिया-पदं

१. अहासुयं वदिस्सामि, जहा से समणे भगवं उट्ठाया ।
संखाए तसि हेमंते, अहुणा पव्वइए रीयत्था ॥

Bhagavao Cariyā-padam

1. Ahāsuyam vadissāmi, jahā se samane bhagavam
uṭṭhāya.
Saṃkhāe taṃsi hemaṃte, ahuṇā pavvaie riyyatthā..

The Rambles of Bhagavān Mahāvīra

1. (The Venerable Sudharmā said, "O Jambū!") I shall relate to you what I have heard of the rambles of the Venerable Ascetic (Bhagavān Mahāvīra, the Śramaṇa). After having discovered the Truth, the Bhagavān renounced worldly life. On getting initiated into ascetic life, (on the tenth day of the first fortnight of the lunar month of Mṛgaśīra (corresponding to November) in winter, at Kṣatriya-Kuṇḍapura (at present in Muzaffarpur District of Bihar)), the Bhagavān left immediately for ascetic wanderings.

२. णो चेविमेण वत्थेण, पिहिस्सामि तंसि हेमंते ।
से पारए आवक्खाए, एयं खु अणुधम्मियं तस्स ॥

2. No cevimeṇa vattheṇa, pihissāmi taṃsi hemaṃte.
Se pārae āvakahāe, eyaṃ khu aṇudhammiyaṃ tassa..
2. (At the time of initiation, the Bhagavān had put on only one robe. He resolved;) "I shall not cover myself with this robe in winter." He was pledged to forbear the severities of cold all his life. This, in fact, comprised his *anudharma* (i. e. way of life in harmony with his *sādhana*).

ANNOTATION 2. Bhagavān Mahāvīra was the propounder of *anudharma*, which has two main characteristics:

- (a) non-violence, and
(b) stoicism.

(Cf. *Sūyagaḍo*, 1/2/14, Text and Commentary,)

३. चत्तारि साहिए मासे, बहवे पाण-जाइया आगम्म ।
अभिरुज्झ कायं विहरिंसु, आरुसियाणं तत्थ हिंसिंसु ॥

3. Cattāri sāhie māse, bahave pāṇa-jāiyā āgamma.
Abhirujjha kāyaṃ viharimsu, ārusiyaṇaṃ tattha him-
simsu..
3. (On the eve of initiation, the body of Bhagavān Mahāvīra was anointed with divine "*Gośīrsa*" sandalwood and perfumed powders, attracted by which living beings like black-bees and wasps came. They tried to suck the honey (which was not there) from the body of Bhagavān Mahāvīra, and which fact irked them into stinging the Bhagavān's body. This went on for over four months.

ANNOTATION 3. The aroma emanating from the anointed body of Bhagavān Mahāvīra was very sweet and delightful. Attracted by it, many young people would come to the Bhagavān and ask for various kinds of perfumaries. The Bhagavān observed a sacred silence; he would say nothing to the visitors. Displeased with him they would ruefully remark: "What on earth is the matter with you? Why don't

you give us something?" Another spell of silence. Annoyed with this they would maltreat him.

Unruffled by all this, the Bhagavān would stand in the posture of meditation. Womenfolk got attracted to his body which was free from the bad smell of perspiration and filth, and to his mouth which was full of sweet breath. They used to inquire: "Where do you live? Where can one find this scented stuff? Who manufactures it?" But the Bhagavān's sacred silence would continue.

Thus his extra-ordinary physique plus the fragrant anointment on it became the cause of his predicament. (*Ācārāṅga Cūrṇi*, p. 300).

४. संवच्छरं साहियं मासं, जं ण रिक्कासि वत्थगं भगवं ।

अचेलए ततो चाई, तं वोसज्ज वत्थमणगरे ॥

4. Saṁvaccharam̐ sāhiyaṁ māsaṁ, jaṁ ṇa rikkāsi vatthagaṁ bhagavaṁ.
thagaṁ bhagavaṁ.

Acelae tato cāi, taṁ vosajja vatthamaṇagāre..

4. The Bhagavān did not discard his one and the only one robe for thirteen months. The homeless and world-relinquishing Venerable One abandoned it for good and remained blissfully naked ever since.

ANNOTATION 4. The purport of the text seems to be that Bhagavān Mahāvīra initiated himself into ascetic life with a robe on, which he later discarded. He did so on principle.

Later tradition, however, has it that when the Bhagavān was passing by the bank of the river *Suvarṇabālukā*, his robe got caught up in some thorny bush and was swept away by the currents of the river. A *brāhmin* who happened to pass by, picked it up.

The supposition that the said robe could have remained intact on the Bhagavān's shoulders for thirteen months after initiation, and that the Bhagavān discarded it just when it got caught up in a thorny bush, seems irrelevant and baseless. A much more plausible theory seems to be that the Bhagavān did not put on the robe to protect himself from cold but that he did so merely to cover up the privities. As a matter of fact, this is not alien to the *Nir-grantha* (the Jain) tradition. This is corroborated by the

Buddhist scriptures which mention *Nirgrantha*s clad in one single robe (*ekaśāṭaka*) (vide, the *Aṅguttara Nikāya*). When the Bhagavān attained the higher stages of *sādhana*, he completely abandoned even that piece of robe and became totally *aceṭa* (naked monk). (Cf. *Ācārāṅga Cūrṇi*, p. 390).

५. अदु पोरिसि तिरियं भित्ति, चक्खुमासज्ज अंतसो झाइ ।

अह चक्खु-भीया सहिया, तं "हंता हंता" बहवे कंदिसु ॥

5. Adu porisim tiriyaṃ bhattim, cakkhumāsajja aṃtaso
jhāi.
Aha cakkhu-bhīyā sahiyā, taṃ "haṃtā-haṃtā" bahave
kaṃdimṣu..

5. Intensely concentrating his mind on a slanting wall, the Bhagavān meditated for hours on end with his gaze firmly fixed. (The eye-balls used to bulge out, on account of the hard stare over a long period). Children used to get awe-stricken by this rather unusual spectacle, and invited other children to come and watch him, with the outcry 'Goodness Gracious! Oh dear!' ¹

1. Both, author of the *Cūrṇi* and the Commentator have interpreted it as follows:

"He used to walk carefully with his eyes fixed on the path gradually widening, and of the length of a man (roughly six feet). Shocked at the spectacle of the Bhagavān's walking with his gaze fixed, children used to raise a hue and cry and attracted the other boys to it." Dr. Herman Jacobi, who has translated this *sūtra* on the basis of the explanation given by the commentator, has, however, mooted this point: "I cannot make out the exact meaning of it, perhaps, so that he was a wall for the animals."

Fixing the gaze on the wall has been the meditational technique of the Buddhist monks also. In the present text of *Āyāro* itself (2/125), we find that this very technique of meditation has been mentioned. The commentator of the *Bhagawatī Sūtra*, Shri Abhayadeva Suri has also interpreted the word *tiryagbhitti* as the rampart (*prākāra*), or the wall of a mound, or the

६. सयणेहि वितिमिस्सेहि, इत्थीओ तत्थ से परिण्णाय ।

सागारियं ण सेवे, इति से सयं पवेसिया ज्ञाति ॥

6. Sayanehiṃ vitimissehiṃ, itthīo tattha se pariṇṇāya.
Sāgāriyaṃ ṇa seve, iti se sayam pavesiyā jhāti..

6. Bhagavān Mahāvīra did not (usually) stay in crowded places. (Sometime he managed to find a secluded area and stayed there). But this seclusion was often invaded by womenfolk who happened to pass that way (in search of solitude). (Although solicited by women for carnal enjoyment), the Bhagavān would spurn their advances, for he was all the time morally alert. Penetrating into the depths of his soul, he would go in meditation on such an occasion.

७. जे के इमे अगारत्था, मीसीभावं पहाय से ज्ञाति ।

पुट्ठो वि णाभिभासिसु, गच्छति णाद्वत्तई अजू ॥

7. Je ke ime agāratthā, mīsībhāvaṃ pahāya se jhāti.
Putṭho vī ṇābhībhāsimsu, gacchati ṇāivattai aṃjū..

7. Bhagavān Mahāvīra meditated with deep concentration even in the midst of places crowded with householders. He would not speak even when spoken to. If someone compelled him to speak, he would quietly move to some other place. He would not let his concentration be disturbed in any way and would remain equipoised in all situations.

ANNOTATIONS 6-7. The Bhagavān would choose a secluded place for meditation. If he did not get one, he would seclude himself — i. e. he would shut himself out from all extraneous circumstances and get himself immersed deeply in the very depths of the innermost soul. To look for a secluded place, or (if such a place is not easily available) to seclude oneself from all external objects— is very useful and advantageous for meditation.

rock. (Vide, the *Bhagavatī Sūtra*, Commentary, pp. 543-44).

८. णो सुगरमेतमेगेसिं, णाभिभासे अभिवायमाणे ।
हयपुव्वो तत्थ दंढेहिं, लूसियपुव्वो अप्पपुण्णेहिं ॥

8. No sugarametamegesim, nābhībhaṣe abhivāyamāṇe.
Hayapuvvo tattha daṇḍehim, lūsiyapuvvo appapupṇe-
him..

8. The Bhagavān would not give his blessings to those who greeted him. Nor would he curse even those who would bash him up with a cudgel or would try to mutilate his limbs. This high stage of *sādhana* is not easily accessible to every *sādhaka*.

ANNOTATION 8. According to the author of the *Cūrṇi* when the Bhagavān was passing through *Corapallī*, efforts were made to mutilate his limbs or bite his body, (vide, *Ācārāṅga Cūrṇi*, p. 302).

९. फरुसाई दुत्तितिक्खाई, अतिअच्च मुणी परक्कममाणे ।
आघाय-णट्ट-गीताई , दंढजुद्धाई मुट्ठिजुद्धाई ॥

9. Phārusāim duttitikkhāim, atiacca muṇī parakkama-
māṇe.
Aghāya-ṇaṭṭa-gītāim, daṇḍajuddhāim muṭṭhijuddhāim..

9. The Bhagavān would turn a deaf ear to harsh words and unbearable insults. He kept himself vigorously engrossed in spiritual pursuits. He would take no interest in graphic narratives, colourful plays, songs, cudgel-fights and boxing (and such other entertainments).

ANNOTATION 9. Bhagavān Mahāvīra would forbear both kinds of rigours or hardships, favourable and unfavourable. A musician was playing on a lute (*vinā*). On seeing the Bhagavān who happened to pass that way at that time, he said, "My Bhagavān! Please stop to hear my performance." But Bhagavān Mahāvīra politely refused, and quietly went away. To evince interest in any kind of entertainment colourful or euphonious, is a kind of tempting predicament for a *sādhaka*.

१०. गदिए मिहो - कहासु , समयमि नायसुए विसोगे अदक्खू ।

एताइ सो उरालाई , गच्छइ नायपुत्ते असरणाए ॥

10. Gadhie miho-kahāsu, samayaṃmi nāyasue visoge
adakkhū.
Etāim so urālāim, gacchai nāyaputte asaraṇāe..

10. The Bhagavān would turn indifferent to people engaged in bawdy talks and amorous gestures without being moved by them. He would not evince any interest in, or pay any heed to, any of these trials -- favourable or unfavourable. This is how he circumvented them all.

११. अविशहिए दुवे वासे, सीतोदं अभोच्चा णिक्खंते ।

एगत्तगए पिहियच्चे, से अहिण्णायदंसणे संते ॥

11. Avisāhie duve vāse, sītodaṃ abhoccā nikkhaṃte.
Egattagae pihiyacce, se ahinṇāyadaṃsaṇe saṃte..

11. The Bhagavān lived home-life for more than two years (after the death of his parents). During that period, he did not take any animate food or water. Even though he lived with the members of his family, his soul was solitary. His body, mind, speech and senses — everything remained untainted. He always perceived Truth and kept constant company with Peace. (After this *sādhana* in the midst of his family), he renounced home-life.

ANNOTATION 11. Bhagavān Mahāvīra was 28 years old, when his parents died. He expressed his desire to embrace asceticism at once. At that time his elder brother *Nandī-vardhana* and other relatives of his requested the Bhagavān, "Oh my dear Prince! please, do not add insult to injury by saying so. You know fully well that our parents are no more, and on top of this you too want to leave the family." Bearing this entreaty in mind, Bhagavān Mahāvīra thought to himself, "If I took to initiation now I may cause sadness to many people and this may make them miserable. Some people in the family might even commit suicide. This is not desirable."

Relenting, he said, "Please tell me how long I should remain with you?" Nandivardhana answered, "The death of the king and the queen will be mourned for two years, for which period you must live with us." The Bhagavān acceded to his request. The Bhagavān said, "You must however accede to a request of mine as well. I must have my own choice in matters of food etc. No one should interfere with me. If these terms are acceptable to you, then alone I can stay in this home for two years." Nandivardhana and others agreed to this.

During this period, the Bhagavān did not take any animate food or drink. He would wash his hands and feet with inanimate water, but never take a full bath. He led a life of non-violence, truth, non-stealing, continence and non-acquisitiveness. He did not take meals at night. He remained totally unattached to his family. This was an experiment in asceticism in the midst of the homelife.

१२. पुढवि च आउकायं, तेउकायं च वाउकायं च ।

पणगाइं बीय-हरियाइं, तसकायं च सव्वसो णच्चा ॥

12. Puḍhaviṃ ca āukāyaṃ, teukāyaṃ ca vāukāyaṃ ca.
Paṇagāiṃ biya-hariyāiṃ, tasakāyaṃ ca savvaso ṇaccā..

१३. एयाइं सति णडिलेहे, चित्तमंताइं से अभिण्णाय ।

परिवज्जिया ण विहरित्था, इति संखाए से महावीरे ॥

13. Eyāiṃ samti ṇaḍilehe, cittamaṃtāiṃ se abhiṇṇāya.
Parivajjiyā ṇa viharitthā, iti saṃkhāe se mahāvīre..

12- After having fully known the (existence of) living
13. beings of earth-body, water-body, fire-body, air-body and mildew, seed and vegetation and mobile living beings, and after having recognized their existence, and ascertained their animatedness, the Bhagavān cheerfully rambled about doing no violence to them.

१४. अदु थावरा तसत्ताए, तसजीवा य थावरत्ताए ।

अदु सव्वजोणिया सत्ता, कम्मुणा कप्पिया पुढो बाला ॥

14. Adu thāvarā tasattāe, tasajīvā ya thāvarattāe.
Adu savvajoniyā sattā, kammunā kappiyā puḍho bālā..

14. Stationary creatures may be reborn in the species of mobile beings and *vice versa*. Living beings are prone to be reborn in any of the genera of beings. The ignorant beings are reborn into different genera because of their own *karma*.

ANNOTATION 14. In those days, the belief was current that a female is reborn as a female and a male as a male; a rich man is reborn as a rich man; and a *muni* as a *muni*. Bhagavān Mahāvīra repudiated this general belief and established the principle of the possibility of rebirth in any genus. According to this, the variety of *karma* causes change of genera in rebirth.

१४. भगवं च एवं मन्नेसिं, सोवहिए हु लुप्यती बाले ।
कम्मं च सव्वसो णच्चा, तं पडियाइक्खे पावगं भगवं ॥
15. Bhagavaṃ ca evaṃ mannesiṃ, soṃvahiē hu luppatī bāle.
Kammaṃ ca savvaso ṇaccā, taṃ paḍiyāikkhe pāva-
gaṃ bhagavaṃ..
15. An ignorant person's accumulation of possessions culminates into his (spiritual) destruction. Reflecting thus, and knowing fully well the (consequences of) *karmic* bondage, the Bhagavān vowed not to commit sin.
१६. दुविहं समिच्च मेहावी, किरियमक्खायणेलिसिं णाणी ।
आयाण-सोयमतिनाय-सोयं, जोगं च सव्वसो णच्चा ॥
16. Duvihaṃ samicca mehāvī, kiriyamakkhāyaṇelisiriṃ ṇāṇī.
Āyāṇa-soyamativāya-soyaṃ, jogam ca savvaso ṇaccā..
16. After having weighed the pros and cons of both *kriyā-vāda* (actionism)¹ and *akriyā-vāda* (non-actionism), and having known fully the influx of *Karmic* matter
-
1. In the *Sūtrakṛtāṅga* 1/12/20, 21, it has been mentioned:
*Attāṇa jo jāṇai jo ya logaṃ, jo āgatiṃ jāṇai (a)-nāg-
atiṃ ca.*
*Jo sāsayaṃ jāṇa asāsayaṃ ca, jātiṃ maraṇaṃ ca
cāyaṇovavātāṃ..*

through sensuality, violence, and the impulses of mind, speech, and body, the sage and wise Bhagavān propounded the unique doctrine of *kriyā*, not propounded by others.

ANNOTATION 16. When the Bhagavān was leading a dispassionate and detached life even in the midst of home-life, his uncle named Supārśva, his elder brother named Nandivardhana, and some other friends, said to him, "Why don't you enjoy sensual pleasures?"

The Bhagavān answered, "The senses are the sources of the influx of *karmic* matter. My soul is pining for emancipation. That is why I can't enjoy the sensual pleasures.

On hearing this, they said, "O Prince! why don't you drink cold (animate) water and eat animate food?"

The Bhagavān replied, "Violence is the source of bondage. My soul is pining for freedom. That is why I refrain from killing beings (with water-body), possessed of life like me."

They again said, "Oh Prince! you keep continuously sitting in the posture of meditation. Why do you not have some recreation?"

The Bhagavān quipped back, "The mind, body and speech are also the triple sources of bondage. My soul is pining for freedom. I refrain, therefore, from giving support to their impulses."

They said, "Why don't you take bath? Why do you sleep on the floor?"

The Bhagavān said, "The bodily attachment and luxuries are both sources of bondage. I want to plug these loopholes. That is why I have embraced this way of life."

१७. अइवातियं अणाउट्ठे, सयमण्णेसि अकरणयाए ।

जस्सित्थिओ परिण्णया, सव्वकम्मवहाओ से अदक्खू ॥

17. Aivātiyaṃ aṇāutte, sayamaṇṇesiṃ akaraṇayāe.

Jassitthio parinṇāyā, savvakammāvahāo se adakkhū..

Aho vi kattāṇa viuttaṇaṃ ca, jo ūsavaṃ jāṇati saṃ-
varam ca.

Dukkhaṃ ca jo jāṇai nijjaraṃ ca, so bhāsiumarīhati
kiriyavādaṃ..

17. The Bhagavān did not commit any violence to any living beings, nor did he ever make others to do so. The Bhagavān saw —

(On being asked by his relatives why he avoided all women-folk, the Bhagavān replied —)

"Women (incontinence) are the harbingers of all *karmic* influx. One who relinquishes them, perceives (the soul)."

१८. अहाकडं न से सेवे, सव्वसो कम्मणा य अदक्खु ।

जं किंचि पावगं भगवं, तं अकुव्वं वियडं भुजित्था ॥

18. Ahākaḍaṃ na se seve, savvaso kammaṇā ya adakkhū. Jaṃ kiñci pāvagaṃ bhagaṃ, taṃ akuvvaṃ viyaḍaṃ bhuñjitthā..

18. The Bhagavān saw that the acceptance of food prepared specifically for the *munis* entails *karmic* bondage. That is why he always refused such food. He would take only inanimate food. The Bhagavān never partook of any such meals which were conducive to sinfulness.¹

१९. णो सेवती य परवत्थं, परपाए वि से ण भुजित्था ।

परिवज्जियाण ओमाणं, गच्छति संखडिं असरणाए ॥

19. Ño sevati ya paravatthaṃ, parapāe vi se ṇa bhuñjitthā. Parivajjiyāṇa omāṇaṃ, gacchati saṃkhaḍḍiṃ asaraṇāe..

19. (Bhagavān Mahāvīra did not possess any dress, nor did he borrow any from anyone else.

1. The author of the *Cūṛṇī* has interpreted the word *pāpaka* in various ways:

The Bhagavān never took meals which were prepared with a view to giving them in alms to just anybody. Thus he was saved from the guilt of "approval of violence."

Another interpretation is that the Bhagavān did not take any meat or alcoholic drinks (*pāpaka*).

Yet another interpretation is that the Bhagavān did not partake of such meals which were conducive to sinfulness.

(He had no bowls of his own), nor did he use another's for the purpose of eating in them.

He did not go for alms to any such feast which could not feed people beyond the numbers of invitees.

He did not even think of delicious food.

ANNOTATION 19. According to the author of *Cūrṇi*, Bhagavān Mahāvīra had only one robe on at the time of initiation, which he had abandoned after thirteen months. He never used any other robe ever since.

When he broke the fast just after initiation into asceticism, the Bhagavān took his meals in a utensil owned by a householder. Later he became a *pāṇipātra* (i.e. one who uses the palms of his hand as utensils), and never used the utensils of anyone for taking his meals.

Once when the Bhagavān was sojourning in a weaver's workshop at Nālandā, his only disciple called Gośālaka asked him, "Shall I bring some food for you?" The Bhagavān said, "No", in the belief that his disciple would get food for him in a householder's utensil.

After he achieved omniscience the Bhagavān became a *Tīrthaṅkara*. Lohārya, one of his disciples, used to procure food for him from householders. But the Bhagavān would take it on his palms and then eat it. The description alluded to here refers to the period of *sādhana*. Therefore, the incident of procurement of food by Lohārya is not purported here.

२०. मायण्णे असण-पाणस्स, णाणुगिद्धे रसेसु अपडिण्णे ।

अच्छिपि णो पमज्जिया, णोवि य कंढूयये मुणी गायं ॥

20. Māyaṇṇe asaṇa-pāṇassa, ṇāṇugiddhe rasesu apaḍiṇṇe. Acchiṃpi ṇo pamajjiyā, ṇovi ya kaṇḍuyaye muṇi gāyaṃ..

20. Bhagavān Mahāvīra knew what quantity he should eat and drink. He was devoid of any ardent longing for delicacies. He did not even think of any particular kind of food. He did not even wipe his eyes. Nor did he scratch his body when he had an itching.

ANNOTATION 20. Bhagavān Mahāvīra had an extraordinarily well-built physique. His system did not have likelihood of developing any indigestion or constipation, still he cautiously avoided the possibility of any illness by being abstemious in his habits.

A glutton cannot wholeheartedly concentrate on meditation. That is why the Bhagavān took only a frugal diet.

Even while leading family life, Bhagavān Mahāvīra was not at all keen on (any delicacies of) food. Right from the very beginning he was not interested in such food. And this disinterestedness reached its culmination during the period of his *sādhana*.

The Bhagavān would never long for a particular kind of food except when undertaking special *sādhana* e. g. he would sometimes wish for *urada* for carrying on specific *sādhana*.

Bhagavān Mahāvīra had a steady gaze; he would not let his eyes blink. If a particle of dust accidentally fell into his eyes, he would not care to take it out. In case of an ant or a mosquito or any other insect biting him, he would not even scratch his body. All this he did for successful control in *sādhana*. "I shall let things take their own natural course and shall not interfere with their smooth flow." — this was always at the back of his mind while performing *sādhana* with effortless ease.

२१. अप्पं तिरियं पेहाए, अप्पं पिट्ठो उपेहाए ।

अप्पं बुइएण्डिभाणी, पंथपेही चरे जयमाणे ॥

21. Appaṃ tiriyaṃ pehāe, appaṃ piṭṭhao upehāe.

Appaṃ vuie(a)paḍibhāṇī, paṃthapehī care jayamaṇe. .

21. While walking, Bhagavān Mahāvīra never looked sideways (i. e. left or right), or looked back. He would walk in silence. He would speak only when spoken to, and that too, very little. Always wide awake to the responsibility and duty of non-violence to all living beings, he would walk with his eyes firmly fixed on the path ahead.

२२. सिसिरंसि अद्धपडिवन्ने, तं वोसज्ज बत्थमणगारे ।

पसारित्तु बाहुं परक्कमे, णो अवलंबियाण कंघसि ॥

22. Sisiraṃsi addhapaḍivanne, taṃ vosajja vatthamaṇaḡāre.
Pasārittu bāhuṃ parakkame, ṇo avalaṃbiyāṇa kaṃ-
dhaṃsi..

22. The Bhagavān had abandoned the use of clothes. In winter he would boldly walk with his hands outspread, and would not (try to avoid cold by) folding his arms under his shoulders.

२३. एस विही अणुक्कंतो, माहणेण मईमया ।
अपडिण्णेण वीरेण, कासवेण महेसिणा ॥
--त्ति बेमि ।

23. Esa vihi aṇukkaṃto, māhaṇeṇa maīmaya.
Apaḍiṇṇeṇa vīreṇa, kāsaveṇa mahesiṇā..

— Tti bemi.

23. Bhagavān Mahāvīra, the wise, *Māhana*, (*Brāhmaṇa*, non-violent) Great Seer, born in the clan of Kāśyapa, followed without any reservation the aforementioned code of conduct.

— Thus I say.

ANNOTATION 23. During the last two years of home-life and twelve-and- a half years of *sādhana*, Bhagavān Mahāvira austerey practised freedom from desires. He had no inhibitions or reservations relating to food, place, and time for sleep. Thus he remained completely unaffected by the demands of the body. He would calmly and cheerfully accept anything that came his way and which was congenial to the accomplishment of his *sādhana*.

SECTION II

बीओ उद्देसो

Bīo Uddeso

भगवओ सेज्जा-पदं

- १, चरियासणाई सेज्जाओ, एगतियाओ जाओ बुइयाओ ।
आइक्ख ताई सयणासणाई, जाई सेवित्था से महावीरो ॥

Bhagavao Sejjā-padam

1. Cariyāsaṇāim sejjāo, egatiyāo jāo buiyāo.
Āikkha tāim sayanaṣaṇāim, jāim sevitthā se mahāvīro..

Bhagavān Mahāvīra's Seats and Retreats

1. (Jambū said to Sudharmā:) "O Noble One! In the context of ascetic rambles, you had already told me about some seats and places of residence. Now, would you care to tell me about all those seats and places of residence which were actually used by Bhagavān Mahāvīra?"

२. आवेसण - सभा - पवासु , पणियसालासु एगदा वासो ।
अदुवा पलियट्ठाणेषु, पलालपुंजेसु एगदा वासो ॥

2. Āvesaṇa-sabhā-pavāsu, paṇiyasālāsu egadā vāso.
Aduvā paliyaṭṭhāṇesu, palālapuñjesu egadā vāso..
2. (Sudharmā replied:) "Bhagavān Mahāvīra lived in all sorts of places, such as workhouses (like potter's lodge, blacksmith's workshop etc.), assembly houses, water-huts, shops, factories, or even canopies made of hay-stacks.

३. आगंतारे आरामागारे, गामे णगरेवि एगदा वासो ।
सुसाणे सुण्णगारे वा, रुक्खमूले वि एगदा वासो ॥

3. Āgarhtāre ārāmāgāre, gāme ṇagarevi egadā vāso.
Susāṇe suṇṇagāre, vā, rukkhāmūle vi egadā vāso. .

3. The Bhagavān sometimes used to stay in inns or rest-houses; sometimes in villages and towns; sometimes on cremation grounds, in deserted houses or under the trees.

४. एतेहिं मुणी सयणेहिं, समणे आसी पतेरस वासे ।
राइं दिवं पि जयमाणे, अप्पमत्ते समाहिए ज्ञाति ॥

4. Etehiṃ muṇī sayañehiṃ, samañe āsī paterasa vāse.
Rāim divam pi jayamāṇe, appamatte samāhie jhāti. .

4. During the period of twelve-and-a-half years of his *sādhana*, Bhagavān Mahāvīra, the wise *śramaṇa* used to live cheerfully in these diverse lodges.

He would meditate day and night by making (his mind, body and speech) steady and poised and his senses and passions subdued.

५. णिहं पि णो पगामाए, सेवइ भगवं उट्ठाए ।
जग्गावती य अप्पाणं, ईसिं साई या सी अपडिण्णे ॥

5. Niddam pi ṇo pagāmāe, sevai bhagavaṃ utthāe.
Jaggāvatī ya appāṇam, īsiṃ sāi yā sī apaḍiṇṇe. .

5. The Bhagavān did not seek sleep for the sake of pleasure and comfort. (On feeling drowsy,) he would stand up and keep himself wide awake. (After long spells of sleeplessness, for the upkeep and maintenance of body,) he would have only a nap. He never craved for the comfort of sleep.

ANNOTATION 5. During the entire period of twelve-and-a-half long years of his *sādhana*, the Bhagavān slept only for one *antarmukhūrta* (i. e. less than 48 minutes). That too, not continuously, but only intermittently. He would not lie down at all. He would take only a nap, either standing or sitting, and then immediately go into medita-

tion. In a village called Asthikagrāma he slept only for a few moments, during which brief period he dreamt ten dreams. (*St'ānāṅga*, 10/103).

६. संबुज्झमाणे पुणरवि, आसिसु भगवं उट्ठाए ।
 निक्खम्म एगया रामो, बहिं चंक्रमिया मुहुत्तागं ॥

6. Saṃbujjhamāṇe puṇaravi, āsimsu bhagavaṃ uṭṭhāe.
 Nikkhamma egayā rāo, bahiṃ caṃkhamiyā muhuttā-
 gam..

6. Bhagavān Mahāvīra, after only a few moment's sleep, would be awake again and would sit in meditation with full internal watchfulness. When, sometimes, sleep tormented him too much at night, he would come out of the resting-place, and stroll for about a *muhūrta* or so. (Then he would return to his original place and go into meditation).

ANNOTATION 6. There are three main constituents of Bhagavān Mahāvīra's *sūddhanā*:

- a) Control of diet;
- b) Control of the senses; and
- c) Control of sleep.

Through the elixir of spiritual realization, he would achieve control of palate.

Through total absorption in the perception of the soul, he achieved control over the senses.

Through meditation he achieved control over sleep.

It was generally in extremely cold and hot weather that he was tormented by sleep. On those occasions, the Bhagavān would achieve control over sleep by strolling.

७. सयणेहि तस्सुवसग्गा, भीमा आसी अणेगस्सुवा य ।
 संसप्पगाय जे पाणा, अदुवा जे पक्खिणो उवचरंति ॥

7. Sayaṇehiṃ tassuvasaggā, bhīmā āsī aṇegarūvā ya.
 Saṃsappagāya je paṇā, aduvā je pakkhīṇo uvacaramti..

7. Bhagavān Mahāvīra had to undergo terrible hardships of various kinds, while he lived in those resting

places. (While in meditation), he would be bit even by a snake or a mongoose, or a dog; he was occasionally attacked by ants which made his body bleed; and he was frequently tormented by gadflies, mosquitoes, bees and wasps. (Undeterred by all this, the Bhagavān would still remain deeply absorbed in meditation.)

८. अदु कुचरा उवचरंति, गामरक्खा य सत्तिहत्था य ।

अदु गामिया उवसग्गा, इत्थी एगतिया पुरिसा य ॥

8. Adu kucarā uvacaram̐ti, gāmarakkhā ya sattihatthā ya.
Adu gāmiyā uvasaggā, itthī egatiyā purisā ya..

8. (While meditating in a deserted hut, Bhagavān Mahāvīra would often be discomfited by burglars or debauchees; (while meditating on the cross-roads,) he would be upbraided or even hurt by village-guards equipped with lances or spears. The Bhagavān would often have to bear even sexual advances caused by men or women.

ANNOTATION 8. Women were easily enamoured of Bhagavān Mahāvīra's handsome face and figure. At night they tried to seduce him and distract him from meditation, but in vain. This made them angry and they cursed him. When their husbands came to know of this, they would come up to the Bhagavān and pass various sarcastic remarks, such as: "Look, he is a mischievous rogue, this cursed mendicant. It was he who enticed our pretty dames. Let's kick him out of here." Thus they abused him and rebuked him sharply. Some would even go to the length of giving him good hiding. Nevertheless, the Bhagavān paid no attention whatsoever to both these oppressions, and would remain absorbed in meditation.

९. इहलोइयाइं परलोइयाइं, भीमाइं अणेगरूवाइं ।

अवि सुब्धि-दुब्धि-गंघाइं, सदाइं अणेगरूवाइं ॥

9. Ihaloiyāim̐ paraloiyāim̐, bhīmāim̐ aṇegarūvāim̐.
Avi subbhi-dubbhi-gaṁdhāim̐, saddāim̐ aṇegarūvāim̐..

9. Bhagavān Mahāvīra courageously put up with various sorts of terrible hardships and difficulties caused to him by men and other living creatures.

Odour — good or bad — did not affect him in the least.

Words — kind or unkind — he always remained completely indifferent to.

१०. अहियासए सया समिए, फासाइं विरूवरूवाई ।
अरई रई अभिभूय, रीयई माहणे अबहुवाई ॥

10. Ahiyāsae sayā samie, phāsāim virūvarūvāim.
Araim raim abhibhūya, rīyaī māhaṇe abahuvāi..

10. Bhagavān Mahāvīra bore with fortitude all kinds of afflictions by following the Right Conduct.

He would subdue (by meditation) feelings of ennui produced by self-discipline or temptation for pleasures of self-indulgence.

He would normally remain silent, (except only in special circumstances.)

११. स जणेहि तत्थ पुच्छिंसु, एगचरा वि एगदा राओ ।
अव्वाहिए कसाइत्था, पेहमाणे समाहि अपडिण्णे ॥

11. Sa jāṇehim tattha pucchiimsu, egacarā vi egadā rāo.
Avvāhie kasāitthā, pehamāṇe samāhim apadīṇṇe..

11. (When Bhagavān Mahāvīra meditated in solitude,) some tramps would try to disturb him by embarrassing questions (like these "Who are you? Where have you come from? What makes you stand here?") Or some times at night, some debauchees would accost him thus ("What are you doing here in this deserted house?")

On getting no answer from the Bhagavān, they would get annoyed with him and would start maltreating him.

Nevertheless, the Bhagavān would remain rapt in meditation. He would not even think of retaliating.

१२. अयमंतरंसि को एत्थ, अहमंसि त्ति भिक्खु आहट्ठु ।
अयमुत्तमे से धम्ममे, तुसिणीए स कसाइए ज्ञाति ॥

12. *Ayamantarāṃsi ko ettha, ahamamsi tti bhikkhū āhaṭṭu.*
Ayamuttame se dhamme, tusiṇīe sa kaṣāie jhāti. .

12. (When Bhagavān Mahāvīra was meditating in a park on the out-skirts of a village, some frequenters to the place inquired of him.) "Who is there inside?" The Bhagavān replied "I am an ascetic." (They asked, "Who gave you permission to use this place? Why are you occupying our place of recreation?" The Bhagavān quietly left the place). This characterised his lofty conduct. Despite their agitation, the Bhagavān kept quiet and remained absorbed in meditation.

१३. जंसिप्पेगे पवेयंति, सिसिरे मारुए पवायंते ।
तंसिप्पेगे अणगारा, हिमवाए णिवायमेसंति ॥

13. *Jaṃsippege paveyaṃti, sisire mārue pavāyaṃte.*
Taṃsippege aṇagārā, himavāe ṇivāyamesaṃti. .

१४. संघाडिओ पविसिस्सामो, एहा य समादहमाणा ।
पिहिया वा सक्खामो, अतिदुक्खं हिमग-संफासा ॥

14. *Samghāḍiō pavisissāmo, ehā ya samādahamāṇā.*
Pihiyā vā sakkhāmo, atidukkhaṃ himaga-saṃphāsā. .

13. The winter-wind made (scantily clad) people shiver with cold; snowfall made houseless mendicants to seek houses protected from winds, and cover themselves with clothes. Considering that they would be able to protect themselves against painfully severe cold, some monks kindled fire and closed doors, because it was extremely difficult to brave snow-fall.

१५. तंसि भगवं अपडिण्णे, अहे वियडे अहियासए दविए ।
णिकखम्म एगदा राओ, चाएइ भगवं समियाए ॥

15. *Taṃsi bhagavaṃ apadhiṇṇe, ahe viyaḍe ahiyāsaē daviē.*
Ṇikkhamma egadā rāo, cāei bhagavaṃ samiyāē. .

15. Bhagavān Mahāvīra, however, would not, even in the face of such severe cold, even think of (seeking a

windless abode, or clothes to wrap himself with). He (would stand) under the merest shed in the cold and bear it with sublime equipoise. When the night grew colder, the Bhagavān would alternately come outside in the cold under the open sky (and go back to the shed). Thus was the Bhagavān able to endure the pangs of cold in perfect calmness and in conformity with Right Conduct.

१६. एस विही अणुक्कंतो, माहणेण मईमया ।
अपडिण्णेण वीरेण, कासवेण महेसिणा ॥

— तिबेमि ।

16. Esa vihi aṇukkaṁto, māhaṇeṇa maīmayā.
Apaḍiṇṇeṇa vīreṇa, kāsaveṇa mahesiṇā..

— Tti bemi.

16. Bhagavān Mahāvīra, the wise *Māhāṇa* (Brāhmaṇa, Non-Violent) Great Seer, born in the clan of Kāsyapa, followed without any reservation the aforementioned code of conduct.

— So do I say.

SECTION III

तइओ उद्देसो

Taio Uddeso

भगवओ परीसह-उवसग्ग-पदं

१. तणफासे सीयफासे य, तेउफासे य दंस-मसगे य ।
अहियासए सया समिए, फासाइं विरूवरूवाइं ॥

Bhagavao parīsaha -uvasagga -padaṃ

1. Taṇaphāse siyaphāse ya, teuphāse ya daṃsa-masage ya.
Ahiyāsae sayā samie, phāsāim virūvarūvāim..

Bhagavān Mahāvīra's Endurance of Hardships

1. Bhagavān Mahāvīra bore with equipoise various kinds of hardships, including being pricked by the grass (typical of the *Lādha* country-side) the extremities of the weather, and bites of gad-flies and mosquitoes.

ANNOTATION 1. During the period of *sādhana* Bhagavān Mahāvīra once paid a visit to the *Lādha* countryside (i. e. the districts of Tāmūlaka, Midnāpur, Hugli and Burdvān in West Bengal) which abounded in prickly grass. Very often, this proved to be the cause of sharp bodily pain. The area in which this kind of grass luxuriously grew was also surrounded with mountains, which added to the cold atmosphere there.

The Bhagavān would also cheerfully bear the heat of the sun. In a place like Halduga, he had to put up with scorching and almost burning temperatures.

The *Lādha* teemed with vicious creatures like gad-flies, mosquitoes, and leeches. Despite knowledge of all these untoward conditions, the Bhagavān went there to test himself on the touchstone of equanimity.

२. अह दुच्चर - लाढमचारी, वज्जभूमिं च सुब्भ (म्हा?) भूमिं च ।

पंतं सेज्जं सेविंसु, आसणाणि चैव पंताइ ॥

2. Aha duccara-lāḍhamacārī, vajjābhūmiṃ ca subbha-
(mha?) bhūmiṃ ca.
Paṃtaṃ sejjaṃ sevimsu, āsaṇagāṇi ceva paṃtāim..

2. The Bhagavān cheerfully rambled through the areas of Vajrabhūmi and Sumhabhūmi in the difficult terrain of the *Lādha* countryside. There he had very miserable lodgings and poor seats.

ANNOTATION 2. The *Lādha* countryside was terribly inaccessible because of mountains and thick forest. Nevertheless, Bhagavān Mahāvīra went there. He managed to get only desolate and dilapidated houses to live in, and rough wooden planks or boards to sit on and those too covered with thick layers of dust, soil and cowdung. All this, however, could not disturb the evenness of the Bhagavān's mind.

३. लाढेहि तस्सुवसग्गा, बहवे जाणवथा लूसिंसु ।

अह लूहदेसिए भत्ते, कुक्कुरातत्थ हिंसिंसु णिवत्तिंसु ॥

3. Lāḍhehiṃ tassuvasaggā, bahave jāṇavayā lūsimsu.
Aha lūhadesie bhatte, kukkurā tattha himsimsu ṇiva-
timsu..

3. In the counties of *Lādha*, Bhagavān Mahāvīra had to undergo various vicissitudes. He was many a time attacked by the inhabitants of that place. The food he got there was vapid. He would be often attacked and bitten by dogs.

ANNOTATION 3. There were no towns and cities in the districts of Vajra and Sumha of the *Lādha*. There was a dearth of such things as sesamum seeds, from which oil could be produced, or of good cows from which butter could be produced. Consequently, the inhabitants of that place

took only insipid, totally fatless food. This sort of food-habit led to their being ill-tempered. Anger, vituperative tongue, and assault were almost habit with them. They used to cover their bodies with grass.

The Bhagavān used to take a single meal only at midday. In Ladha, the Bhagavān would get only rice soaked in water, *urada* (a kind of pulse)-soup or sour-soup, but all without salt.

The dogs of that place were so fierce that people had to use sticks and cudgels toward them off. Since the Bhagavān was unarmed, the dogs would frequently and easily attack him.

४. अप्पे जणे णिवारेह, लूसणए सुणए दसमाणे ।

छुछुकारंति आहंसु, समणं कुक्कुरा इंसंतुत्ति ॥

4. Appe jaṇe nīvārei, lūsaṇae suṇae dasamāṇe.

Chuchukāraṁti āhaṁsu, samaṇaṁ kukkurā das-
amūtutti..

4. When dogs would bark at or come to bite the Bhagavān, only a solitary person would come to his rescue; the others would set the dogs on him.

५. एलिक्खए जणे भुज्जो, बहवे वज्जभूमि फरसासी ।

लट्ठि गहाय णालीयं, समणा तत्थ एव विहरिसु ॥

5. Elikkhae jaṇe bhujjo, bahave vajjabhūmi pharusāsī.

Laṭṭhiṁ gahāya ṇāliyaṁ, samaṇā tattha eva viha-
rimsu..

5. In such a county did the Bhagavān spend (six long months). Most people of Vajrabhūmi were ill-tempered owing to insipid food. In that countryside, some *śramaṇas* (ascetics) always roamed with either a stick¹ or a cudgel in hand.

६. एवं पि तत्थ विहरंता, पुट्ठुप्प्वा अहेसि सुणएहि ।

संसुचमाणा सुणएहि, दुच्चरणाणि तत्थ लाढेहि ॥

1. A *lāthī* (stick) is usually of the height of a man, while a *nālika* (cudgel) is four *aṅgulas* (twenty-fourth part of a cubit) longer than it.

6. *Evam pi tattha viharanta, putthapuvvā ahesi su-*
ṇahehiṃ. Saṃlūmcamāṇā suṇahehiṃ, duccegaragāṇi tattha lāḍhe-
hiṃ..

6. Even those *śramaṇas* who were equipped with sticks or cudgels were torn and bitten by dogs. It was really difficult to move about freely in the villages of the Lāḍha area.

७. निधाय दंडं पाणेहि, तं कायं वोसज्जमणगारे।

अहं गामकटं भगवं, ते अहियासए अभिसमेच्चा ॥

7. *Nidhāya daṇḍaṃ paṇehiṃ, taṃ kāyaṃ vosajjamaṇ-*
agāre. Aha gāmakamṭae bhagavaṃ, te ahiyāsae abhisameccā..

7. Abandoning the attitude of violence to living beings, and totally ignoring all bodily comforts, the Bhagavān was cheerfully rambling about (in the Lāḍha area). There the Bhagavān put up with all kinds of harsh words and sharp rebukes with spiritual wisdom.

ANNOTATION 7. Punishment (i.e. violence) is of there kinds:

- (a) (Punishment) inflicted through the mind;
- (b) through the speech; and
- (c) through the body.

He would not brush away encroaching creatures or annoying insects either himself or make others to do so. Not even the thought of doing so ever crossed his mind. The Bhagavān was completely self-possessed in thought, speech and action.

८. णाओ संगमसीसे वा, पारए तत्थ से महावीरे।

एवं पि तत्थ लोडेहि, अलद्धपुव्वो वि एगया गामो ॥

8. *Nāo saṃgāmasīse vā, pārae tattha se mahāvīre.*
Evam pi tattha lāḍhehiṃ, aladdhapuvvo vi egayā gāmo..

8. Just as an elephant fighting on the battle front is not easily baffled by piercing weapons, so also did Bhagavān Mahāvīra remain completely unruffled by and triumphed over various kinds of hardships he experienced in Lāḍha area. (Although) he occasionally did not find a village or a suitable abode in Lāḍha to stay in, (he remained completely unperturbed).

६. उवसंकमन्तमपडिण्णं , गामन्तियं पि अप्पत्तं ।
पडिणिक्खमित्तु लूसिंसु, एत्तो परं पलेहिति ॥

9. Uvasaṅkamam̐tamapaḍiṇṇaṁ, gāmaṁtiyaṁ pi appat-
tam.
Paḍiṇikkhamittu lūsimsu, etto paraṁ palehitti..

9. The Bhagavān did not desire a fixed abode or a definite diet. He would go to a village for boarding or lodging only when occasion arose. Sometime it so happened that before he entered a village some people would try to stop him, and even hit him and say — "Why don't you go away from here, and look for some other place?"

ANNOTATION 9. The inhabitants of Lāḍha did not relish the Bhagavān's nudity. This is why they would stop him from entering the village.

१०. हय-पुव्वो तत्थ दंढेण, अदुवा मुट्ठिणा अदु कुन्ताइ-फलेण ।
अदु लेलुणा कवालेण, हन्ता-हन्ता बहवे कंदिंसु ॥

10. Hayapuvvo tattha daṁḍeṇa, aduvā muṭṭhiṇā adu
kuṁtāi-phaleṇaṁ.
Adu lelunā kavāleṇaṁ, haṁtā-haṁtā bahave kaṁ-
diṁsu..

10. There some people would try to hit the Bhagavān with a slap or a blow, or a stick, or a spear, or a clod or a potsherd. They would run after him and scream "Goodness Gracious! go away."

११. मंसाणि छिन्नपुव्वाइ, उट्ठुभन्ति एगया कायं ।
परीसहाइ लुचिंसु, अह्वा पंसुणा अवकिरिंसु ॥

11. Mamsāpi chinnaṣuvvāim, utṭhubhamnti egayā kāyam.
Paṛisahāim luṁciṁsu ahavā paṁsuṇā avakiriṁsu..
11. (Brutally assaulting him), some people would even mangle him, spit on him, fling heaps of dust on him, and (thus) inflict hardships on him.
१२. उच्चालइय णिहणिसु, अदुवा आसणाओ खलइंसु ।
वोसट्टकाए पणयासी, दुक्खसहे भगवं अपडिण्णे ॥
12. Uccālaiya ṇihaṇiṁsu, aduvā āsaṇāo khalaiṁsu.
Vosaṭṭhakāe paṇayāsī, dukkhasahe bhagavaṁ apaḍiṇṇe..
12. Some would lift him up and throw him down while he was in meditation. Some others would push him out of his seat. But the Bhagavān had abandoned all care of the body; he was wholly dedicated to the cause of the soul; he was highly tolerant of feeling of pain and anguish; and free from the desire of pleasure. (He would, therefore, never let his evenness of mind dwindle).

ANNOTATION 12. Not all people inhabiting the Lāḍha countryside were ill-tempered; there were, however, some good-natured people there as well. There were those who were very impulsive. These would remove the Bhagavān from his seat. Even so the Bhagavān would not be displeased. Seeing that he maintained a sweet evenness of temper, their hearts would change, and they would apologise to him for their nonchalant insolence. The ill-natured ones, however, did not evince any change of heart.

१३. सूरु संगामसीसे वा, संवुडे तत्थ से महावीरे ।
पडिसेवमाणे फरुसाई, अचले भगवं रीइत्था ॥
13. Sūro saṅgāmasīse vā, saṁvuḍe tattha sē mahāvīre.
Paḍisevamāṇe pharusāim, acale bhagavaṁ rīitthā..
13. Just as a warrior wearing the escutcheon is never baffled at the war front, so also was Bhagavān Mahāvīra wearing the armour of total abstinence from sinful actions never subdued by hardships, and would never be disturbed in meditation. Unperturbed, he kept cheerfully rambling on.

१४. एस विही अणुक्कन्तो, माहणेण मईमया ।
अपडिण्णेण वीरेण, कासवेण महेसिणा ॥

— त्ति बेमि ।

14. Esa vihi añukkamto, māhaṇeṇa maīmayā.
Apaḍiṇṇeṇa vīreṇa, kāsaveṇa mahesiṇā..

— Tti bemi.

14. Bhagavān Mahāvīra, the wise, Māhana (Brāhmaṇa, Non-violent), great seer, born in the clan of Kāśyapa, followed without any reservation the above mentioned code of conduct.

— Thus I say.

SECTION IV

चउत्थो उद्देसो

Cauttho Uddeso

भगवओ अतिगिच्छा-पदं

१. ओमोदरियं चाएति, अपुट्ठे वि भगवं रोगेहि ।
पुट्ठे वा से अपुट्ठे वा, णो से सातिज्जति तेइच्छं ॥

Bhagavao atigicchā-padam

1. Omodariyam cāeti, apuṭṭhe vi bhagavaṃ rogehiṃ.
Puṭṭhe vā se apuṭṭhe vā, ṇo se sātijjati teicchaṃ..

Abandonment of Medication by Bhagavān Mahāvīra

1. Although untouched by illness, Bhagavān Mahāvīra would still have a curtailed diet. Whether afflicted or not, he would not approve of medication for himself.

ANNOTATION 1. Man by nature is prone to gluttony. It is not easy to eat sparingly. There are some who do eat little, but they do so only under compulsion, i. e. when they are afflicted with a disease, and wish to get rid of it. Bhagavān Mahāvīra had no disease or ailment, yet he would eat sparingly and with long intervals just like a serpent.

Illnesses are of two kinds:

(a) Internal, i. e. due to a disturbance of humours or deficiency of vitamins, and

(b) External, i. e. injuries caused by accidents, etc.

The Bhagavān was free from the former kind of diseases, but he would occasionally be afflicted by the

latter, in the event of attacks by human beings or other creatures and insects. He would not undergo any medical treatment to mitigate even these.

To illustrate his extra-ordinary forbearance, an incident is given here. Once a cowboy drove a wooden nail into his ear. A physician named Kharaka had to take it out and dress his wound. But the Bhagavān never wished anyone to do anything for him.

२. संसोहणं च वमणं च, गायबभंगणं सिणाणं च ।

संबाहणं ण से कप्पे, दंत-पक्खालणं परिण्णाए ॥

2. Saṁsohaṇaṁ ca vamaṇaṁ ca, gāyabbhaṅgaṇaṁ siṇā-
ṇaṁ ca.
Sambāhaṇaṁ ṇa se kappe, daṁta-pakkhālaṇaṁ pariṇ-
ṇāe..

2. The Bhagavān abandoned all sorts of purgatives, emetics, unguents, bathing, shampooing or even cleaning of the teeth.

ANNOTATION 2. Soon after initiation into ascetic life, Bhagavān Mahāvīra had taken up a vow: "I will lead a life of self-abnegation by abandoning all bodily care." In accordance with this vow, he would refrain from any physical beautification, or any extra care of the body. It is imperative for a *sūdhaka* to forget all about his body and concern himself with complete dedication to the soul. The above routine followed by Bhagavān Mahāvīra refers to this.

३. विरए गामधम्मैहि, रीयति माहणे अबहुवाई ।

सिसिरंमि एगदा भगवं, छायाए ज्ञाई आसी य ॥

3. Virae gāmadhammehim, rīyati māhaṇe abahuvaī.
Sisiraṁmi egadā bhagaṇaṁ, chāyāe jhāī āsī ya..

3. Averse to all sensual delights, Bhagavān Mahāvīra (Māhaṇa) cheerfully rambled about. He would speak but little. Even in the winter he would meditate (not in sunshine), but in shade.

भगवन्तो आहार-चरिया-पदं

४. आयावई य गिम्हाणं, अच्छइ उक्कुडुए अभिवाते ।

अदु जावइत्थ लूहेणं, ओयण-मंथु-कुम्मासेणं ॥

Bhagavao āhāra-cariyā-padam

4. Āyāvaī ya giṃhāṇaṃ, acchai ukkuḍue abhivate.
Adu jāvaittha lūheṇaṃ, oyaṇa-maṃthu-kummāseṇaṃ..
4. In summer he would deliberately expose himself to the scorching heat of the sun. He would squat in the cock-posture in the face of hot winds.

Dietary Routine

He lived on meals of coarse rice, pounded grains ground into flour-like substance and beans (*urada*).

५. एयाणि तिण्णि पडिसेवे, अट्ट मासे य जावए भगवं ।

अपिइत्थ एगया भगवं, अट्टमासं अदुवा मासं पि ॥

5. Eyaṇi tinṇi paḍiseve, aṭṭha māse ya jāvae bhagavaṃ.
Apiittha egayā bhagavaṃ, addhamāsaṃ aduvā māsaṃ pi.
5. Bhagavān Mahāvīra lived on these three (grains) for eight months. Sometimes, he would go without water either for half a month or for a whole month at a stretch.
६. अवि साहिए दुवे मासे, छप्पि मासे अदुवा अपिवित्ता ।
- रायोवरायं अपडिण्णे, अन्नगिलायमेगया भुजे ॥
6. Avi sāhie duve māse, chappi māse aduvā apivittā.
Rāyovarāyaṃ apaḍiṇṇe, annagilāyamegayā bhumje..
6. He would go without water sometimes for over two months, or as long as for six months. He did not even think of taking sleep; he would keep himself awake all night.

Sometimes he had to take even stale food.

૭. છટ્ઠેળં એગયા ધુજે, અદુવા અદુમેળ દસમેળં ।
 દુવાલસમેળ એગયા ધુજે, પેહમાળે સમાહિ અપડિણે ॥

7. Chatṭthenaṁ egayā bhumje, aduvā aṭṭhamena dasa-
 menaṁ.
 Duvālasameṇa egayā bhumje, pehamāṇe samāhiṁ
 apaḍiṇṇe..

7. Sometimes he would take meals after either two days', or three, or four, or even five days' fast. He had his mind always fixed on only (*tapas -*) *samādhi* (i. e. evenness of mind accompanied by austerities); for food he had no craving.

૮. નચ્ચાણં સે મહાવીરે, નો વિ ય પાવગં સયમકાસી ।
 અણ્ણેહિં વા ન કારિત્થા, કીરંતં પિ નાણુજાણિત્થા ॥

8. Naccāṇaṁ se mahāvīre, no vi ya pāvagaṁ sayamakāśī.
 Aṇṇehiṁ vā na kārithā, kīraṁtaṁ pi ṇāṇujāṇithā..

8. Fully aware of the sinfulness, vitiating the alms that he received, Bhagavān Mahāvīra would neither himself indulge in violence nor make others to do so, nor did he approve of any such action..

૯. ગામં પવિસે નયરં વા, ઘાસમેસે કઢં પરદ્દાણ ।
 સુવિસુદ્ધમેસિયા ભગવં, આયત-જોગયાણ સેવિત્થા ॥

9. Gāmaṁ pavise ṇayaraṁ vā, ghāsamese kaḍaṁ paraṭ-
 thāe.
 Suvisuddhamesiyā bhagavaṁ, āyata-jogayāe sevithā..

9. Upon entering a village or a town, Bhagavān Mahāvīra would ask for only that kind of meal which was prepared for the use of a householder (i. e. not specially prepared for the Bhagavān). He would accept alms unvitiated by any sin and eat it with complete control of his passions.

૧૦. અદુ વાયસા દિગ્ગિછત્તા, જે અણ્ણે રસેસિણો સત્તા ।
 ઘાસેસણાણ ચિદ્ઠંતે, સયયં ણિવતિતે ય પેહાણ ॥

११. अदु माहणं व ससणं वा, गामपिडोलमं च अतिहिं वा ।
सोवागं मूसियारं वा, कुक्कुरं वावि विहं ठियं पुरतो ॥

१२. वित्तिच्छेदं वज्जंतो, तेसप्पत्तियं परिहरंतो ।
मंदं परक्कमे भगवं, अहिंसमाणो घासमेसित्था ॥
(त्रिभिः कुलकम्)

10. Adu vāyasā digimchattā, je aṇṇe rasesiṇo sattā.
Ghāsesaṇāe ciṭṭhamte, sayayaṃ nivatite ya pehāe..

11. Adu māhaṇaṃ va samaṇaṃ vā, gāmapimḍolagaṃ ca
atihiṃ vā.
Sovāgaṃ mūsiyāraṃ vā, kukkuraṃ vāvi vihaṃ ṭhiyaṃ
purato..

12. Vitticchedaṃ vajjaṃto, tesappattiyaṃ pariharaṃto.
Maṃdaṃ parakkame bhagavaṃ, ahimsamāṇo ghāsa-
mesitthā..

(Tribhiḥ kulakaṃ)

10- While on his way for alms, if Bhagavān Mahāvīra saw
12. a group of birds like crows sitting together, or a
dog, or a cat, or a *Brāhmaṇa* or a *Sramaṇa*, or a
beggar or a guest, or a grave-digger (*caṇḍāla*), suf-
fering from hunger or thirst, and trying to satisfy
them by food or drink, he would not disturb them,
bearing in mind the fact that they are not to be dep-
rived of their bread and that they need not sustain
any fear from him. He would walk very slowly and
softly in search of alms without causing any hind-
rance or apprehension to anyone.

१३. अवि सूइयं व सुक्कं वा, सीयपिडं पुराणकुम्मासं ।
अदु बक्कसं पुलागं वा, लद्धे पिडे अलद्धए दविए ॥

13. Avi sūiyaṃ va sukkam vā, sīyapiṇḍaṃ purāṇakum-
māsaṃ.
Adu bakkasaṃ pulāgaṃ vā, laddhe piṇḍe aladdhae
daviē..

13. Bhagavān Mahāvīra would not care whether or not his meal included cooked savoury vegetables, whether he got cold rice, or stale bean-soup; whether his meals consisted of vapid stuff like powdered gram or only grams; whether or not he got any food at all. In all such situations, he would maintain total equipoise.

१४. अवि ज्ञाति से महावीरे, आसणत्थे अकुक्कुए ज्ञाणं ।

उड्ढमहे तिरियं च, पेहमाणे समाहिमपडिण्णे ॥

14. *Avi jhāti se mahāvīre, āsaṇatthe akukkue jhāṇaṃ. Uḍḍhamāhe tiriyaṃ ca, pehamāṇe samāhimapaḍiṇṇe.*

14. Completely calm and poised, the Bhagavān would meditate, squatting in cock-posture or any other posture. He would meditate on various objects of the upper, lower, and the lateral worlds. He had his mind's eye firmly fixed on self-absorption. He was completely free from the desire of pleasure. (He would, therefore, never let his evenness of mind dwindle). He was completely free from reservations.

१५. अकसाई विगयगेही, सद्धरूवेसुमुच्छिए ज्ञाति ।

छउमत्थे वि परक्कममाणे, णो पमायं सइ पि कुव्वित्था ॥

15. *Akasāi vigayagehī, saddarūvesu(a)mucchie jhāti. Chaumatthe vi parakkamamāṇe, ño pamāyaṃ saim pi kuvvitthā.*

15. Becalming all his passions (such as, anger, conceit, deceit and avarice), abandoning all kinds of attachments, and lulling all kinds of infatuation with (sensual) sound or form, Bhagavān Mahāvīra would meditate. Always exerting himself in self-discipline, despite the veils of *karma* (such as knowledge-obscuring *karma*), he never slackened for a moment.

१६. सयमेव अभिसभागम्म, आयतजोगमायसोहीए ।

अभिणिव्वुडे अमाइल्ले, आवकहं भगवं समिआसी ॥

16. *Sayameva abhisamāgama, āyatajogamāyasohīe. Abhiṇivvude amāille, āvakahaṃ bhagaṃ samīāsī.*

16. Achieving, through complete self-purification, discipline of mind, body and speech, Bhagavān Mahāvīra became absolutely calm and poised. He practised (austerities) with simplicity of heart. Through the entire period of his *sādhana*, he remained equipoised and tranquil.

१७. एस विही अणुक्कंतो, माहणेण मईमया ।
 अपडिण्णेण वीरेण, कासवेण महेसिणा ॥
 — त्ति बेमि ।

17. Esa vihi añukkamto, māhaṇeṇa maīmayā.
 Apaḍiṇṇeṇa vīreṇa, kāsaveṇa mahesiṇā..

— Tti bemi.

17. Bhagavān Mahāvīra, the wise, *Māhāṇa* (Brāhmaṇa, Non-violent) Great Seer, born in the clan of Kāśyapa, followed without any reservation the aforementioned code of conduct.

— I say so.

WORD-INDEX (Glossary)

- Abbhāikkhejjā* (Skt. *Abhyākhyāyet*), malign, slander or accept falsehood as truth 31
- Abhiṇigijjha*, grasp 171, restrain ix
- Abhinivṛtta*, stage of development of limbs 278
- Abhinivāṭejja*, should get rid of 178
- Abhisamannāgayā*, thoroughly knows 150
- Abhisambhūta*, stage of development of the embryo 278
- Abhisambhūta*, stage of development of foetus and muscles 278
- Abhayadāna*, non-intimidation 30
- Abhīṇe*, desprivement of enlightenment 20
- Ācāmla*, eating only a single item of food 370
- Ācāra*, ethics, spiritual conduct
- Ācārāṅga*, the treatise on Jaina spiritual conduct i
- Ācārya*, teacher 9
- Accēi*, circumvents 140
- Acitta*, inanimate 36
- Ādāna*, clothes 290
- Ādānāe*, with self-disciplined life 115
- Adatta*, taking away things of others including their life 315
- Adattādāna*, appropriating that which is not given 37
- Adattahāro*, thieves 107
- Adhimutti*, faith xiii
- Adiṇṇādāna*, unauthorized appropriation xv
- Adiṇṇādāṇāo*, from theft xvi
- Adissamāṇe*, one should keep away from 155
- Aduvā, athavā*, or 191
- Āgamissam*, future 169
- Āghāi*, preach 189
- Agrantha*, absolutely unfettered by worldly snares 331
- Aham*, downwards 51
- Āhāra-heu*, purpose of monk's nourishment 332
- Āhāsaccam*, the real truth 190
- Āhaṭṭu*, implanted 113
- Ahiṇsā*, non-violence iv
- Akoviḥāra*, the practice of self-discipline, (asceticism) 89
- Ājīvikas*, a school of the *śramaṇa* ascetics led by Gośālaka 38
- Ajjaviya*, uprightness xiii
- Ajjhattha*, spiritual world 166
- Ajjhattham*, the inner self 71
- Ajjhovavaṇṇā*, licentious 80
- Ājñā*, instruction 229
- Akamma*, pure 154, meditation, 96
- Ākara*, a mine-like abode 356
- Akasāyī*, free from passions xxiii
- Akkuṭṭhe*, call names 284
- Akriyāvāda*, non-actionism 389

Akukkue, free from distractions xxiii

Alīṇagutto, subjugating the senses and disciplining the mind, speech and body 170

Amgula, twenty-fourth part of a cubit 404

Anācaraṇiya, forbidden 324

Anagāra, monk 17

Āṇākamikhī, devoted to the Teachings 196

Anannadaṃsī, one who looks inwardly at the self 141

Anaṇṇam, unique 164

Anaṇṇārāme, revels in the self 141

Anāsādae, does not cause obstruction to others 306

Anāsana, undertaking fast unto death 341

Anāsatti, non-attachment 100, 117

Anāsāya, eschewing taste 353

Anāsrava, not the cause of the influx of *karma* 187

Anativattiya, non-transgression xiii

Anattapaṇṇānam, lacking in spiritual insight 270

Anaṭṭhāe, unmotivated 211

Anegacitta, manifold desires of man 163

Apiccayam, mortal 58

Anidāna, free from bonds of attachment and aversion 321

Aniyaṭṭagāmi, life-long ascetics 203

Añjū, simple and straightforward in behaviour 151

Anṇāṇa, ignorance 16

Annesim, pursue 234

Antarmuhūrta, less than 48 minutes 242

Anudharma, way of life in harmony with *sādhana* 382

Anudisā, intermediate direction 4

Aṇugāmiyam, favourable xiii

Ānupūrvī, achieved in serial order of development 368

Ānupūrvī vimokṣa, fast unto death 367

Aṇusīlāṇa, practice 261

Aṇusoyanṭi, continuously go on thinking

Aṇuvī, contemplate and visualise 37

Apaḍiṇṇe, without guile xxiii

Apaliyamōṇe, remaining unattached 282

Aparākrama, fast undertaken with weak body 368

Aparigraha, non-possession of property xv

Aparihīṇa, perfect 93

Apariṇṇāe, person who cannot give up (amassing of wealth) 130

Apasmāra, epilepsy 272

Appamāda, (*Skt. Apramāda*), constant vigilance; living in the present 87, 142

Appamattehiṇi, vigilant 42

Appānaṇi, soul (overwhelmed by passions) 197

Apramatta muni, vigilant but not completely free from passions 242

Arati, ennui 94

Ārambha, hitting, cutting and killing 159

Ārambha, all activities 369

Arhaṃta, the Revered One xiii
Ārie, noble 118
Arhat, Venerable One 183
Āriyavayaṇaṃ, Doctrine of the Noble Ones 194
Ārya-satya, noble truth xx
Asādhū, non-ascetic 317
Āsām, lust 112
Asamaṇuṇṇa, heretics 313
Asamdīna, land which does not get flooded with water 295
Asammāyāra, improper conduct 315
Āsava, hardship xviii
Asāsayam, not eternal 58
Āśrama, a hermitage 356
Assāyam, suffering or pain 63
Ātavan, established in *ātman* xiii
Ātman, knower x
Ātmavāda, doctrine of objective reality of soul 9
Attā, afflicted 189
Attatulā, equality of beings with the self 71
Attihāe, with a motive 211
Atthita, existence 41
Āukāiya, water-being 30
Āure, tormented 152
Avama-celika, scantily-clad 337
Avamaudarya, attenuation 283
Āvanti keāvamti, in this world 215
Avasāda, dejection 270
Avasakejjā, should abstain from 120
Āvaṭṭasoe, whirlpool 151
Avidyā, absence of right perception 217

Āvilae, relinquish the relations 201
Avimaṇe, blissful 202
Aviyatta, immature ascetic 237
Avratas, infringement of the six vows 134
Avyāghāta, fast undertaken in the normal course 368
Avyāghāta-maraṇa, fasting unto death 367
Āyagutte, self-secured 153
Āyāñijam, path of Truth 108
Āyariya, preceptor 248
Āyatacakkhū, with wide open eyes 123
Āyāvādī, believer in soul xii
Āyavam, in possession of the self 150
Bambhaceramsi, continence 204
Bajjhao, others 230
Buddha-bodhita, enlightened by the *Tīrthamkara* 331
Bāla-maraṇa, suicide committed due to irrational impulses 341
Bhattaparimā abandonment of food 346
Bhāvanā, contemplation 352
Bhairava, formidable 357
Bhāva-samlekhana, method of curtailment of passions 369
Brahma, the Supreme Reality i
Bhūta, existing xii
Bambhavam, established in *Brahman* xiii
Bhagavanta, lord xiii
Brahmacarya, celibacy xv
Bambhavam, in possession of

- the Supreme Reality 150
Bīyam, activity 164
Bhoga, sensuality 110
Bhogī, self-indulgent 110
Bāla, immature *sādhaka* 131
Chanapaena, affairs of violence 143
Chee, wise 214
Cāritra-moha-karma, the *karma* which pollutes right conduct through delusion 221
Chana, violence and other evils 155, 232
Cavanam, death 164
Ciṭṭham, preoccupy, intensely painful genera 191
Cakkhupannāna, ocular perception xxi
Cayāvacaiyam, metabolism (building up of new cells and decaying of old ones) 58
Chandovanīyā, self-indulgent 80
Cauppayam, quadrupeds (animals) 106
Ciṭṭhai, sticks to it 108
Chandam, servility 112
Caṇḍāla, a grave-digger 413
Ḍajjhai, meets with incineration 168
Dama, curbing of passions 104
Damda, the man of violence, panel instrument xiv
Dharma, righteousness 226
Dhammavam, in possession of piety, 150 established in *dhamma* xiii
Dharmavit, one who is conversant with the nature of Reality 151
Dhitiṇ, steadfastness 162
Dhune, shake to its root 236
Dhuta, austerities which wash away passions xi, separation by shaking off 277
Dhuvacārīna, progressing towards salvation 105
Dhyāna, meditation xxii
Diṭṭhi, view, xiii, xvii
Diṭṭham, perceived 185
Diṭṭhapahe, one who has perceived the path to salvation 136, 161
Dīva, island 295
Dosa, hatred xvii
Dhuyam, advanced asceticism 267
Dravya-samlekhana, method of curtailment of food 369
Dronamukha, a capital of four hundred villages 356
Dubbhiṇ, unsavoury 288
Dukkham, suffering xiii, ignorance 150
Dukkha-sāyyā, living in gloom 252
Dupayam, bipeds (servants) 106
Duppaddivahaṇam, cannot be prolonged 122
Duraṇucara, an uphill task 203
Duratikammā, difficult to transcend 122
Duṣkṛta, unrighteousness 317
Dveṣa, aversion 293
Egallavihāra, asceticism in solitariness 237
Egatta, solitariness, 352
Egasāḍe, clad in only one clothing 344, 384
Ejassa, of air-being 71
Eyāṇupassī, one who observes the realities happening in the

- present only 170
Gabbha, womb, xvii
Gacchamti, wish, 275
Gomana Yoga, the activity involving walking 245
Gamtha, bondage, xii
Gaṇḍa, goitre 272
Gati, steadiness of knowledge and perception, steadfastness of conduct and competence through the learning of scriptures 255
Ghānapaṇṇāna, olfactory perception xxi
Gihacāṇo vi gihavāsa, a hypocritical ascetic 51
Gijjhe, hanker, 102
Gilāṇa, ailing monk, 346
Gilāsinim, morbid appetite from over-digestion 272
Gorava, conceit 278
Goyāvādī, believer in the dogma of casteism 102
Guṇa, the five types of sensual qualities (colour, sound, odour, taste, touch) 52
Guṇasthāna, a stage of spiritual development 241
Guṇatṭhite, engrossed in sensual pleasures xiv, 86
Guru, colossal 211
Hammai, meets with decapitation 108
Himsā (qua-Ārambha), violent action xv
Hirī, rigours of an embarrassing nature, like nudity 285
Hiyaṃ, good xiii
Imgiṇi-maraṇa, fast unto death called *itvarika* 356
Iryā, manner of moving 239
Itvarika, religious fast unto death 357
Jāgara, the wide-awake 149
Janma, birth xvii
Jarāyu, membrane enveloping the younger one at the time of birth 62
Jatehim, self-composure 43
Jātī, birth 54
Jayamāṇe, to be diligent by remaining vigilant through concentration on studies and meditation while awake 229
Jāyāmāyāe, limited diet 168
Jhamjhāe, vicissitudes 173
Jhimiyaṃ, paralysis 272
Jhosamāṇe, follows, 287
Jhoseṭi, causes them to wither away 162
Jhqsita (kṣapitaḥ), dissolved 254
Jijñāsā, quest i
Jīva, living xii
Jīvatta, animation 21
Jñāna, knowledge xxi
Jujjhāhi, battle 230
Juṇṇāṃ, decayed 198
Jūratī, gets emaciated 122
Kaḍḍasaṇaṃ, straw-mats 119
Kalala, embryo 278
Kalyāṇa, virtue 317
Kāma, desire 122, lust 211
Kāmakāmī, sensualist 122
Kamma-samārambha, indulging in activities of mind, speech and body 11
Kammavasamti, subsidence of karma 136
Kāṇiyaṃ, one-eyedness 272
Karma-saṃnyāsa, renunciation of action ii

- Karmavāda*, doctrine of reaping the fruits of one's actions xii, 9
- Karma-yoga*, disciplined performance of action ii
- Karvaṭaṃ*, a village at the foot of a mountain 356
- Kaṭṭhāṃ*, wood 198
- Kāyakleśa*, enduring physical hardships 345
- Kāyotsarga*, relaxation and renunciation of bodily activities 244
- Keyaṇaṃ*, sieve, 163
- Ko'ham*, who am I ? 9
- Khaṇa*, moment xix
- Kheḍa* a village or town two miles long 356
- Khemāṃ*, wholesome xiii
- Kheyāṇṇe*, one who knows the essence of things 153
- Khuḍḍa*, trivial 168
- Khujjataṃ*, hunch-backedness 103
- Khujjiyaṃ*, hunch-backedness 272
- Kileśa*, tormentation 74
- Kinhe*, black 264
- Kivaṇa*, crippled pauper 99
- Koḍha*, leprosy 272
- Kriyāvāda*, doctrine that actions are the cause of bondage of soul 10, xii, actionism 389
- Kujjhe*, feel piqued 103
- Kuṃṭattaṃ*, lameness 103
- Kuṇḍalinī*, vitality 30
- Kuṇiyaṃ*, defect in hands 272
- Kusala*, person endowed with knowledge 144
- Lāghava*, attenuation 292
- Lāghaviya*, lightness xiii
- Lahubhūyagāmī*, moves unimpeded like a breeze 165
- Laṭṭhiṃ*, stick 404
- Leśyā*, train of thoughts 349
- Logasaṇṇaṃ*, mammonism 137
- Logasāro*, essence of the world 209
- Logavijao*, subjugation of the world of passions 83
- Loka*, world of non-ascetic actions 11, universe 123
- Lokavāda*, doctrine of real existence of the world, xii, 9
- Loyasaṇṇiyoṇaṃ*, worldly bondages 140
- Lūhaṃ*, coarse 236
- L' mpitta*, stealing 90
- Maḍamba*, an isolated village 356
- Maddaviya*, modesty xiii
- Madhyastha*, maintaining equanimity in favourable and unfavourable circumstances 371
- Mahāvīhi*, great path 30
- Mahāvratas*, great vows xiv
- Mahamehaṇiṃ*, diabetes, 272
- Majjejjā*, should not feel elated 120
- Majjhāttha*, unbiased attitude 253
- Māhaṇa*, *Brāhmaṇa*, non-violent 401
- Mamāiya*, acquisitiveness 136
- Maṃda*, foolish person 95
- Māṇaṇa*, reverence 13 honour 32
- Māra*, death xii, 212,
- Matī*, instinct 136
- Māṇāvādī*, believer in egotism 102

- Mārga*, path, xvi
Mayaṃ, deliberated upon, 185
Mehāvī, a sage 26
Moha, delusion xii, xvii
Mokṣa-mārga, path of emancipation xvi
Moṇa, knowledge (hence the word 'muni') 116
Moyana, liberation 32
Mūḍhabhāvaṃ, senility 88
Mudrā, posture, 244
Muhūrta, 48 minutes, 62
Mūlaṭṭhāṇa, (*Samisāra*), i.e., cycles of birth and death; mundane existence of the soul 85
Muṇḍa, completely shorn of hair on the head, (figuratively, shorn of all evils) 283
Muni, ascetic iv
Musāvāyāo, from false speech xvi
Mutti, faith xiii, xvii
Muyaccā, one completely indifferent to bodily adornments 195
Mūyaṃ, dumbness 272
Nāe, leader, 140
Nāi, kith and kin 98
Nairyātrika, capable of leading to liberation 289
Nāliyaṃ (*nālikā*), a cudgel 404
Nāṇavaṃ, established in knowledge xiii, 150
Nāni, a sage 168
Naraga-tirikkha, hell-animal xiii
Nigama, a city, 336
Nihe, vitiate 184
Nikkammaḍaṃsī, one who has attained self-realization, salvation, omniscience or non-action 161, 206
Ṇikkhive, forsake 184
Nippīlāe, mortify the flesh 201
Niraya, hell xii
Nirgrantha Order, the Order of the Unfettered ones or the Jaina Order 73
Nirjarā, shedding the *karma* 371
Nirodha, release from suffering xx
Nirūvaṇa, discourse 269
Niryukti, the earliest commentary
Ṇisanne, has no regard for 164
Nissesaṃ, complete xiii
Nivesana, persuasion xiii
Nivijjati, gets fed up 115
Nivvāṇa liberation xiii, state of spiritual peace xviii
Nivattana, dispelling 94
Nivveyaṇa, detachment 226
Ṇivinda, give a cold shoulder to 164
Ṇiyama, self-control 104
Omoyariyaṃ, light diet, 244
Ovavāte, reincarnating 4
Ovavāiyā, born spontaneously 61
Paḍiggahaṃ, bowls 119
Paḍighāya, prevention 32
Paḍimoyae, disentangles 126
Paḍuppannā, of the present 183
Pagabbhai, becomes shameless 276
Pagaḍaṃ, has committed 162
Pagamthe, abuse 284

- Pāṇam*, in front 51
Palichindiya, extirpate 206
Palucchanne, corrupted by the *karma* particles 216
Paliyantkara, one who has removed the veils 174
Pamokkha, deliverance from, freedom xviii
Pamatte, careless xiv
Pāṇa, breathing xii
Pāṇāvāyāo, from killing xvi
Paṇḍita-maraṇa, suicide committed by conscious judgement 341
Pāṇipātra, one using his palms as utensils 392
Paṇḍa, perception, insight xxi, intellect 80, 234
Paṇṇavarāṇte, enjoin xiii
Pantaṁ, tasteless 236
Pāpa, vice 317
Para, person having extra-sensory or transcendental knowledge 6
Pāragāmino, those who transcend 96
Parairanāśātayan, not causing harm to others 306
Paramabodha, knowledge of the Supreme Reality 156
Paramacakkhū, Argus-eyed one 223
Paramappa, the supreme soul 263
Pariccāya, renunciation 133 abandonment 280
Pariggaha, acquisitiveness 104
Paḍighāya, prevention 13
Parihāyamāṇehim, premature degeneration 87
Parijāṇiyavvā, comprehend and forswear 11
Parikkhā, critique 187
Parivivāṇa, freedom from fear and suffering xviii feeling of happiness 63
Pariṇṇā, comprehension and renunciation 1, 136, 196
Paripaccamāṇe, writhing in unsatiated sexual desires 216
Parisrava, cause of the efflux of *karmas* 117
Parivaejjā, reprimand 89
Parivandana, praise 32
Parivrājakas, one of the schools of ascetics who used to move about 321, ascetics belonging to heretical sects 37
Pariyaṭṭana, means of transaction, 86
Pāsaga, a seer 108, 121, 145, 185
Pāsaha (Skt. *Paśyata*), independent perception or conception, 249, realize 205
Pāsati, knowing directly through perception or intuition xxi, perceives 27, 212
Pattana, a larger town 336
Pāvaduyā, philosophers 194
Pāvagam, conducive to sinfulness 391
Pāvāiyā, wise preceptors 196
Pavajjā, initiation into ascetic life 330
Pavīlae, subdue mind and senses 201
Pavvahi, feels distress 16, vanquished 113
Pavuccui, deserves 51
Pecca, supra-mundane power 99

- Pehāve*, having looked at xxiv
Pejja, lust xvii
Pharusiyam, pain 151
Phāsāim, various kinds of miseries and malodies 199
Phāsapaṇṇāna, tactile perception xxi
Phusiamiva, as a mere dew-drop 212
Piḍhasappim, crippledness 272
Potaja, a being born complete as a young one without an enveloping membrane 61
Prabuddha, enlightened 249
Prajñā, penetrating wisdom xvii
Prajñāpanā, prophetic injunctions viii
Prāṇātīpāta, sin of violence 18
Pratisaṃdhi, rebirth xix
Pratyabhijñā, a logical conclusion based on the recognition of the past object with the present one 9
Pratyākhyānāvaraṇa-kaṣāya, a type of passion 134
Pratyekabuddha, suddenly enlightened by an impulse 331
Pratyutpanna, instantaneously capable of checking the influx of *karma*-particles 289
Prāyopagamaṇa, fasting unto death 364
Puḍhavikāya, earth-beings 16
Puḍho, diverse 199, 220
Puṇṇa, the haves 142
Purakkāra, dominant idea xiii
Pūrvas, the earlier sacred books 249
Raddhi, grandeur 277
Rāga, attachment 293
Rājadhānī, a capital 356
Rasa, delicacies 277
Rasapaṇṇāna, gustatory perception xxi, 93
Rāyaṃsī, suffering from Tuberculosis 272
Rūva, sensual objects and body 221, 232
Rūvasaṃdhi, meeting point of matter and spirit xix
Sabalattam, variegatedness 103
Sacca, truth xv, 172, 252
Sacitta, animate 36
Sadda, sound 153
Saḍḍhī, one who reposes faith in someone or something 176
Sādhaka, an aspirant exerting himself in asceticism 7
Sādhanā, the path prescribed for self-realization iii, 7
Sādharmika, one belonging to the same faith 314
Sādhu, ascetic 317
Sagaḍabbhi, smash his own (*karmas*) 174
Sāgarīyam, sex 214
Sāhaṇā (Skt. *Sādhanā*) practice 14
Sahapamāṇam, owing to his infatuation 103
Śaileśī stage, whose mind is rendered as calm and immobile as a mountain 241
Samādhi, meditation xvii, absolute equipoise 214
Samādhi-maraṇa, death sublime 355

Samannāgaya, illumined with truth 80

Samaṇujāṇijjā, approve 49

Samaṇuṇṇa, one whose *anujñā* (qualification) is proper 253

Samappaṇa, dedication of the aim 28

Samatta, equality 102

Samattadaṃsī, practising equanimity 139, 157

Sāmatam, leprosy 103

Samatva, equanimity (equality) ii

Samaya, time-point 241

Sāmbhogika, one with whom the exchange of things is permissible 314

Sambodha, admonition 79

Samdeha, equivocation 214

Samdhi, juncture of birth and death xix

Samdhi (granthi), a knot, a complicated problem 254

Samdhi, nature 166

Samdina, land flooded with water at the tide 295

Samgha, the religious order 322

Samghaḍadamaṃsino, wide-awake 207

Samiyā-pariyāye, one who has perfectly comprehended the truth 220

Samjamācarana, practice of self-discipline 163

Samjatehim, self-disciplined 42

Samjñā, intuitive knowledge 4

Samjoga, connection xx

Samjogaṭṭhī, desirous of sensual pleasures 86

Samlehaṇā, conscious preparation for death 355

Sammācaritta, right ascetic discipline 201

Sammaṃ, samyak, 234

Sammānāṇe, right knowledge 187

Sammātava, right austerities 195

Sammāvāe, the true doctrine 183

Sammucchimā, beings born by coagulation 61

Saṃsāra, world of recurrent transmigration 6, phenomenon of birth and death 214

Samseyayā, beings born out of sweat 61

Samśuddha, pure 289

Samthavo, contact 190

Sāṃri, peace xiii

Samudaya, cause of suffering xx

Samhvara, stoppage of the influx of *karma* particles 14, 15

Samyag-cāritra, right conduct xvi

Samyag-darśana, right view xvi

Samyag-jñāna, right knowledge xvi

Sanṇa, notion xiii

Sannihāṇa (Skt. *Sannidhāna*), storing or hoarding of food articles 333

Sanniveśa, a settlement of huts 356

Saparākrama, fast undertaken when the body is strong 368

Sapehāe, having comprehended xxiv

Sārae, wise 202

Sarvajñatā, omniscience xx

Sarveṣaṇā, all rules of begging food and eating 287
Satipaṭṭhāna, mindfulness xxiv
Satta, sentient creature xii
Sattha, weapon of violence xiv, 1
Śauca, freedom from avarice 305
Sāyam, pleasing, 194
Sayam, perpetually 152
Sejjā, seats and retreats 395
Siddhas, the perfect ones 357
Śīla, right conduct xxi
Śīla samprekṣā, the practice of the ethical code 230
Silivayam, elephantiasis 272
Sīsaṇijjam, shifting sands of life 147
Siyā (Skt. *Śrīta*), taking guidance 250
So'ham, I am He
Sovahiesu, for those who are acquisitive 184
Soyaviya, purity, xiii, freedom from avarice 305
Śramaṇa, monk 38
Sthaṇḍila, ground bereft of green grass and living beings like insects etc 374
Styānarddhi, deep slumber-producing *karma* 25
Suakkhāe (Skt. *Suākhyātuh*), well-propounded 289
Subbhim, flavoury 288
Suham, blissful xiii
Suhasāyā, relishing pleasures ix, 105
Sukha, ease and comfort 277
Sukṛta, righteousness 317

Sotapaṇṇāna, auditory perception xxi, 93
Sūṇiam, swelling 272
Sutta, the torpid 149
Sūtra, canonical text 242
Suvasu muni, who commands the wealth of self-discipline 140
Svayam-sambuddha, self-enlightened 331
Suyam, heard 185
Tahāgayā, the *Tathāgatas*, (the aspirants who strive for the attainment of the state of perfect equanimity) 169
Taijas śarīra, the electrical body 219
Tamhā, therefore 164
Tāna, protection 89
Tasakāiya, mobile living beings 64
Tava, austerity 104
Teukāiya, fire-beings 41
Tigicchā, remedy of maladies 130, 275
Tippati, sheds tears 122
Tiriyam, sideways 51
Tiriyam bhitti, slanting wall, *prākara* 384
Tīrthaṅkaras, the enlightened ones 140
Titikkhā, forbearance 304
Tivijja, a person knowing three sciences 157
Trāṭaka, concentrating on a point with dilated and unblinking eyes 124
Tuccha, the have-nots 142
Ubbhiyā, beings-born by sprouting from the earth 61
Uccālaiyam, devoted to the

- Supreme Reality 171
Udarim, dropsy 272
Uddavaittā, killing 90
Uddeso, guidance 108
Uddham, upwards 51
Uggaham, room 119
Ukkase, keep aloof from 375
Urada, a kind of pulse 404
Unnayamāne, being praised 238
Ūrdhvasthāna, adopting posture in which legs are kept upwards and head downwards 244
Uttaravāde, golden principle 286
Uttāsaittā, torturing 90
Utthāna, exertion, vigorous preparation for something 355
Uvagaraṇa, clothes 289
Uvahāṇa, excellence of righteousness 379
Uvarayasattha, a true abstainer from violence 174
Uvasagga, hardships 402
Uvasama, calmness xiii, pacification 305
Uvavāyam, birth 164
Uvehamāṇo, indifferent to 153
Vaḍabhattam, dwarfishness 103
Vaṁkāṇikeyā, tabernacle of deceit 190
Vamtā, disgorging 137, 174
Vaṇassaikāiya, beings of vegetable-body 53
Vaṁkaṣamāyāre, a hypocrite 52
Varṇa, fame, form 233
Vasumam, rich in enlightenment 80
Vāukāiya, beings of air-body 73
Vavahāra, conduct 137
Vaya, gati 135
Vedaṇāhodha, experience of pain 21
Vedanīya karma, the karma which brings pain in its wake 221
Vehānasa, committing suicide by hanging 341
Veramaṇam, desisting xvi
Verovarae, above enmity 152
Vevaim, trembling 272
Veyāvaccapakappa, rules for service 347
Veyavam, established in *Vedas* xiii, in possession of scriptures 150
Viamtikārae, total annihilation of karma 349
Vidhūtakappa, well-versed in *dhamma* and firm in austerities xi, observing the *dhuta* code of conduct 170
Vidittā, comprehending 137
Vigatagehī, devoid of greed xxiii
Vigīṇcai, forswears 176
Vigīṇca, abandon 113
Vihāyomaraṇa, deliberately ending one's life by hanging 368
Vikṛti-parityāga, abandonment of rich food 370
Vilūmpittā, pillaging 90
Vimoha, liberation xii
Vimokkho, emancipation 311
Viṇayaṁ, ethical code 79
Viṇāyaṁ, thoroughly understood 185

Vipariṇāmadhammayam, undergoing various transformations 58

Vipparāmusanti, kill 211

Vippariyāsuveī, becomes a victim of paradoxes 107

Vippasāyae, gratify 167

Viratī, abstinence xiii, cessation from desires 305

Virehīm, fortitude 42

Virya, energy xvii

Visaṇṇa, embogged in sensual pleasures 302

Vītarāga muni, one who is

completely free from passions or attachment and aversion 241

Vitarka, killer of beings 302

Vivega, forswearing 26, rid-dance 241

Vivirtajīvī, leading a life of recluse 162

Vivittovagarāṇa, vast number of utensils 86

Vosire, abandon 376

Vrata, vow xvi

Vyāghāta-yukta, fast undertaken suddenly on account of some incident 368

SUBJECT INDEX

Abandonment

- of relatives 277-279
- of *karma* 280
- of clothes 289, 343, 350, 359
- of attenuation of the body 292
- of conceit 298
- of possessiveness 331
- of body 340
- of food 346, 369

Ācāra

- Meaning of i
- Five kinds of i
- and knowledge i
- of the unattached one 137

Acquisitiveness 223

- Renunciation of 133

Action

- Motives of 12-13
- Mahāvīra on 15
- Freedom from 96, 161, 206

Air-beings

- Animation and experience of pain 76
- forswearing of violence to 78

Āsrava (Influx of Karma particles)

- Meaning of xviii
- Cause of 10
- Consequence of 12
- explained 188-189

Asceticism xi

- Right 195, 201
- Two primary conditions for 201
- in solitariness by an immature ascetic 237
- Initiation into 330 ff

Ascetics

- Hypocritical 51
- Admonition to 79
- Behaviour of 138
- Richly-disciplined and poorly disciplined 139
- Manner of moving of 240

Attachment ix, 85-86

- to carnal pleasures 101
- to possessions 104-105
- Result of 107

Attachment and aversion

- Renunciation of iv

Āyāro

- its antiquity vii

Bhagavān Mahāvīra

- The Rambles of 381
- Seats and retreats of 395
- Endurance of Hardships 402
- Abandonment of Medication by 409
- Dietary routine of 411

Bondage ix, 103-104

- Libration from 140
- And Riddance 241

- and intensity of passions 241-242
- Brahmacarya*
 - Three interpretations of 224
 - Practice of 243-247
- Common Man and Seer* 121
- Contemplation of being unprotected* 89-93, iii
- Death* 310
 - Conscious preparation for 355, 368
 - Fast unto 356, 364, 367
 - Voluntary 373, 376
 - Three types of voluntary 367
- Dedication* 28
- Desire* 113, 211-212
 - for women 113
 - Manifold 163
 - for fame 233
 - Two kinds of 377
- Detachment*
 - From Sensual Pleasures 226
- Dhuta*
 - of self-discipline 294
 - of humbleness 296
 - of forbearance 304
 - of sermons 305
 - of freedom from passions 47
- Direct knowledge*
 - Means of gaining 42-43
- Dispassionate thinking* 284-285
- Dispelling ennui* 94-96
- Earth-beings* 16
 - Experience of Pain 21
 - Logic for 24-25
 - Forswearing of violence to 26
- Emancipation* IX
 - Path of xvi-xvii
 - meaning of xviii
- Equality* i, 102
 - of being with the self 71
- Equanimity* ii, iv, 115, 167
- Essentially connected concepts* xii-xiii
- Faith* 250
- Fire-body* 41
 - Violence to 43, 334-335
 - Experience of Pain 47
 - Forswearing of violence of 48
- Food*
 - Points for a monk about 119-120
 - Purpose of 332
 - Begging of 347
- Forbidden*
 - Avoiding 324-329
- Friendship* ix
- Great Vows* xiv-xv
 - Connected together 134
- Guidance* 259
- Heretics*
 - Avoiding 313-315
 - Views of 316-318
- Improper Conduct* 315
- Inner World and External World*
 - Knowledge of 71
 - Three interpretations of 72
- Knowledge* 269
 - of the Supreme Reality 156
- Love for life* 105
- Mahāvīra*
 - Biography of vii-viii, xiv
 - Moral teachings of vii
- Maladies* 272
- Meditation* xxii-xxiii, 96
 - on the loka 123

- Three methods of 124
- Meghakumāra*
remembering his past life 7
- Mobile beings* 61
- Violence to 64
- Forswearing of violence of 69
- Mortification of the flesh* vii
- Meaning of 203
- Mysticism* x
- Non-attachment*
to food 117
to desire 112
- Non-Violence* viii, 322
- Basis for 10
- Monks' vow of 50
- The true doctrine 183
- Critique of 187
- stated 192-194
- based on equality 255
- and treatment 275
- Omniscience*
No reference to xx
Vaguely suggested 175
- Passions*
Riddance of 174
and bondage 177-179
Realisation of 199
- Path of Vigilance* 218
- Perception (Paṇṇāna)* xxi
compared to *prajñā* xxi
Knowledge and xxi
- Preaching Sermons* 142-145
- Preceptor*
Compared to lake 248
- Prophetic Injections (Paṇṇa-
vaṇā)* xiii
- Remedy* 130
No use of 131-132
- Renunciation* x-xi
- Renunciation in the Gītā and
the Āyāro* iii
- Samdhi* xix-xx 125, 166
- Self-dependence* 171
- Self-discipline* 164, 171,
Three stages of 201-202
- Place for 320
- Sensuality*
Evils of 110
- Service*
Rules for 347, 361
- Solitariness*
Contemplation of 352
and Separateness 197
- Soul* 257
The quest for i, vii
in its Empirical and Trans-
sensual Aspects ix
Existence of 3
Reincarnation of 4-5
Supreme 163
- Steadiness in ascetic life*
Seven steps leading to 229-
230
- Stoppage of Influx* 10
The *Gītā* on 14-15
- Taste*
Eschewing 353
- Ten kinds of muṇḍa*
(stripped off the evils) 283
- Ten powers* 98-99
- The Gītā and Karman* ii
- The path of vitality (Kuṇḍalini)*
30
- Three sciences* 158
- Torpid and the Wide-awake*
149
- True Monk* 96-97
- Truth* 261
- Unbiased attitude* 253

Vegetable-body

Compared to human life 58

Forswearing of violence 51

Violence

Use of 98-100

Forswearing of 100

Water-body

Experience of pain by 34

Forswearing of violence to
35, 39

inanimate 36

has no life 38

Weapons 18-19, 37, 44, 54

Not mightier than disarmament 171

Wisdom 319

